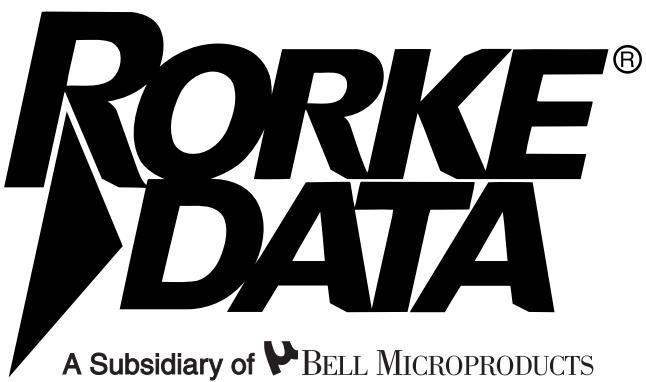


# Galaxy 16m RAID Controller Installation and User Guide



Part No. 36217-02A

Issue 2.0  
September 2004



**[www.rorke.com](http://www.rorke.com)**

Rorke Data, Incorporated • 9700 W. 76th Street • Eden Prairie, MN 55344  
800.328.8147 • 952.829.0300 • Fax 952.829.0988

SAN • Fibre Channel • RAID • Archive Libraries • Servers • Installation • Service & Maintenance

Rorke Data reserves the right to change product specifications without notice.

# Notices

The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

While every effort has been made to ensure that all information in this document is accurate, the Authors accept no liability for any errors that may arise.

No part of this document may be transmitted or copied in any form, or by any means, for any purpose, without the written permission of the Authors.

Issue 2.0

September 2004

Part No. 36217-02A

## Acknowledgments

- Rorke and the Rorke logo are registered trademarks of Rorke Data. RAIDWatch is a trademark of Infortrend Technology, Inc.
- All other names, brands, products or services are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

# Contents

Preface .....	xi
International Standards .....	xii
Potential for Radio Frequency Interference .....	xii
European Regulations .....	xiii
Safety .....	xiii
Rack System Precautions .....	xvi
ESD Precautions .....	xvii
Data Security .....	xvii
Special Tools and Equipment .....	xviii
Related Documentation .....	xviii
Revision History .....	xviii
<b>1 Introduction .....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 The Galaxy 16m RAID Controller .....	1
1.2 The Enclosure Core Product .....	2
1.2.1 <i>Enclosure Chassis</i> .....	2
1.2.2 <i>Tower Option</i> .....	3
1.3 The Plug-in Modules .....	4
1.3.1 <i>Power Supply/Cooling Module</i> .....	4
1.3.2 <i>Operators Panel</i> .....	6
1.3.3 <i>Controller Input/Output Module</i> .....	8
1.3.4 <i>Supported Configuration Tools</i> .....	10
1.3.5 <i>Drive Carrier Module</i> .....	12
1.3.6 <i>Dummy Carrier Modules</i> .....	13
1.3.7 <i>Blank Modules</i> .....	13
1.4 Visible and Audible Alarms .....	13
1.5 Galaxy 16m Technical Specification .....	14
1.5.1 <i>Dimensions</i> .....	14
1.5.2 <i>Weight</i> .....	15
1.5.3 <i>AC Power (450W PSU)</i> .....	15
1.5.4 <i>-48V DC Power (450W PSU)</i> .....	16
1.5.5 <i>PSU Safety and EMC Compliance</i> .....	16
1.5.6 <i>Power Cord</i> .....	16
1.5.7 <i>Environment</i> .....	16
1.5.8 <i>Interfaces</i> .....	17
1.5.9 <i>Controller I/O Module Specification</i> .....	18
1.5.10 <i>Drive Carrier Module Specification</i> .....	19

1.5.11 <i>SCSI Enclosure Services (SES) Support</i> .....	19
<b>2 Getting Started .....</b>	<b>21</b>
2.1 Introduction .....	21
2.2 Planning Your Installation .....	21
2.2.1 <i>Enclosure Bay Numbering Convention</i> .....	22
2.3 Enclosure Installation Procedures .....	23
2.3.1 <i>Pre-Requisites</i> .....	23
2.3.2 <i>Rack Mounting Rail Kit</i> .....	23
2.3.3 <i>Chassis Installation</i> .....	24
2.4 Power Supply/Cooling Module Installation .....	25
2.4.1 <i>Parts Check List</i> .....	25
2.4.2 <i>AC Power Supply/Cooling Module Procedure</i> .....	25
2.4.3 <i>-48V DC Power Supply/Cooling Module Procedure</i> .....	27
2.5 Controller I/O Module Configurations .....	32
2.5.1 <i>Internal Loop Structures</i> .....	32
2.6 FC-AL Interface .....	32
2.6.1 <i>Connecting Multiple Enclosures</i> .....	32
2.7 Controller I/O Module Installation .....	33
2.7.1 <i>Parts Check List</i> .....	33
2.7.2 <i>Procedure</i> .....	34
2.8 Drive Enclosure Device Addressing .....	35
2.9 Drive Carrier Configuration .....	37
2.9.1 <i>Planning and Configuring Your Installation</i> .....	37
2.10 Drive Carrier Installation .....	37
2.10.1 <i>Parts Check List</i> .....	37
2.10.2 <i>Procedure</i> .....	37
2.10.3 <i>Dummy Carrier Modules</i> .....	39
2.10.4 <i>Engaging the Anti-tamper Locks</i> .....	39
2.11 Power Cord Connection .....	40
2.11.1 <i>Parts Check List</i> .....	40
2.11.2 <i>Procedure</i> .....	40
2.12 Grounding Checks .....	41
<b>3 Operation .....</b>	<b>43</b>
3.1 Before You Begin .....	43
3.2 Power On .....	43
3.2.1 <i>Power Supply/Cooling Module LEDs</i> .....	43
3.3 Ops Panel LEDs .....	44
3.4 Starting the Drives .....	45
3.4.1 <i>Disk Drives LEDs</i> .....	46
3.5 Power Down .....	46
<b>4 RS 232 MUI Functional Description .....</b>	<b>47</b>
4.1 Logical Drive .....	47
4.2 Logical Volume .....	48
4.3 RAID Levels .....	48
4.3.1 <i>NRAID</i> .....	49
4.3.2 <i>JBOD</i> .....	50
4.3.3 <i>RAID 0</i> .....	50
4.3.4 <i>RAID 1</i> .....	50

4.3.5	<i>RAID (0+1)</i>	51
4.3.6	<i>RAID 3</i>	51
4.3.7	<i>RAID 5</i>	52
4.4	Spare Drives	52
4.4.1	<i>Global and Local Spare Drive</i>	52
4.5	Rebuild	54
4.5.1	<i>Automatic Rebuild</i>	54
4.5.2	<i>Manual Rebuild</i>	55
4.5.3	<i>Concurrent Rebuild in RAID (0+1)</i>	56
4.6	Logical Volume (Multi-Level RAID)	56
<b>5</b>	<b>RAID Planning</b>	<b>61</b>
5.1	Considerations	61
5.2	Configuring the Array	64
5.2.1	<i>Starting a RAID System</i>	64
5.3	Theory of Operation	65
5.3.1	<i>Fibre Channel Connectivity</i>	65
5.3.2	<i>Grouping Drives into an Array</i>	66
5.3.3	<i>Making Arrays Available to Hosts</i>	67
5.4	Tunable Parameters	68
<b>6</b>	<b>Out-of-Band via Serial Port &amp; Ethernet</b>	<b>71</b>
6.1	RS-232 Serial Port	71
6.1.1	<i>Starting RS232 Terminal Emulation</i>	71
6.2	Out-of-Band via Ethernet	72
6.2.1	<i>Method 1: Installing to a Management Computer</i>	72
6.2.2	<i>Method 2: Installing to the RAID System</i>	73
6.2.3	<i>Connecting Ethernet Port(s)</i>	75
6.2.4	<i>Configuring the Controller</i>	75
6.2.5	<i>NPC Onboard</i>	77
<b>7</b>	<b>Terminal Screen Messages</b>	<b>81</b>
7.1	The Initial Screen	81
7.2	Main Menu	82
7.3	Quick Installation	83
7.4	Logical Drive Status	83
7.5	Logical Volume Status	84
7.6	Drive Status	85
7.7	Channel Status	86
7.8	Controller Voltage and Temperature Monitoring	87
7.9	Viewing Event Logs on the Screen	87
<b>8</b>	<b>Terminal Operation</b>	<b>89</b>
8.1	Power on RAID Enclosure	89
8.2	Caching Parameters	89
8.2.1	<i>Optimization Modes</i>	89
8.2.2	<i>Optimization Mode and Stripe Size</i>	91
8.2.3	<i>Optimization for Random or Sequential I/O</i>	91
8.2.4	<i>Write-Back/Write-Through Cache Enable/Disable</i>	91
8.3	Viewing the Connected Drives	92
8.4	Creating a Logical Drive	93

8.4.1	<i>Choosing a RAID Level</i>	93
8.4.2	<i>Choosing Member Drives</i>	94
8.4.3	<i>Logical Drive Preferences</i>	94
8.4.4	<i>Maximum Drive Capacity</i>	94
8.4.5	<i>Assign Spare Drives</i>	94
8.4.6	<i>Disk Reserved Space</i>	95
8.4.7	<i>Logical Drive Assignments</i>	95
8.4.8	<i>Write Policy</i>	95
8.4.9	<i>Initialization Mode</i>	96
8.4.10	<i>Stripe Size</i>	96
8.5	<i>Creating a Logical Volume</i>	98
8.6	<i>Partitioning a Logical Drive/Logical Volume</i>	100
8.7	<i>Mapping a Logical Volume to Host LUN</i>	101
8.8	<i>Assigning Spare Drive, Rebuild Settings</i>	103
8.8.1	<i>Adding Local Spare Drive</i>	103
8.8.2	<i>Adding a Global Spare Drive</i>	104
8.9	<i>Viewing and Editing Logical Drive and Drive Members</i>	104
8.9.1	<i>Deleting Logical Drive</i>	105
8.9.2	<i>Deleting a Partition of a Logical Drive</i>	105
8.9.3	<i>Assigning Logical Drive Name</i>	106
8.9.4	<i>Rebuilding Logical Drive</i>	106
8.9.5	<i>Regenerating Logical Drive Parity</i>	107
8.9.6	<i>Media Scan</i>	108
8.9.7	<i>Write Policy</i>	108
8.10	<i>Viewing and Editing Host LUNs</i>	109
8.10.1	<i>Viewing or Deleting LUN Mappings</i>	109
8.10.2	<i>Edit Host-ID/WWN Name List</i>	109
8.10.3	<i>Pass-through Commands</i>	109
8.11	<i>Viewing and Editing Drives</i>	110
8.11.1	<i>Scanning New Drive</i>	110
8.11.2	<i>Identifying Drive</i>	111
8.11.3	<i>Deleting Spare Drive (Global/Local Spare Drive)</i>	111
8.12	<i>Viewing and Editing Channels</i>	112
8.12.1	<i>Channel Mode</i>	112
8.12.2	<i>Viewing and Editing IDs/Host Channel</i>	113
8.12.3	<i>Adding an ID (Primary/Secondary Controller ID)</i>	113
8.12.4	<i>Deleting an ID</i>	114
8.12.5	<i>Setting a Primary Controller SCSI ID/Drive Channel</i>	114
8.12.6	<i>Data Rate</i>	115
8.13	<i>System Functions</i>	116
8.13.1	<i>Mute Beeper</i>	116
8.13.2	<i>Change Password</i>	116
8.13.3	<i>Changing the Password</i>	117
8.13.4	<i>Setting a New Password</i>	117
8.13.5	<i>Reset Controller</i>	118
8.13.6	<i>Shutdown Controller</i>	118
8.14	<i>Controller Parameters</i>	119
8.14.1	<i>Controller Name</i>	119
8.14.2	<i>Saving NVRAM to Disks</i>	119
8.14.3	<i>Restore NVRAM from Disks</i>	120
8.14.4	<i>Controller Unique Identifier</i>	121

8.14.5 Set Controller Date and Time .....	122
8.15 Drive Information .....	123
8.15.1 View Drive Information .....	123
<b>9 Fibre Operation .....</b>	<b>125</b>
9.1 Overview .....	125
9.2 Major Concerns .....	125
9.3 Supported Features .....	126
9.3.1 Hardware Features .....	126
9.3.2 Multiple Target IDs .....	127
9.3.3 Drive IDs .....	127
9.3.4 In-band Fibre Support .....	127
9.3.5 Redundant Controller Configuration .....	127
9.3.6 Active to Active Redundant Controller .....	127
9.3.7 Example: Configuring the Controller 2Gbit Model .....	128
9.4 LUN Filtering: RAID-Based Mapping .....	129
9.4.1 Creating LUN Masks .....	130
9.4.2 WWN Name List .....	131
9.4.3 Logical Unit to Host LUN Mapping .....	131
9.4.4 LUN Mask (ID Range) Configuration .....	133
9.4.5 Filter Type: Include or Exclude .....	134
9.4.6 Access Mode: Read Only or Read/Write .....	134
9.4.7 Sample Configuration: .....	135
<b>10 Advanced Configuration .....</b>	<b>137</b>
10.1 RAID Expansion .....	137
10.1.1 Logical Drive Expansion .....	137
10.1.2 Mode 1 Expansion: Adding a Drive to a Logical Drive .....	138
10.1.3 Mode 2 Expansion: Copy and Replace Drives with Drives of Larger Capacity .....	141
10.1.4 Expand Logical Drive .....	144
10.1.5 Expand Logical Volume .....	145
10.1.6 Example: RAID Expansion in Windows 2000® Server .....	145
10.2 Fault Prevention .....	151
10.2.1 Clone Failing Drive .....	151
10.2.2 SMART (Self-Monitoring, Analysis and Reporting Technology) .....	154
10.3 Host-side and Drive-side SCSI Parameters .....	159
10.3.1 Host-side SCSI Parameters .....	159
10.3.2 Drive-side Parameters .....	165
10.4 Monitoring and Safety Mechanisms .....	170
10.4.1 View Peripheral Device Status .....	170
10.4.2 Controller Auto-Shutdown - Event Trigger Operations .....	171
10.5 Disk Array Parameters .....	172
10.5.1 Rebuild Priority .....	172
10.5.2 Verification on Writes .....	172
10.6 Controller Self-Monitoring .....	173
10.6.1 Changing Monitoring Thresholds .....	174
<b>11 Redundant Controller .....</b>	<b>177</b>
11.1 Operation Theory .....	177
11.1.1 Setup Flowchart .....	177
11.1.2 Considerations with Physical Connection .....	178

11.1.3 <i>Grouping Hard Drives and LUN Mapping</i> .....	179
11.1.4 <i>Fault Tolerance</i> .....	182
11.2 Preparing Controllers .....	187
11.2.1 <i>Requirements</i> .....	187
11.2.2 <i>Limitations</i> .....	188
11.2.3 <i>Configurable Parameters</i> .....	188
11.3 Configuration .....	189
11.3.1 <i>Via Terminal Emulation</i> .....	190
11.3.2 <i>When and How Is the Failed Controller Replaced?</i> .....	193
<b>12 Record of Settings .....</b>	<b>197</b>
12.1 View and Edit Logical Drives .....	198
12.2 View and Edit Logical Volumes .....	199
12.3 View and Edit Host LUNs .....	200
12.4 View and Edit Drives .....	202
12.5 View and Edit Channels .....	203
12.6 View and Edit Configuration Parameters .....	204
12.7 View and Edit Peripheral Devices .....	206
12.8 Save NVRAM to Disk, Restore from Disk .....	207
12.9 RAID Security: Password .....	208
<b>13 Troubleshooting and Problem Solving .....</b>	<b>209</b>
13.1 Overview .....	209
13.1.1 <i>Emulation Limitations</i> .....	209
13.1.2 <i>Initial Start-up Problems</i> .....	209
13.2 LEDs .....	210
13.2.1 <i>Power Supply/Cooling Module</i> .....	210
13.2.2 <i>Ops Panel</i> .....	211
13.3 Audible Alarm .....	212
13.3.1 <i>Audible Alarm Mute</i> .....	213
13.4 Troubleshooting .....	213
13.4.1 <i>System Faults</i> .....	213
13.4.2 <i>Power Supply/Cooling Faults</i> .....	214
13.4.3 <i>Thermal Control</i> .....	214
13.4.4 <i>Thermal Alarm</i> .....	215
13.4.5 <i>Thermal Shutdown</i> .....	216
13.5 Drive Carrier Module Faults .....	216
13.5.1 <i>Dummy Carrier Modules</i> .....	217
13.5.2 <i>Auto Start Failure</i> .....	217
13.6 Dealing with Hardware Faults .....	217
13.7 Continuous Operation During Replacement .....	217
13.8 Replacing a Module .....	217
13.8.1 <i>Power Supply/Cooling Modules</i> .....	218
13.8.2 <i>Ops Panel</i> .....	223
13.8.3 <i>Controller I/O Module</i> .....	223
13.8.4 <i>Battery Replacement</i> .....	225
13.8.5 <i>Drive Carrier Module</i> .....	226
13.9 Spare Parts and Ancillary Items .....	227
<b>A System Functions: Upgrading Firmware .....</b>	<b>229</b>
A.1 Upgrading Firmware .....	229

A.2 New Features Supported with Firmware 3.21 .....	229
A.2.1 <i>Background RS-232 Firmware Download</i> .....	229
A.2.2 <i>Redundant Controller Rolling Firmware Upgrade</i> .....	229
A.2.3 <i>Redundant Controller Firmware Sync-version</i> .....	229
A.3 Upgrading Firmware Using In-band SCSI + RAIDWatch Manager .....	230
A.3.1 <i>Establish the In-band SCSI Connection in RAIDWatch Manager</i> .....	230
A.3.2 <i>Upgrade both Boot Record and Firmware Binaries</i> .....	230
A.3.3 <i>Upgrade the Firmware Binary Only</i> .....	231
A.4 Upgrading Firmware Using RS-232 Terminal Emulation .....	232
A.4.1 <i>Establishing the Connection for the RS-232 Terminal Emulation</i> .....	232
A.4.2 <i>Upgrading both Boot Record and Firmware Binaries</i> .....	232
A.4.3 <i>Upgrading the Firmware Binary Only</i> .....	233
<b>B Event Messages .....</b>	<b>235</b>
B.1 Event Index .....	235
B.1.1 <i>Controller Event</i> .....	235
B.1.2 <i>Drive SCSI Channel/Drive Error</i> .....	236
B.1.3 <i>Logical Drive Event</i> .....	238
B.1.4 <i>General Target Events</i> .....	239
B.2 Controller Event .....	241
B.3 Drive SCSI Channel/Drive Error .....	243
B.4 Logical Drive Event .....	249
B.5 General Target Events .....	253
Glossary .....	263
Index .....	265



# Preface

## What is in this guide

This user guide gives you step-by-step instructions on how to install, configure and connect a Galaxy 16m RAID Controller storage subsystem to your host computer system, and how to use and maintain the system. It also provides all of the necessary information that a system administrator needs to configure and maintain the RAID controllers, utilizing the RS232 Management User Interface (MUI)).

## Who should use this guide

This user guide assumes that you have a working knowledge of the Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop (FC-AL) and Advanced Technology Attachment (ATA) environments into which you are installing the Galaxy 16m system. If you do not have these skills, or are not confident with the instructions in this guide, do not proceed with the installation.

## About this guide

This user guide provides the following information:

- [Chapter 1, "Introduction", on page 1](#) provides an overview of the Galaxy 16m storage subsystem and describes of the modules which make up the subsystem.
- [Chapter 2, "Getting Started", on page 21](#) provides step-by-step instructions for installation and initial set-up.
- [Chapter 3, "Operation", on page 43](#) tells you how to power on/off the Galaxy 16m, monitor the LEDs and start the drives.
- [Chapter 4, "RS 232 MUI Functional Description", on page 47](#) introduces the RS232 MUI and RAID, describing the functions of RAID levels, logical drives, spare drives, and logical volumes
- [Chapter 5 , "RAID Planning", on page 61](#) introduces basic RAID concepts and configurations, including RAID levels, logical drives, spare drives, and logical volumes. It is recommended that users unfamiliar with RAID technologies should read this chapter before creating a configuration.
- [Chapter 6, "Out-of-Band via Serial Port & Ethernet", on page 71](#) tells you how to begin with a RAID. At the beginning of this chapter, we raise some basic questions of which the user should know the answers prior to creating a RAID.
- [Chapter 7 , "Terminal Screen Messages", on page 81](#) teaches you how to configure the RS-232C terminal emulation interface and the connection through a LAN port.
- [Chapter 8, "Terminal Operation", on page 89](#) teaches you how to interpret the information found on the RS-232 terminal emulation.
- [Chapter 9 , "Fibre Operation", on page 125](#) gives step-by-step instructions on how to create a RAID via the RS-232 terminal.
- [Chapter 10, "Advanced Configuration", on page 137](#) includes all the Fibre-specific functions implemented since the firmware release 3.12.
- [Chapter 11 , "Redundant Controller", on page 177](#) provides the advanced options for RAID configuration.

- Chapter 12, "Record of Settings", on page 197 addresses the concerns regarding the redundant controller configuration and the configuration process.
- Chapter 13, "Troubleshooting and Problem Solving", on page 209 provides help and guidance on troubleshooting and problem solving.
- Appendix A, "System Functions: Upgrading Firmware", on page 229 teaches you how to upgrade firmware and boot record.
- Appendix B , "Event Messages", on page 235 lists all of the controller event messages.
- , "Glossary", on page 263 defines common terms used throughout this user guide.

## International Standards

The Galaxy 16m storage system complies with the requirements of the following agencies and standards:

- CE to IEC 950/EN60950
- UL 60950
- cUL

## Potential for Radio Frequency Interference

### USA Federal Communications Commission (FCC)

**Note**

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used in order to meet FCC emission limits. The supplier is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables and connectors or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

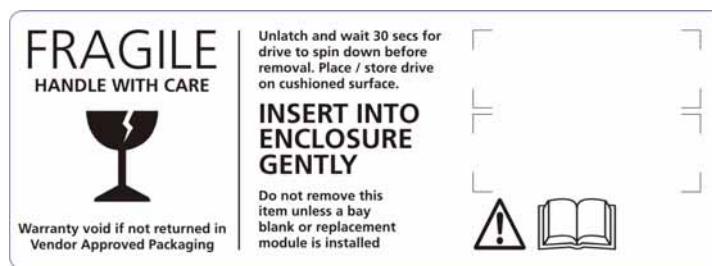
# European Regulations

This equipment complies with European Regulations EN 55022 Class A: Limits and Methods of Measurement of Radio Disturbance Characteristics of Information Technology Equipments and EN50082-1: Generic Immunity.

## Safety

All plug-in modules are part of the fire enclosure and must only be removed when a replacement can be immediately added. The system must not be run without all units in place.

Permanently unplug the unit if you think that it has become damaged in any way and before you move it.



### Drive Carrier Module Caution Label:

- Do not operate with modules missing
- Spin down time 30 seconds
- A Galaxy 16m enclosure can weigh up to 37kg (81lb). Do not try to lift it by yourself.



### Chassis Warning Label: Weight Hazard

- Do not lift the Galaxy 16m by the handles on the PSU/Cooling module, they are not designed to support the weight of the populated enclosure.
- In order to comply with applicable safety, emission and thermal requirements no covers should be removed and all bays must be fitted with plug-in modules.
- The Galaxy 16m unit must only be operated from a power supply input voltage range of 100 - 120 VAC or 200-240 VAC.
- The plug on the power supply cord is used as the main disconnect device. Ensure that the socket outlets are located near the equipment and are easily accessible.
- The equipment is intended to operate with two working PSUs.

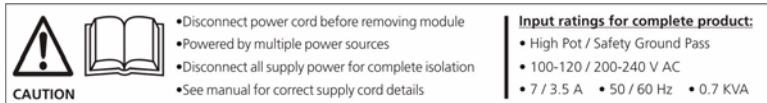


**Controller Module Caution Label: Do not operate with modules missingPSU/Cooling Module**



**Caution Label: Do not operate with modules missing**

- A faulty Power Supply/Cooling module must be replaced with a fully operational module within 24 hours.
- If powered by multiple AC sources, disconnect all supply power for complete isolation.



**PSU Warning Label: Power Hazards**

- The power connection should always be disconnected prior to removal of the Power Supply/Cooling module from the enclosure.
- A safe electrical earth connection must be provided to the power cord. Check the grounding of the enclosure before applying power.
- Provide a suitable power source with electrical overload protection to meet the requirements laid down in the technical specification.

**Warning** **Do not remove covers from the PSU. Danger of electric shock inside. Return the PSU to your supplier for repair.**



**PSU Safety Label: Electric Shock Hazard Inside**

**Caution** *If this equipment is used in a manner not specified by the manufacturer, the protection provided by the equipment may be impaired.*

## Fibre Channel Host & Expansion Connectors

**Important** If fitted with Optical modules, the modules must be a UL (or other North American NRTL) RECOGNISED COMPONENT, must be approved by TUV (or other European Product Safety test house) and the laser in the module must comply with Laser Class 1, US 21 CFR (J) and EN 60825-1

If passive copper cables are connected, the cable must not have a connection to the supply pins, pins 15 & 16.

## Battery Safety

The battery is user replaceable, please refer to the Battery Replacement Procedure.

**Warning** **There is a danger of explosion if the battery is incorrectly replaced.**

- Dispose of used batteries in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and National regulations.

## -48V DC PSU/Cooling Module Safety Requirements

The following paragraphs summarize additional safety requirements to be observed when installing or operating a -48V DC Power Supply/Cooling module: Please refer to section [2.4.3.1, "-48V DC PSU Safety Requirements", on page 28](#) for full details of European and North American safety requirements applicable to this module.

### Voltage Rating

The marked rated voltage for the -48VDC Power Supply/Cooling module is -40V DC to -60V DC. The equipment is intended to operate from a centralized dc supply system with a NOMINAL voltage of -48V DC or -60V DC. The voltage from a nominal -48V DC system may vary, due to float charging or discharge conditions, from -40V DC to -60V DC. The voltage from a nominal -60V DC system may vary, due to float charging or discharge conditions, from -48V DC to -72V DC.

**Caution** *If this equipment is used in a manner not specified by the manufacturer, the protection provided by the equipment may be impaired.*

### Equipment Location

The rear of this Equipment (in particular the supply terminals and wiring to the terminals on the power supply) must only be located in a "**RESTRICTED ACCESS LOCATION**" where both of the following apply (Ref.UL60950):

- access can only be gained by SERVICE PERSONNEL or by USERS who have been instructed about the reasons for the restrictions applied to the location and about any precautions that shall be taken; and

- access is through the use of a TOOL or lock and key, or other means of security and is controlled by the authority responsible for the location.

#### **Disconnect Device**

The wiring installation must provide a disconnect device close to the product.

#### **Wiring**

Must be connected in accordance with the local and National wiring regulations.

#### **Wire Temperature Rating**

The supply wiring to the power supply terminal blocks must have a minimum temperature rating of 75°C.mu

#### **Circuit Protection**

The building installation must provide overcurrent and short circuit protection in the non earthed supply conductor.

## **-48V DC PSU: USA and Canadian Safety Requirements**

#### **Wiring Methods**

Wiring method must be code compliant in the field.

Wiring methods must be in accordance with the U.S. National Electric Code, Article 300.

#### **Earthing**

This equipment is designed to permit the connection of the earthed conductor (+) of the dc supply circuit to the earthing conductor at the equipment.

#### **Protective Earth Conductor Size**

The protective earth conductor size must be suitable for the maximum fault current that the installation can provide. U.S. National Electric Code, Article 250-122

#### **Branch Circuit Protection**

The PSU must be connected to a Branch circuit that is protected by a LISTED Branch Protector. The rating of the LISTED Branch Protector >= 125% of the product rating and the rating of the LISTED Branch Protector =< current rating of wire supplying the equipment. U.S. National Electric Code, Article 210-3, Article 240.

## **Rack System Precautions**

The following safety requirements must be considered when the unit is mounted in a rack.

- The rack design should incorporate stabilizing features suitable to prevent the rack from tipping or being pushed over during installation or in normal use.
- When loading a rack with the units, fill the rack from the bottom up and empty from the top down.
- System must be operated with low pressure rear exhaust installation (Back pressure created by rack doors and obstacles not to exceed 5 pascals [0.5mm Water gauge])

- The rack design should take into consideration the maximum operating ambient temperature for the unit, which is 35°C with a single Power Supply/Cooling module fitted and 40°C when dual Power Supply/Cooling modules are fitted.
- The rack should have a safe electrical distribution system. It must provide overcurrent protection for the unit and must not be overloaded by the total number of units installed in the rack. Consideration of the units nameplate rating should be used when addressing these concerns.
- The electrical distribution system must provide a reliable earth for each unit and the rack.
- Each power supply in each unit has an earth leakage current of 1.2mA. The design of the electrical distribution system must take into consideration the total earth leakage current from all the power supplies in all the units. The rack will require labelling with "HIGH LEAKAGE CURRENT. Earth connection essential before connecting supply".
- The rack when configured with the units must meet the safety requirements of UL 60950 and IEC 60950.

## ESD Precautions

**Caution** *It is recommended that you fit and check a suitable anti-static wrist or ankle strap and observe all conventional ESD precautions when handling Galaxy 16m plug-in modules and components. Avoid contact with backplane components and module connectors, etc.*

## Data Security

- Power down your host computer and all attached peripheral devices before beginning installation.
- Each enclosure contains up to 16 removable disk drive modules. Disk units are fragile. Handle them with care, and keep them away from strong magnetic fields.
- All the supplied plug-in modules and blanking plates must be in place for the air to flow correctly around the enclosure and also to complete the internal circuitry.
- If the subsystem is used with modules or blanking plates missing for more than a few minutes, the enclosure can overheat, causing power failure and data loss. Such use may also invalidate the warranty.
- If you remove any drive module, you may lose data.
  - If you remove a drive module, replace it immediately. If it is faulty, replace it with a drive module of the same type and capacity
- Ensure that all disk drives are removed from the enclosure before attempting to manhandle or move the rack installation.
- Do not abandon your backup routines. No system is completely foolproof.

# **Special Tools and Equipment**

There are no special tools required but in order to complete the assembly of some configurations you may need the following (not supplied):

- Security keys (one of these should be included with your Galaxy 16m enclosure for use with the drive locks).

## Related Documentation

- Galaxy 16m Quick Installation Guide (P/N 36216-01)
- RS-Salient Series Rack Installation Guide (P/N 43638-02)
- RAIDwatch User Guide (P/N 45374-01)

# Revision History

# Chapter 1

# Introduction

## 1.1 The Galaxy 16m Series RAID Controller System



**Figure 1–1** Galaxy 16m Series RAID Controller System

## 1.2 The Enclosure Core Product

The Galaxy 16m Series RAID Controller design concept is based on a subsystem together with a set of plug-in modules. The Galaxy 16m subsystem as supplied comprises:

- **Chassis and Backplane** with integral **Operators Panel**.(See [Figure 1–10](#))
- Up to 16 Serial ATA (SATA) **Drive Carrier modules** (See [Figure 1–12](#))  
(Parallel ATA (PATA) drives with appropriate transition cards for SATA-PATA conversion)  
**Note:** The mixing of SATA and PATA drives in the same enclosure is not supported.
- Dummy drive carrier modules.
- Two plug-in **Power Supply/Cooling modules**, two variants are available:
  - .AC, 450W PSU (see [Figure 1–5](#))
  - -48V DC 450W PSU (see [Figure 1–6](#))
- Either one or two Serial ATA plug-in LRC **Input/Output Modules**, with integrated Infortrend IFT-1728RMN SATA RAID controllers and 1.5Gb internal operating speed/2Gb external operating speed, known as **Controller** modules. (See [Figure 1–8](#)).

### 1.2.1 Enclosure Chassis

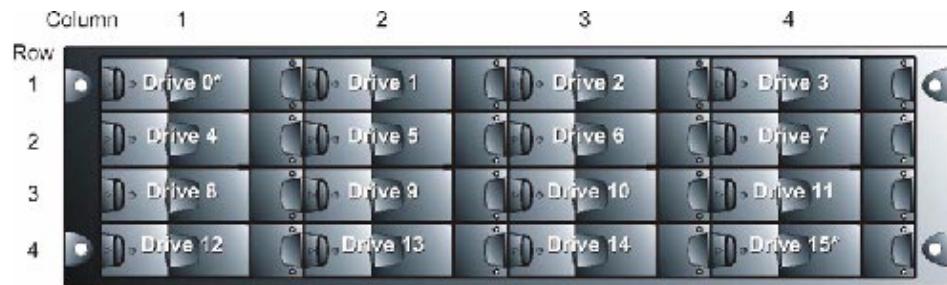
The chassis consists of a sheet metal enclosure assembly containing a Backplane printed circuit board (PCB) and module runner system This chassis assembly also includes an integral Operators (Ops) Panel, mounted at the rear.

The chassis assembly contains 16 drive bays at the front, each of which accommodates a plug-in drive carrier module. The 16 drive bays are arranged in 4 rows of 4 drives. At the rear, the chassis assembly contains the integral ops panel module and four plug-in module bays to house two Power Supply/Cooling modules and two Controller I/O modules.

The Backplane PCB provides logic level signal and low voltage power distribution paths. [Figure 1–2](#) and [Figure 1–3](#) show front and rear views of a Galaxy 16m chassis respectively.

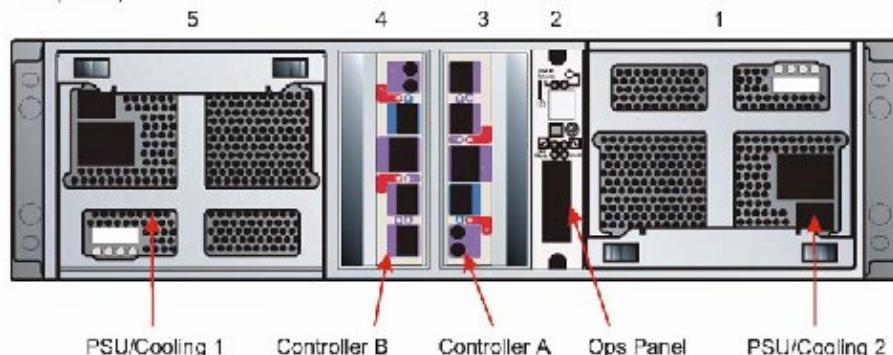
The chassis is fitted with 19 inch Rack mounting features which enables it to be fitted to standard 19 inch racks and uses 3EIA units of rack space.

- A Bay is defined as the space required to house a single 1.0" high 3.5 inch disk drive in its carrier module. e.g. a 1 x 4 bay module would take the space of 1 drive width by 4 drive bays high (in rack mount configuration).
- A 4 x 4 Chassis fitted with 19 inch Rack mounting features enables it to be fitted to standard 19 inch racks. It uses 3EIA units of rack space



\* SES Drives (there must be a drive present in Bay 1/1 or 4/4 to enable SES communications to operate).

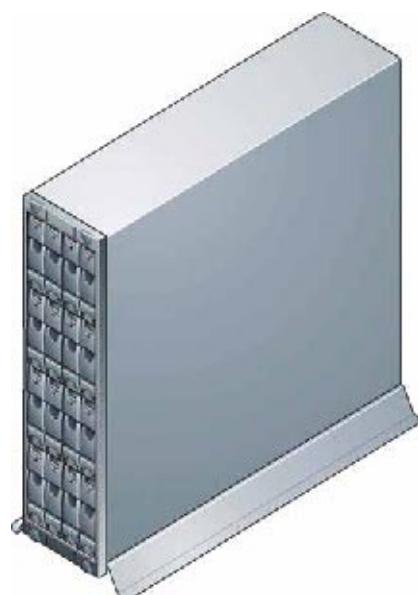
**Figure 1–2** Enclosure Chassis (Front)



**Figure 1–3** Enclosure Chassis (Rear)

## 1.2.2 Tower Option

An optional tower kit is available, which can be fitted to the rack chassis described here.



**Figure 1–4** Galaxy 16m Tower Option

# 1.3 The Plug-in Modules

A Galaxy 16m Enclosure requires the following modules for normal operation:

- 2 x Power Supply/Cooling modules
- 1 x Operator Panel
- 2 x Controller I/O modules
- Up to 16 SATA drive carrier modules and/or dummy drive carrier modules, as required.

**Note** No drive bays should be left completely empty.

## 1.3.1 Power Supply/Cooling Module

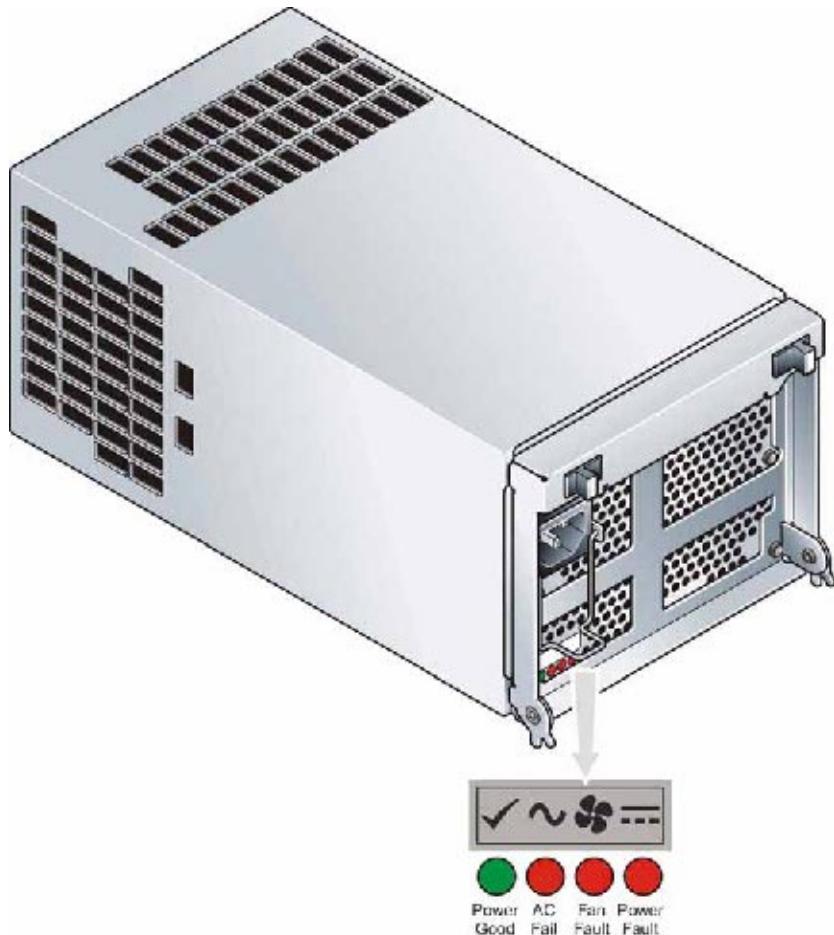
Two variants of the Power Supply/Cooling module are available for the Galaxy 16m:

- Auto ranging AC 450W Power Supply/Cooling module
- -48V DC 450W Power Supply/Cooling module

**Warning** Do not mix Power Supply/Cooling modules of different types.

### 1.3.1.1 AC Power Supply/Cooling Module

Two Power Supply/Cooling modules ([Figure 1–5](#)) are supplied mounted in the rear of the enclosure as part of the subsystem core product.



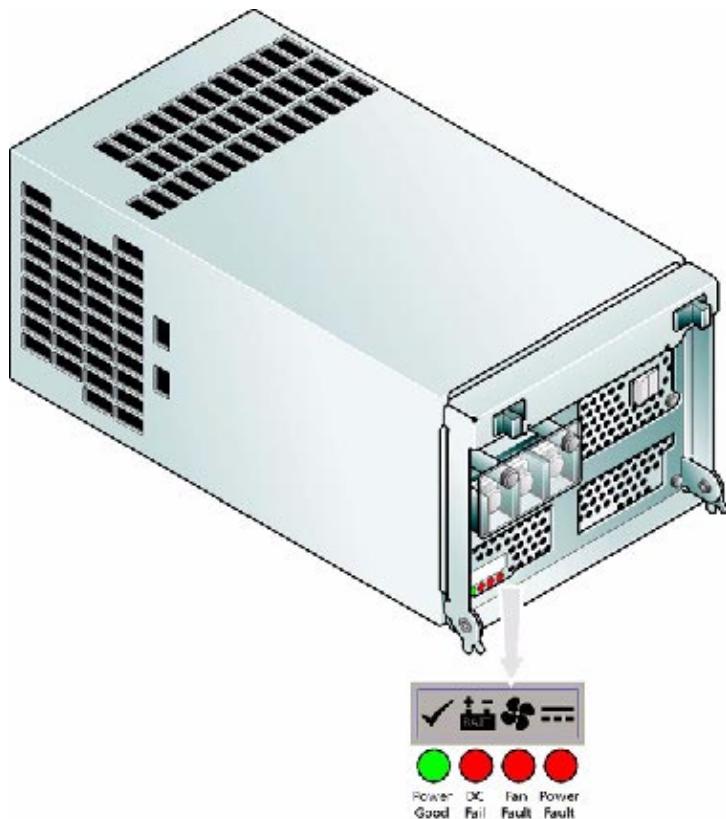
**Figure 1–5** AC Power Supply/Cooling Module

PSU voltage operating ranges are nominally 115V or 230V AC, selected automatically.

Four LEDs mounted on the front panel of the Power Supply/Cooling module (see [Figure 2–1](#)) indicate the status of the PSU and the fans.

### 1.3.1.2 -48V DC Power Supply/Cooling Module

A -48V DC Input Power Supply/Cooling Module variant is also available ([Figure 1–6](#)).



**Figure 1–6** -48V DC Power Supply/Cooling Module

**Warning** The -48V DC Power Supply/Cooling module is not an operator removable part. It should only be removed by a technician who has knowledge of the hazards present within the module.

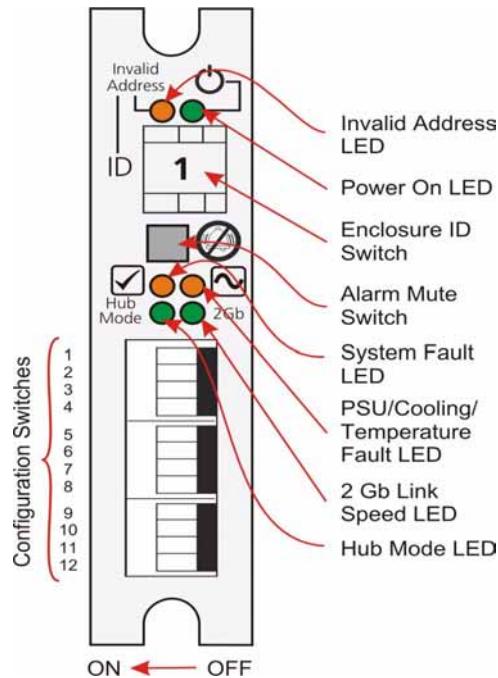
### 1.3.1.3 Multiple Power Supply/Cooling Modules

The Galaxy 16m must always be operated with two Power Supply/Cooling modules fitted. The two Power Supply/Cooling modules operate together so that if one fails the other maintains the power supply and cooling while you replace the faulty unit.

Module replacement should only take a few minutes to perform but must be completed within 10 minutes from removal of the failed module.

## 1.3.2 Operators Panel

Supplied as an integral part of the Enclosure core product, a typical Operators (Ops) Panel is shown in Figure 1-7.



**Figure 1-7** Ops Panel

The Ops Panel provides the enclosure with a micro controller which is used to monitor and control all elements of the Enclosure.

### 1.3.2.1 Ops Panel Indicators and Switches

The Ops Panel includes Light Emitting Diodes (LEDs) which show the status for all modules, an Audible Alarm which indicates when a fault state is present, a push-button Alarm Mute Switch and a thumb wheel Enclosure ID switch.

The Ops Panel switch functions are shown in [Table 1-1](#).

**Table 1–1** Ops Panel Switch Functions (*Default settings for Galaxy 16m Controller usage at 2Gb/s*)

<b>Switch Number</b> *See Sw 11	<b>Function</b>	<b>Recommended Setting</b>		<b>Definition</b>
<b>1</b>	Not Used			
<b>2</b>	Not Used			
<b>3</b>	Hub Mode Select	On		Enable: RAID host FC ports will be linked together internally.
		Off		Disable: RAID host FC ports will be independently connected.
<b>4</b>	Not Used			
<b>5 &amp; 6</b>	RAID host hub speed select switches	<b>Sw 5</b>	<b>Sw 6</b>	
		Off	Off	Force 1Gb/s
		On	Off	Force 2Gb/s
		Off	On	Auto
		On	On	Auto
<b>7 &amp; 8</b>	Not Used			
<b>9 &amp; 10</b>	Drive Addressing Mode Selection	<b>Sw 9</b>	<b>Sw 10</b>	
		On	On	Mode 0
<b>11</b>	SOFT SELECT	On		Select functions using the hardware switches.
<b>12</b>	Not Used			

**Important** Switch settings are only read at Power On.

**Note** When using host side multi-pathing/fail over software that does not dynamically discover of new data paths and no external switch is present, Hub Mode will be required. Hub Mode may also be required in alternative configurations.

### 1.3.3 Controller Input/Output Module

The Galaxy 16m storage subsystem includes an enclosure with rear facing bays which houses two Loop Resiliency Circuit (LRC) I/O modules with integrated Infortrend IFT-1728RMN SATA RAID controllers, known as Controller modules (see [Figure 1–3](#)). The controller supports RAID levels 0, 1, 3, 5, 10 and 50.

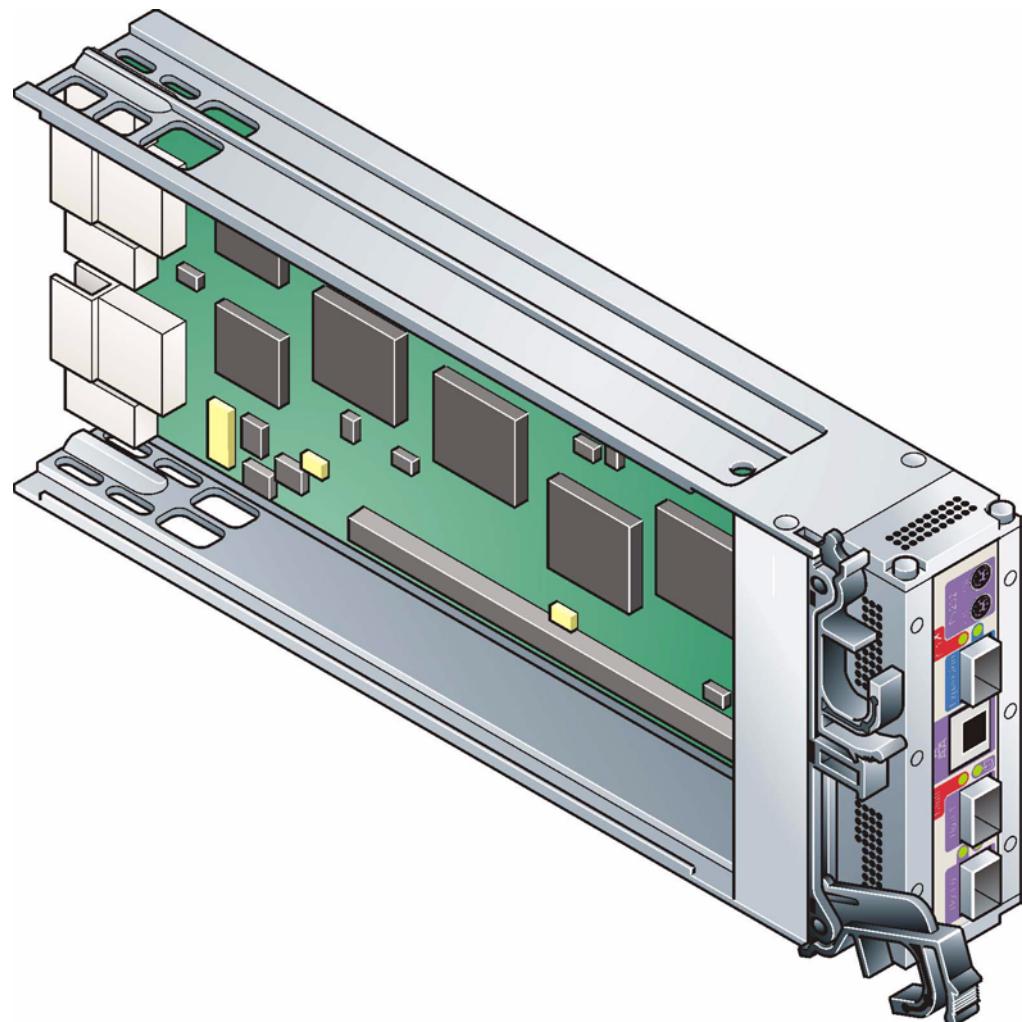
The plug-in I/O modules have been designed for integration into a Galaxy 16m storage subsystem, providing external FCAL cable interfacing with up to 16 SATA or PATA disk drives.

Processors housed on the I/O modules provide enclosure management and interface to devices on the Backplane, PSU, Controller and Ops Panel, to monitor internal functions.

The module incorporates the following LED indicators:

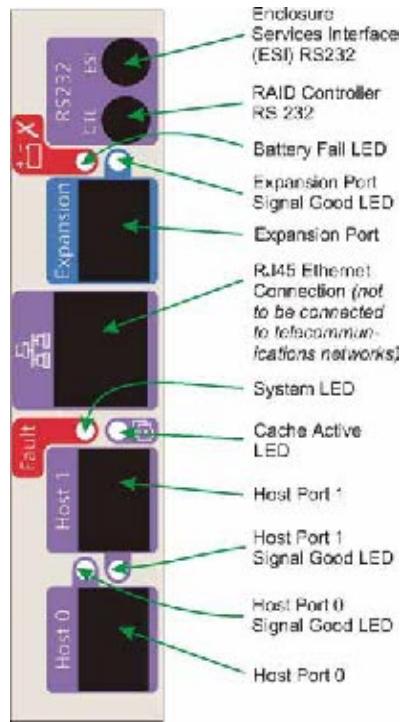
**Table 1–2** Controller Module LEDs

LED Functions	Color	Description
<b>Battery Fail</b>	Amber	<p>When ON this LED denotes the following status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Battery voltage is lower than 2.5V.</li> <li>• Battery temperature is abnormal (normal 0° - 45°C on charge state)</li> <li>• BBU is <i>NOT</i> present</li> </ul> <p>When FLASHING, the LED denotes BBU is charging.</p> <p>When OFF, the LED denotes BBU charge is done.</p>
<b>Expansion Port Signal Good</b>	Green	When ON this LED denotes that running FC signal is good.
<b>RJ45 Ethernet Connection</b>	Green	LED1: Static ON while LAN port status is link.
	Green	LED2: FLASHING while LAN port status is active.
<b>System</b>	Amber	When ON this LED denotes that the Controller is failed or CEMI card is failed.
<b>Cache Active</b>	Amber	<p>When ON this LED denotes the following status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When system is with power, ON denotes cache memory contains data or ECC errors are detected.</li> <li>• When system is without power, ON denotes cache memory contains data and is held up by BBU.</li> </ul> <p>This LED is local to each controller.</p>
<b>Host Port 1 Signal Good</b>	Green	When ON this LED denotes that incoming FC signal is GOOD.
<b>Host port 0 Signal Good</b>	Green	When ON this LED denotes that incoming FC signal is GOOD.



**Figure 1–8** Controller I/O Module

**Important** Fitting of a RAID controller to the LRC module is a factory only operation.

**Figure 1–9** Controller Front Panel

The Controller module operates at 1 or 2 Gb/s.

- One external port for expansion to further enclosures is provided by an SFP connector
- Two external ports to the host controllers are provided from the Controller module with Form Factor (SFP) GBIC modules, auto-bypass at the output ports is provided.
- An RJ45 10/100 Base T Ethernet controller management port is provided on the LRC board, interfacing to the controller through 2 RS232 serial and GPIO lines.

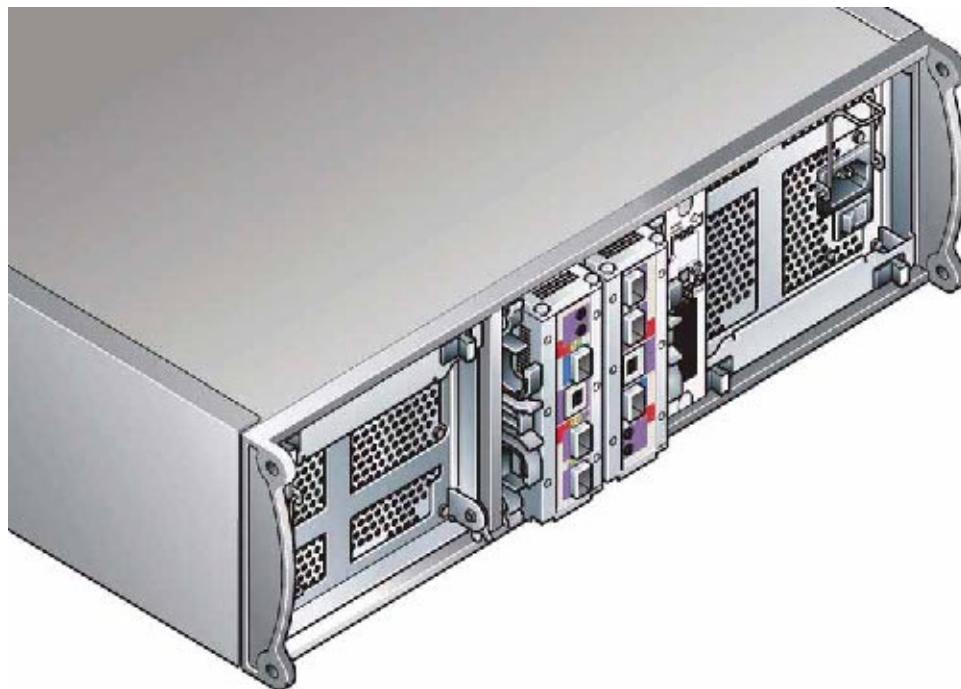
**Caution** *The RJ45 Ethernet connector on the LRC module must not be connected to telecommunications networks.*

- The Controller module also incorporates a standby Li-ion battery pack, 72 hours cache hold up time (512Mb). The battery cell has thermal protection and is connected to the RAID controller by flying lead.

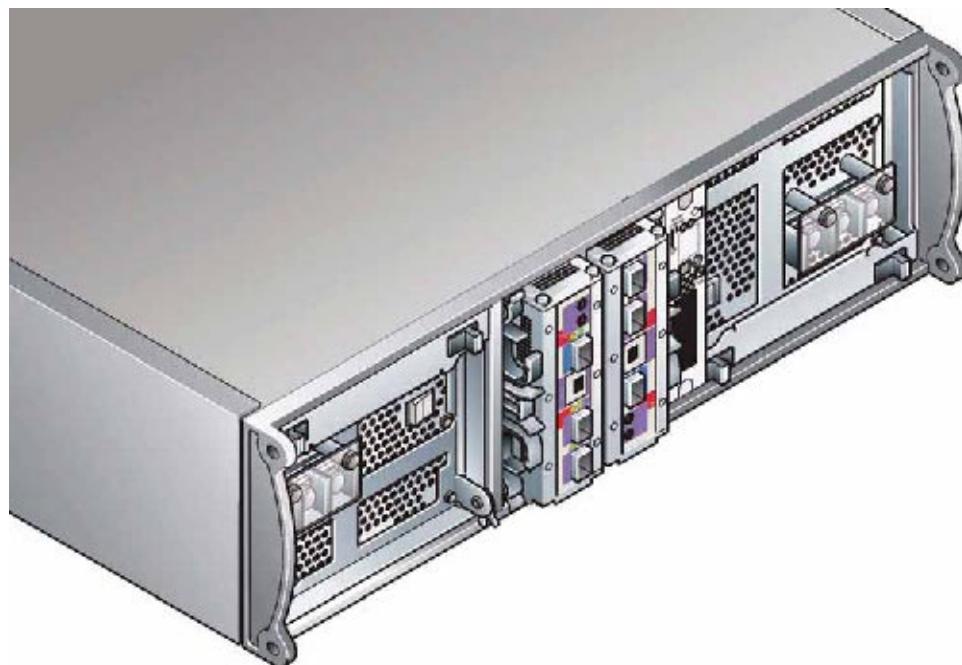
### 1.3.4 Supported Configuration Tools

- RAIDWatch:  
Firmware version: 3.27d2 and above: Please contact your supplier for the latest release.
- R232 Management User Interface (MUI). Please refer to [Chapter 4](#) through [Chapter 12](#) inclusive for detailed information.

The RS-1600 product range is available in 1Gb/2Gb, JBOD or RAID variants for operation with Fibre Channel or Serial ATA drives, by changing the LRC modules. Please contact your supplier for details



**Figure 1–10** Galaxy 16m Enclosure with Controller I/O Modules and AC PSUs Installed



**Figure 1–11** Galaxy 16m Enclosure with Controller I/O Modules and DC PSUs Installed

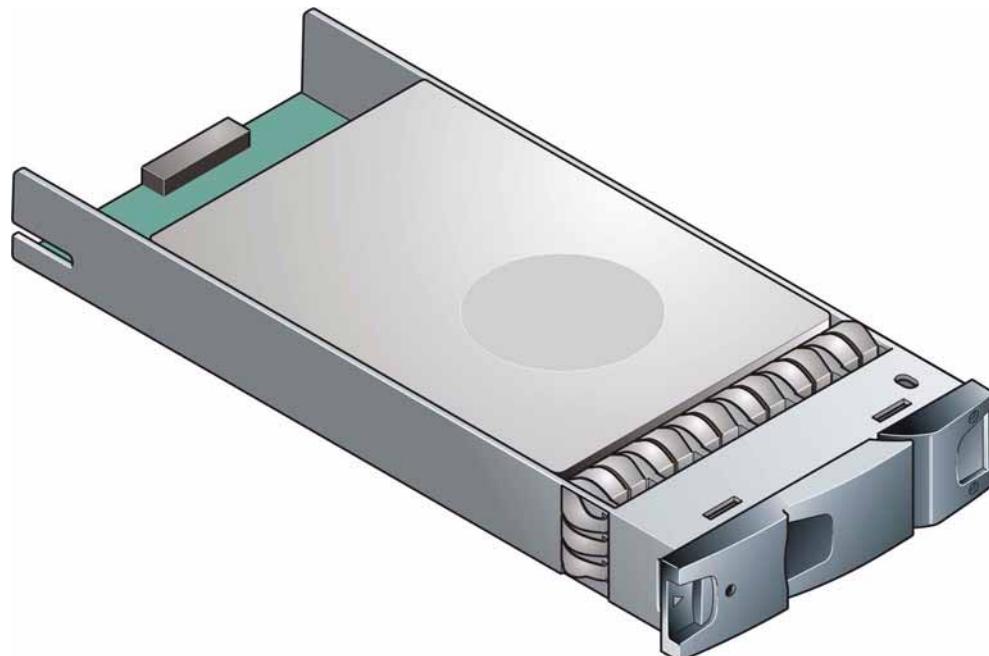
### 1.3.5 Drive Carrier Module

The Drive Carrier Module comprises a hard disk mounted in a carrier. Each drive bay will house a single Low Profile 1.0 inch high, 3.5 inch form factor disk drive in its carrier. The carrier has mounting locations for ATA or FC-AL drives.

Each disk drive is enclosed in a die-cast aluminum carrier which provides excellent thermal conduction, radio frequency and electro-magnetic induction protection and affords the drive maximum physical protection.

The front cap also supports an ergonomic handle which provides the following functions:

- Camming of carrier into and out of drive bays.
- Positive 'spring loading' of the drive/backplane connector.
- An anti-tamper lock operated by a torx socket type key.



**Figure 1-12** Drive Carrier Module

#### 1.3.5.1 SATA - PATA Transition Card

For Serial ATA use a Transition card is attached to the rear of each drive, this provides a SCA-2 interface to the drive carrier using the same pins as Fibre Channel.

There are two types of Transition card providing 1.5 Gb/s, one for standard Parallel ATA disk drives and the other for Serial ATA drives.

Transition cards provide two paths to each drive, thus improving system availability.

### 1.3.5.2 Drive Status Indicators

Each drive carrier incorporates two indicators, an upper (Green) and lower (Amber). In normal operation the green indicator will be ON and will flicker as the drive operates. The amber indicator is OFF in normal operation and ON when there is a fault present.

**Note** In some access configurations with PATA drives the light will not flicker. This is normal behavior for this product.

### 1.3.5.3 Anti-tamper Locks

Anti-tamper locks are fitted in the drive carrier handles (Figure 1–13) and are accessed through the small cutout in the latch section of the handle. These are provided to disable the normal 'pinch' latch action of the carrier handle and prevent accidental or unauthorized removal of drives.

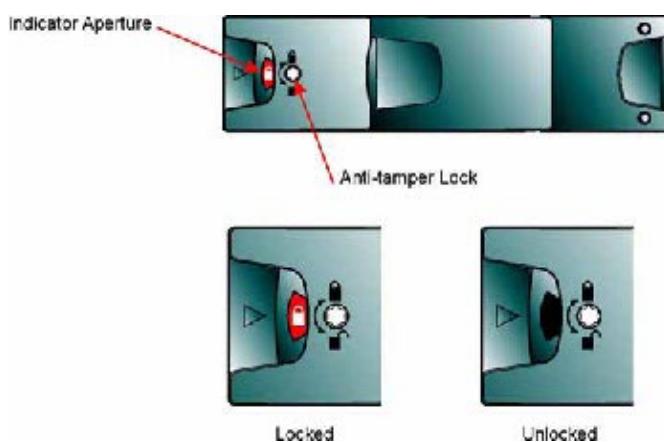


Figure 1–13 Anti-tamper Lock

### 1.3.6 Dummy Carrier Modules

Dummy carrier modules are provided for fitting in all unused drive bays. They are designed as integral drive module front caps with handles and must be fitted to all unused drive bays to maintain a balanced airflow.

### 1.3.7 Blank Modules

**Warning** Operation of the Enclosure with ANY modules missing will disrupt the airflow and the drives will not receive sufficient cooling. It is ESSENTIAL that all apertures are filled before operating the unit. Dummy Carriers and/or Blank modules are available for this purpose.

## 1.4 Visible and Audible Alarms

The functional modules have associated status LEDs. The Ops Panel shows a consolidated status for all modules.

LEDs show constant green for good or positive indication. Constant Amber LEDs indicate there is a fault present within that module.

The Ops Panel also incorporates an Audible Alarm to indicate when a fault state is present and also an Alarm Mute push-button.

**Warning** **The Ops Panel is an integral part of the enclosure chassis assembly and is not field replaceable.**

## 1.5 Galaxy 16m Technical Specification

### 1.5.1 Dimensions

Rack Enclosure	inches	millimeters
<b>Height</b>	5.1	130
<b>Width</b> across mounting flange	19	483
<b>Width</b> across body of enclosure	17.6	447
<b>Depth</b> from flange to rear of enclosure body	21	531
<b>Depth</b> from flange to maximum extremity of enclosure (rear hold down)	21.7	550
<b>Depth</b> from flange to furthest extremity at front of unit	0.5	13
<b>Depth</b> overall	22.2	563

Tower Enclosure	inches	millimeters
<b>Height</b>	22.27	501
<b>Width</b> ( <i>including mounting feet</i> )	10.22	230
<b>Depth</b>	23.24	523

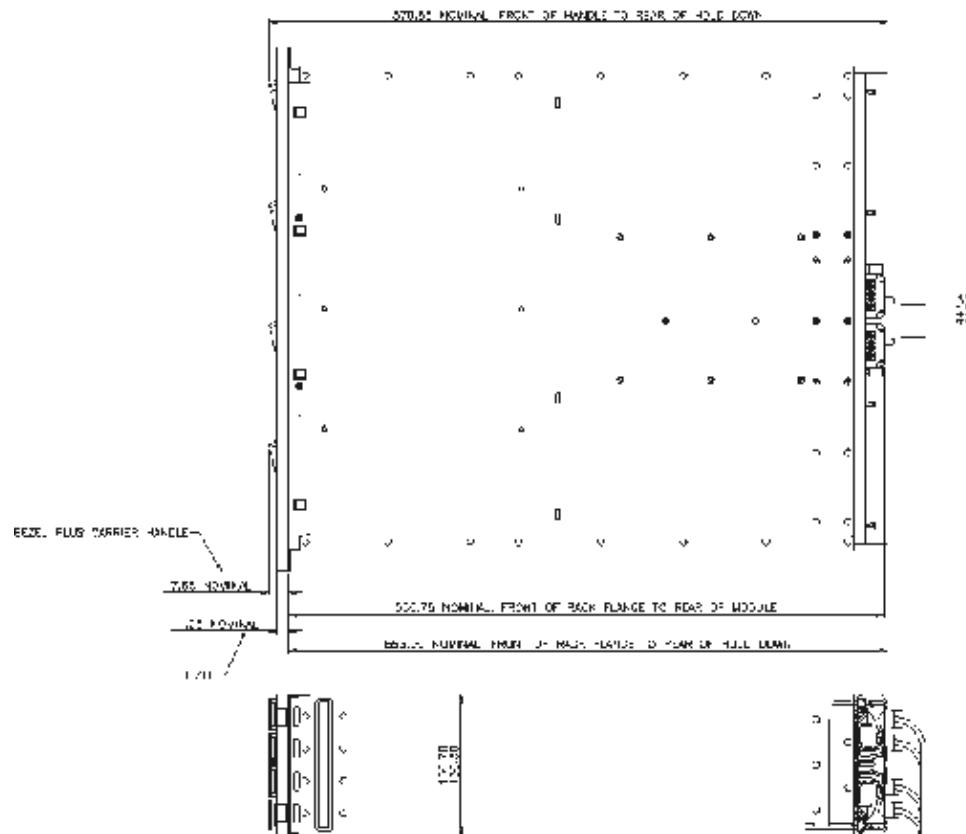


Table 1-3 Galaxy 16m Series RAID Controller Chassis Dimensions

## 1.5.2 Weight

<b>Maximum Configuration</b>	Rack mount: 37kg (81lb)
	Tower: 40kg (88lb)
<b>Empty Enclosure (Rack)</b>	9kg (19.8lb)
<b>PSU/Cooling Module</b>	4kg (8.8lb)
<b>Controller I/O Module</b>	0.9kg (1.98lb)
<b>Tower Conversion Kit</b>	3kg (6.6lb)

## 1.5.3 AC Power (450W PSU)

<b>Voltage Range</b>	100-120 / 200-240 VAC Rated
<b>Voltage Range Selection</b>	Automatic
<b>Frequency</b>	50/60 Hz
<b>Inrush Current</b>	50A @ 260VAC
<b>Power Factor</b>	>0.98
<b>Harmonics</b>	Meets EN61000-3-2

## 1.5.4 -48V DC Power (450W PSU)

<b>DC Input Voltage Range</b>	-40V to -60V DC Rated
<b>DC Line Inrush Current</b>	50A peak

## 1.5.5 PSU Safety and EMC Compliance

### Safety Compliance

UL 60950  
IEC 60950  
EN 60950

<b>EMC Compliance</b>	CFR47 Part 15B Class A EN55022 EN55024
-----------------------	----------------------------------------------

## 1.5.6 Power Cord

(minimum requirements)

Cord Type	SV 0r SVT, 18 AWG minimum, 3 conductor
Plug	250V, 10A
Socket	IEC 320 C-14, 250V, 15A

## 1.5.7 Environment

**Table 1–4** Ambient Temperature and Humidity

	Temperature Range	Relative Humidity	Max. Wet Bulb
<b>Operational</b>	5°C to 40°C	20% to 80% non-condensing	23°C
<b>Non-Operational</b>	0°C to +50°C	8% to 80% non-condensing	27°C
<b>Storage</b>	1°C to +60°C	8% to 80% non-condensing	29°C
<b>Shipping</b>	-40°C to +60°C	5% to 100% non-precipitating	29°C

<b>Airflow</b>	System must be operated with low pressure rear exhaust installation (Back pressure created by rack doors and obstacles not to exceed 5 pascals [0.5mm Water gauge])
<b>Altitude, Operational</b>	0 to 2000 m (0 to 7,000ft) (10,000ft at maximum ambient of 35°C)
<b>Altitude, Non-Operational</b>	-305 to 12,192m (-1000 to 40,000ft)
<b>Shock, Operational</b>	Vertical axis 5g peak 1/2 sine, 10ms
<b>Shock, Non-Operational</b>	30g 10ms 1/2 sine
<b>Vibration, Operational</b>	0.21grms 5-500 Hz Random
<b>Vibration, Non-Operational</b>	1.04grms 2-200 Hz Random
<b>Vibration, Relocation</b>	0.3g 2-200 Hz sine
<b>Acoustics</b>	<b>Sound Pressure Operating</b> - Less than 58 dB LpA average measured at the bystander positions.  <i>(The 4 bystander positions are 1m horizontal and 1.5m off the floor positioned front, back, left and right. The unit under test will be measured on the floor)</i>
	Measured at 20°C
<b>Orientation &amp; Mounting</b>	19" Rack mount (3EIA Units) To fit 800mm depth Racks compliant with IEC 297 Back pressure not exceeding 5 pascals (0.5mm water gauge)
<b>Safety &amp; Approvals</b>	CE, UL, cUL EN55022 (CISPR - A), FCC A

## 1.5.8 Interfaces

**Drive support** See drive carrier specification

**Attachment**

- 1 FCAL loop of 16 drives
- Passive Backplane with 1 Loop Resiliency Circuit (Controller) I/O Module.

Host Port: FC-AL

- 2 x SFP optical

Expansion Port: FC-AL

- 1 x SFP optical

## 1.5.9 Controller I/O Module Specification

<b>Speed</b>	1.5Gb/s internal to each drive, 1Gb/s or 2Gb/s external host ports <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Creates connections to a single loop of 16 drives</li> </ul>
<b>Mounting</b>	Rear, single bays 3 and/or 4 (see <i>Figure 1-3</i> )
<b>Connectors</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Expansion Port: 1 x SFP connector</li> <li>Host Port:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2 x SFP connector, optical LC to LC cable)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Power Dissipation</b>	5A @ 3.3V, 1A @ 5V

**RAID Levels supported** 0, 1, 3, 5, 10, 50

### LED Functions

LED	Color	Description
<b>Battery Fail</b>	Amber	<p>When ON this LED denotes the following status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Battery voltage is lower than 2.5V.</li> <li>Battery temperature is abnormal (normal 0° - 45°C on charge state)</li> <li>BBU is not present</li> </ul> <p>When FLASHING, the LED denotes BBU is under charging.</p> <p>When OFF, the LED denotes BBU charge is done.</p>
<b>Expansion Port: Signal Good</b>	Green	When ON this LED denotes that running FC signal is good.
<b>RJ45 Ethernet Connection</b>	Green	LED1: Static ON while LAN port status is link.
	Green	LED2: FLASHING while LAN port status is active.
<b>System</b>	Amber	When ON this LED denotes that the Controller is failed or SES Services card is failed.
<b>Cache Active</b>	Amber	<p>When ON this LED denotes the following status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When system is w/ power, ON denotes cache memory is dirty or ECC errors are detected.</li> <li>When system is w/o power, ON denotes cache memory is dirty and is held up by BBU.</li> </ul>
<b>Host Port 1: Signal Good</b>	Green	When ON this LED denotes that incoming FC signal is GOOD.
<b>Host Port 0: Signal Good</b>	Green	When ON this LED denotes that incoming FC signal is GOOD.

## 1.5.10 Drive Carrier Module Specification

Please contact your supplier for details of approved drives.

**Important** Operating the Galaxy 16m subsystem with non-approved drives may invalidate the warranty.

<b>Module Dimensions</b>	Height 29.1mm Width 106.55mm Depth 251 mm
<b>Weight</b>	0.98kg (1.0" 36Gb drive)
<b>Transition card</b>	Provides dual path emulation to Parallel or Serial ATA drives.
<b>Operating Temperature</b>	5° C to 40° C (when installed in an RS-1602 system enclosure with dual Power Supply/Cooling Modules)
<b>Power Dissipation</b>	17 Watts maximum

## 1.5.11 SCSI Enclosure Services (SES) Support

The enclosure has a sophisticated self-monitoring and reporting function which conforms to ANSI SES specifications. This reports on such topics as:

- Enclosure temperature
- Fan speed
- Drive condition
- Operator panel status

For more information on the implementation of this function please request a copy of the SES specification from your supplier.



# Chapter 2

# Getting Started

## 2.1 Introduction

In this chapter, you are shown how to install your Galaxy 16m Enclosure and plug-in modules into an industry standard 19 inch rack cabinet.

**Caution** *When connecting up the Galaxy 16m subsystem, use only the power cords supplied or cords which match the specification quoted in section 1.5.6.*

## 2.2 Planning Your Installation

Before you begin installation you should become familiar with the configuration requirements of your Galaxy 16m system, detailed in [Figure 2–1](#). The correct positions of each of the optional plug-in modules are shown in [Figure 2–1](#). Please refer to sections 2.5 - 2.7 for details of Controller I/O module configurations and installation.

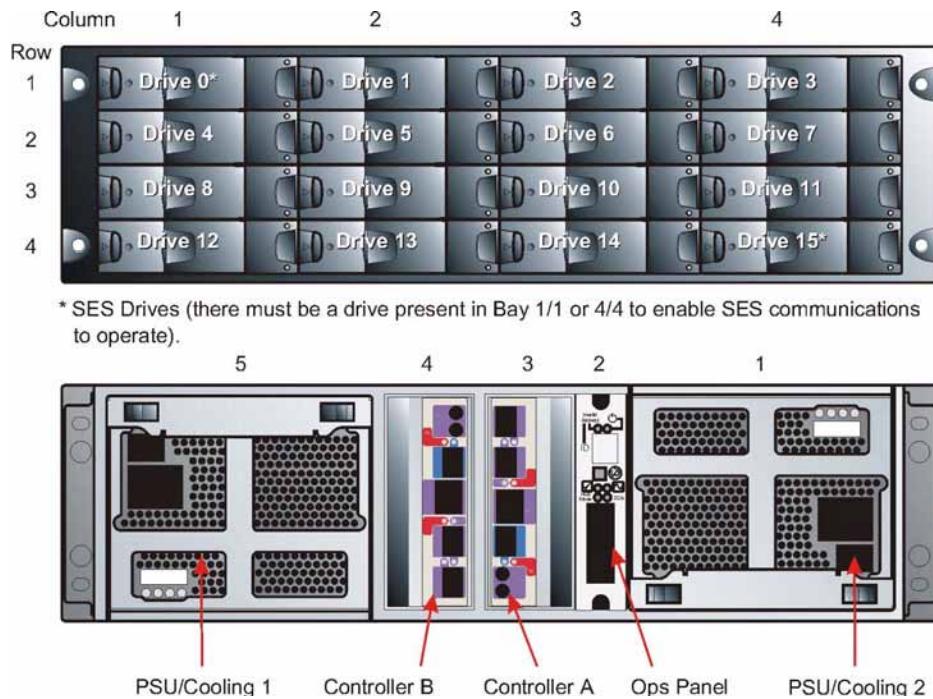
**Table 2–1** Galaxy 16m Configuration

Module	Location
Drive Bays	<i>ALL</i> drive bays must be fitted with either a drive carrier module or a dummy carrier, no bays should be left completely empty. Drive carrier modules must always be fitted in locations 1/1 (drive 0) and 4/4 (drive 15). This is the minimum configuration required for the system to operate and provide SES Management Services.
Power Supply/Cooling Modules	Two Power Supply/Cooling modules must be fitted. Full power and cooling redundancy is provided while a faulty module is replaced. Install the Power Supply/Cooling modules in rear Bays 1 & 5.  <b>Note:</b> Rear bays are numbered from 1 to 5 commencing from the right hand side)
Controller I/O Module	Install in rear Bays 3 and 4. (If only 1 controller is fitted it must be installed in bay 4).

**Table 2–1** Galaxy 16m Configuration

Module	Location
Blank (I/O) Modules	If only one controller is installed a blank module must be fitted in the unused bay. No bays should be left completely empty.
Ops Panel	(integral part of chassis assembly) Installed in rear Bay 2

**Caution** *Dummy Carriers and Blank Modules MUST be fitted to ALL unused bays, there will be inadequate drive cooling if any are left open.*

**Figure 2–1** Module Locations

## 2.2.1 Enclosure Bay Numbering Convention

The enclosure bay numbering convention is shown in [Figure 2–1](#). A Bay is defined as the space required to house a single 1.0" high 3.5 inch disk drive in its carrier module. e.g. a 1 x 4 bay module would take the space of 1 drive width by 4 drive bays high (in the rack mount configuration).

The Galaxy 16m subsystem is housed in a 4 x 4 enclosure, i.e. 4 bays wide by 4 bays high. The front bays are numbered 1 to 4 from left to right, viewed from the front. Bays are numbered from 1 (top row) to 4 (bottom row). Drive Carrier Module locations are identified from a matrix of the top and side numbers. The rear bays are numbered 1 to 5 from right to left, viewed from the rear.

**Important** **Drive carrier modules must always be fitted in locations 1/1 (drive 0) and 4/4 (drive 15). This is the minimum configuration required for the system to operate and provide SES Management Services.**

## 2.3 Enclosure Installation Procedures

**Caution** *The Galaxy 16m Enclosure with all its component parts installed is too heavy for a single person to easily install it in a Rack cabinet. The following procedures describe the installation of the Galaxy 16m enclosure and highlights any critical co-requisite requirements and good handling practices which we encourage you to follow so as to ensure that a successful installation is achieved in the easiest manner.*

**Warning** **Ensure that you have fitted and checked a suitable anti-static wrist or ankle strap and observe all conventional ESD precautions when handling Galaxy 16m modules and components. Avoid contact with Backplane components and module connectors, etc.**

### 2.3.1 Pre-Requisites

The Galaxy 16m Enclosure is designed for installation into an industry standard 19 inch cabinet capable of holding the unit.

- Minimum depth 531 mm from front flange to rear metalwork (excludes rear cabling).
- Weight: up to 37kg dependent upon configuration per enclosure.
- A minimum gap of 25mm (1inch) clearance between the rack cover and front of drawer; and 50mm (2 inches) rear clearance between rear of drawer and rear of rack is recommended in order to maintain the correct air flow around the enclosure.
- The rack should present a maximum back pressure of 5 pascals (0.5mm water gauge).

### 2.3.2 Rack Mounting Rail Kit

A set of mounting rails is available for use in 19 inch rack cabinets. These rails have been designed and tested to handle the maximum enclosure weight and to ensure that multiple RS-1602 enclosures may be installed without loss of space within the rack. Use of other mounting hardware may cause some loss of rack space.

The rack mounting rail kit also incorporates a rear hold down mechanism to ensure shock and vibration immunity.

Please contact your supplier to ensure suitable mount rails are available for the rack you are using.

#### 2.3.2.1 Parts Check List

- Rack Mounting Rail Kit.

### 2.3.2.2 Installation Procedure

Please see detail drawings supplied with the rack mounting rail kit for assembly details.

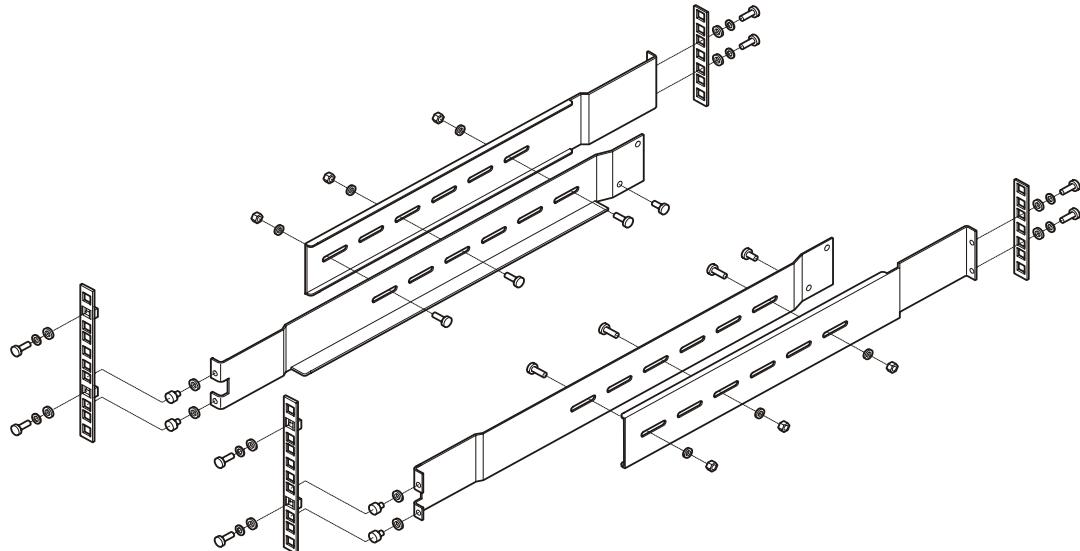


Figure 2–2 Rack Mounting Rail Kit

## 2.3.3 Chassis Installation

### 2.3.3.1 Parts Check List

- Chassis (complete with Backplane and Ops Panel installed but excluding all plug-in modules).
- Rack mount front flange mounting screws (4 off).

### 2.3.3.2 Procedure

- 1 Check for damage.
- 2 Slide the chassis assembly onto the rack rails until the front flanges engage on the rack. Ensure the chassis is centrally located.
- 3 If in doubt about correct orientation, the drive bays (at front) should have their black drive connectors toward the bottom of each bay.
- 4 Screw the 4 front rack mount screws through the flanges and tighten.
- 5 Fit and tighten the rear hold down screws ensuring the enclosure is in tight contact to both the side and top of the chassis to avoid any movement of the chassis in the rack.

## 2.4 Power Supply/Cooling Module Installation

Install in the rear of the enclosure in positions 1 and 5.

**Warning** Do not remove covers from the Power Supply/Cooling (PSU) module. Danger of electric shock inside. Return the PSU to your supplier for repair.

### 2.4.1 Parts Check List

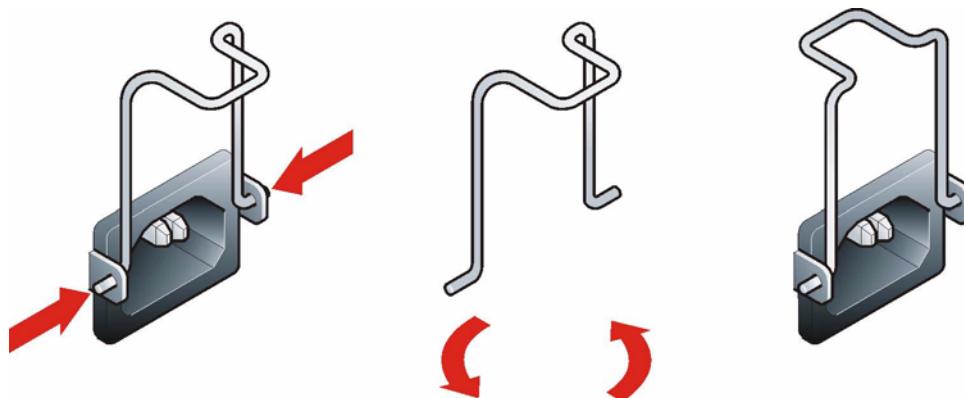
2 Power Supply/Cooling Modules of the following types:

- Either: 2 x AC' 450W PSU
- or 2 x -48V DC 450W PSU

**Warning** Do not mix Power Supply/Cooling modules of different types.

### 2.4.2 AC Power Supply/Cooling Module Procedure

**Important** PSU2 (RH rear bay) must be fitted “upside-down” as shown in [Figure 2–1](#). If the cable strain relief wire tab is upside down it must be inverted by squeezing together the two sides of the tab removing them from their mountings, inverting and then replacing them, as shown in [Figure 2–3](#).



**Figure 2–3** Inverting the Cable Strain Relief

- 1 Check for damage, especially to the rear connector on the supply.

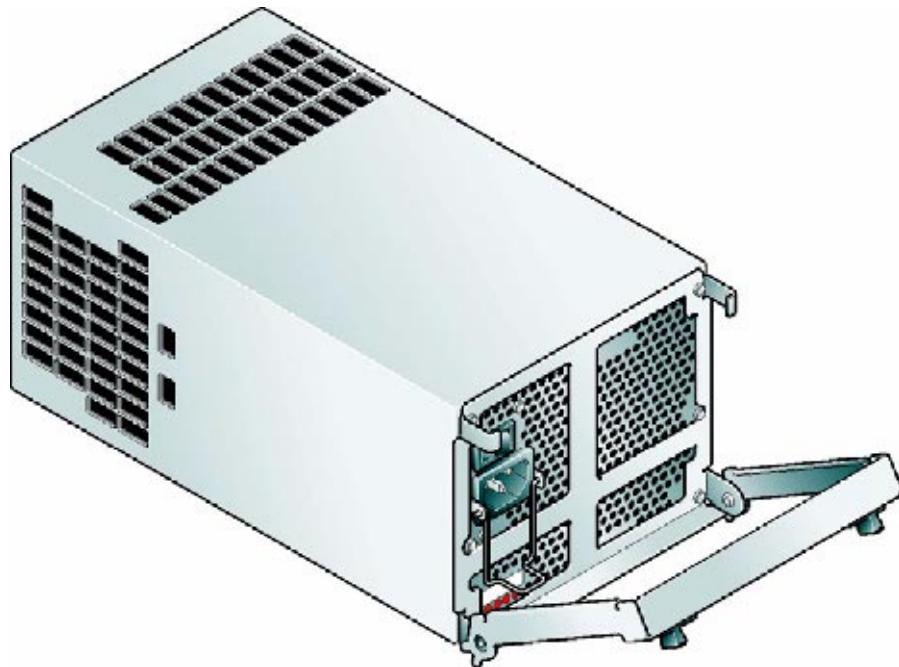
**Caution** Handle the module carefully and avoid damaging the connector pins. Do not install the module if any pins appear to be bent.

- 2 With the PSU handle in the open position ([Figure 2–4](#)), slide the module into the enclosure ([Figure 2–5](#)).

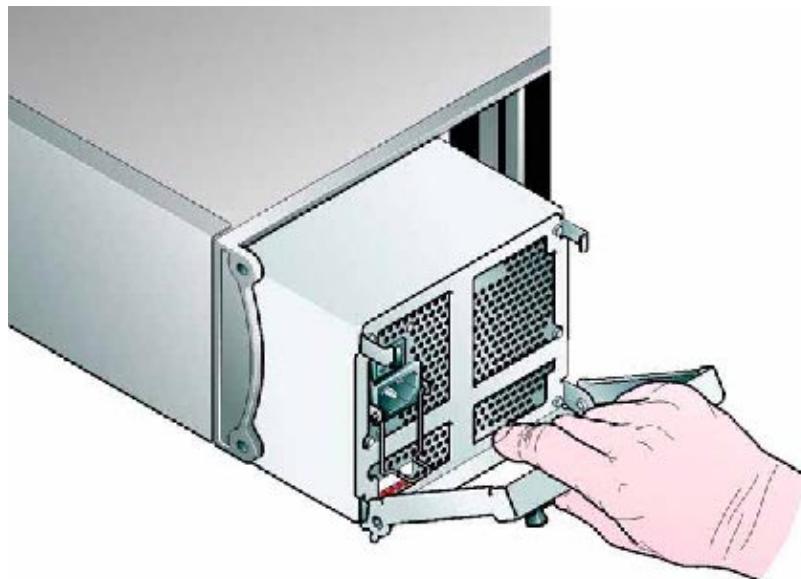
**Important** Install the Power Supply/Cooling module in the right hand bay (Rear Bay 1) of the enclosure in an “upside down\* orientation.

- 3 Cam the module home by manually closing the PSU handle ([Figure 2–6](#)). A click should be heard as the handle latches engage.

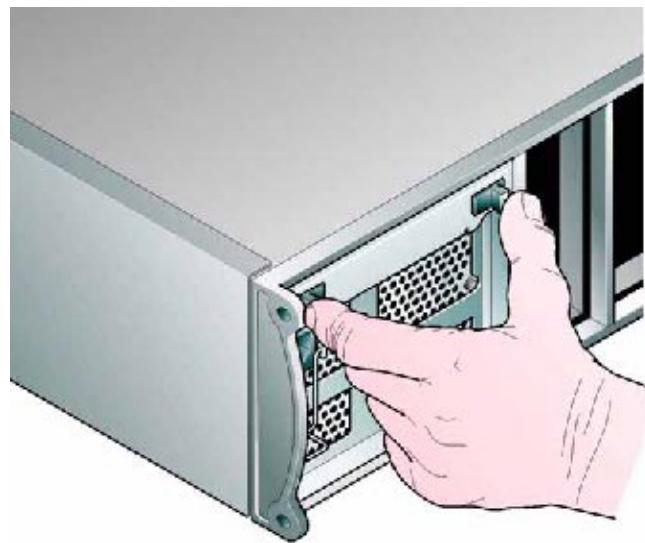
- 4 Connect the power supply cord to the power source and switch the power supply ON.



**Figure 2-4** AC Power Supply/Cooling Module - Handle in Open Position



**Figure 2-5** Installing an AC Power Supply Cooling Module (1)



**Figure 2–6** Installing an AC Power Supply Cooling Module (2)

### 2.4.3 -48V DC Power Supply/Cooling Module Procedure

**Important** PSU2 (RH rear bay) must be fitted “upside-down” as shown in [Figure 2–1](#). If the cable strain relief wire tab is upside down it must be inverted by squeezing together the two sides of the tab removing them from their mountings, inverting and then replacing them.

### 2.4.3.1 -48V DC PSU Safety Requirements

#### Voltage Rating

The marked rated voltage for the -48VDC Power Supply/Cooling (PSU) module is -40V DC to -60V DC. The equipment is intended to operate from a centralized dc supply system with a NOMINAL voltage of -48V DC or -60V DC. The voltage from a nominal -48V DC system may vary, due to float charging or discharge conditions, from -40V DC to -60V DC. The voltage from a nominal -60V DC system may vary, due to float charging or discharge conditions, from -48V DC to -72V DC.

**Caution** *If this equipment is used in a manner not specified by the manufacturer, the protection provided by the equipment may be impaired.*

#### Equipment Location

The rear of this Equipment (in particular the supply terminals and wiring to the terminals on the power supply) must only be located in a "**RESTRICTED ACCESS LOCATION**" where both of the following apply (Ref.UL60950):

- access can only be gained by SERVICE PERSONNEL or by USERS who have been instructed about the reasons for the restrictions applied to the location and about any precautions that shall be taken; and
- access is through the use of a TOOL or lock and key, or other means of security and is controlled by the authority responsible for the location.

Access restrictions are applicable where:

- The DC wiring to the terminals on the PSU are not enclosed.
- The PSU input terminals have exposed voltages that may exceed the 60 volt SELV limit during float charging of battery supply.
- The PSU input terminals have exposed hazardous energy levels, i.e. very high current capability.

#### Disconnect Device

The wiring installation must provide a disconnect device close to the product.

#### Wiring

Must be connected in accordance with the local and National wiring regulations.

#### Wire Temperature Rating

The supply wiring to the power supply terminal blocks must have a minimum temperature rating of 75°C.

#### Terminal Block Screw Torque

The screws on the terminal block must be tightened to a torque of 2.4 Nm (21 in-lb.)

#### Circuit Protection

The building installation must provide overcurrent and short circuit protection in the non earthed supply conductor.

### 2.4.3.2 USA and Canadian Safety Requirements

#### **Wiring Methods**

Wiring method must be code compliant in the field.

Wiring methods must be in accordance with the U.S. National Electric Code, Article 300.

#### **Earthing**

This equipment is designed to permit the connection of the earthed conductor (+) of the dc supply circuit to the earthing conductor at the equipment.

If this connection is made, all of the following conditions must be met (Ref. UL60950):

- 1 This equipment shall be connected directly to the dc supply system earthing electrode conductor or to a bonding jumper from an earthing terminal bar or bus to which the dc supply system earthing electrode conductor is connected.
- 2 This equipment shall be located in the same immediate area (such as adjacent cabinets) as any other equipment that has a connection between the earthed conductor of the same dc supply circuit and the earthing conductor, and also the point of earthing of the dc system. The dc system shall not be earthed elsewhere.
- 3 The DC supply source is to be located within the same premises as this equipment.
- 4 Switching or disconnecting devices shall not be in the earthed circuit conductor between the dc source and the point of connection of the earthing electrode conductor."

#### **Protective Earth Conductor Size**

The protective earth conductor size must be suitable for the maximum fault current that the installation can provide. U.S. National Electric Code, Article 250-122

#### **Branch Circuit Protection**

The PSU must be connected to a Branch circuit that is protected by a LISTED Branch Protector. The rating of the LISTED Branch Protector >= 125% of the product rating and the rating of the LISTED Branch Protector =< current rating of wire supplying the equipment. U.S. National Electric Code, Article 210-3, Article 240.

#### **Minimum Wire Size**

12 AWG minimum must be used for the input connections to the terminal block on the power supply.

#### **Terminal Block Connections**

The terminal block is suitable for Field Wiring and Factory Wiring.

### 2.4.3.3 Installation Procedure

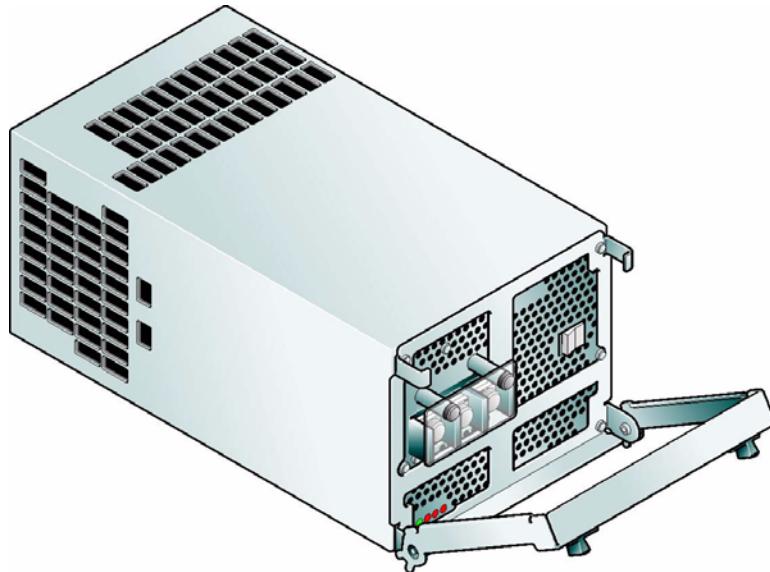
**Warning** **Installation of this Power Supply/Cooling module should only be performed by qualified personnel.**

- 1 Check for damage, especially to the rear connector on the Power Supply/Cooling module.

**Caution** *Handle the module carefully and avoid damaging the connector pins. Do not install the module if any pins appear to be bent.*

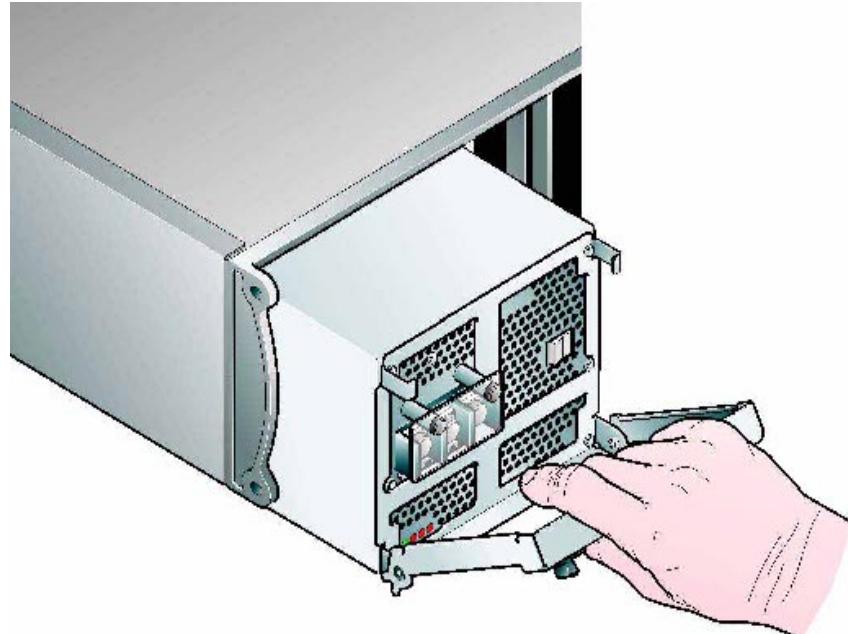
- 2 With the PSU handle ([Figure 2–7](#)) in the open position, slide the module into the enclosure.

**Important** install the PSU module in the right hand bay (Rear Bay 1) of the enclosure in an “upside down\* orientation.



**Figure 2–7** I-48V Power Supply/Cooling Module - Handle in Open Position

- 3 Cam the module home by manually closing the PSU handle (see [Figure 2–8](#)). A click should be heard as the handle latches engage (see [Figure 2–9](#)).



**Figure 2–8** installing a -48V DC Power Supply/Cooling Module (1)



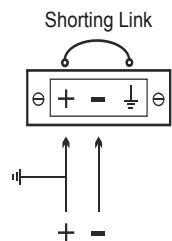
**Figure 2–9** Installing a -48V DC Power Supply/Cooling Module (2)

- 4 Remove all supply power by turning off the supply at the disconnect device located near to the equipment.
- 5 Remove the terminal block cover.
- 6 Connect the wires in accordance with the Wiring Instructions in section 2.4.3.4.
- 7 Replace the terminal block cover.
- 8 Turn the supply power back on.
- 9 Switch on power at the PSU switch.

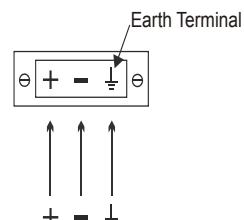
#### 2.4.3.4 Wiring Instructions for -48V DC PSU

**Warning** The +48V and -48V terminals are not connected to chassis earth.

- 1 For installations with -48V earthed a shorting link must be added (see Figure 2–10).



**Figure 2–10** Shorting Link



**Figure 2–11** Separate Earth

- 2 For installations with a separate earth, connect the earth cable to the earth terminal (see Figure 2–11)

## 2.5 Controller I/O Module Configurations

**Important** Please refer to section [2.9](#) for information on SATA drive configurations.

### 2.5.1 Internal Loop Structures

The Galaxy 16m enclosure is configured with one internal loop of 16 drives.

## 2.6 FC-AL Interface

The Controller (I/O) interface module provides dual FC-AL SFP interface connections.

The Controller provides bi-directional conversion between the Fibre Channel host side interface and the SATA drives. The drives will not be presented to the Host until they are configured and mapped by the controller.

When Logical Arrays are configured and mapped, each drive array appears as a single Fibre Channel drive in a single loop.

**Note** There are no external terminators required with Fibre Channel architecture and any drive may be hot plugged during operation.

### 2.6.1 Connecting Multiple Enclosures

Galaxy 16m enclosure expansion is achieved by connecting additional JBOD enclosures to the expansion port of the Galaxy 16m controllers.

**Important** Optical modules must be UL (or other North American NRTL) RECOGNISED COMPONENT, must be approved by TUV (or other European Product Safety test house) and the laser in the module must comply with Laser Class 1, US 21 CFR (J) and EN 60825-1.

If passive copper cables are connected, the cable must not have a connection to the 3.3V supply (pins 15 and 16).

Expansion enclosures can be RA-1602-1216-JBD or any other approved JBOD enclosures.

**Note** A maximum of 6 expansion enclosures can be attached to a Galaxy 16m enclosure and a typical expansion configuration is shown in [Figure 2-12](#).

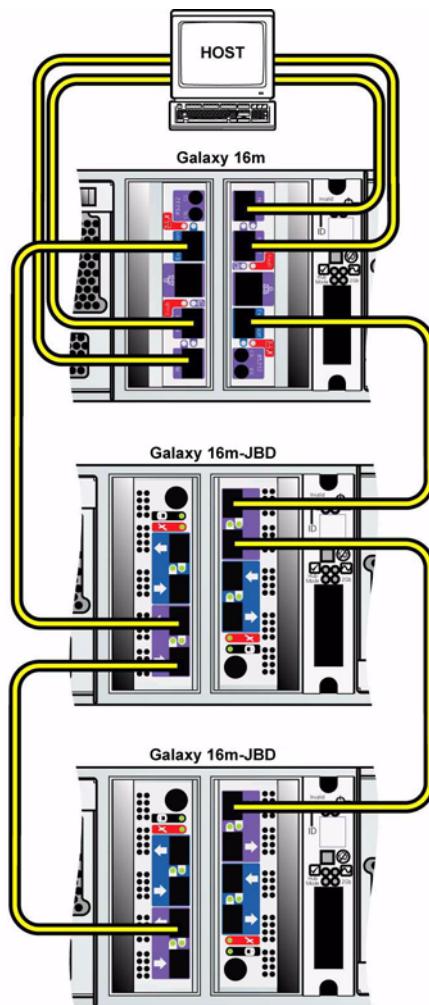


Figure 2–12 Connecting Multiple Enclosures

## 2.7 Controller I/O Module Installation

**Warning** Operation of the Enclosure with *ANY* modules missing will disrupt the airflow and the drives will not receive sufficient cooling. It is *ESSENTIAL* that all apertures are filled before operating the unit. Dummy Carriers and/or Blank modules are available for this purpose.

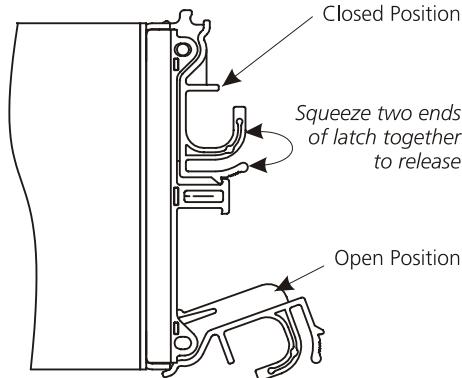
### 2.7.1 Parts Check List

**Important** The enclosure may be configured with either one or two Controller modules. If only 1 Controller is fitted it must be installed in rear bay 4 (Controller B location as shown in [Figure 2–1 on page 22](#)) and a Blank I/O module fitted in the unused bay.

- 2 Controller I/O Modules  
or,
- 1 Controller I/O Module with 1 Blank I/O module

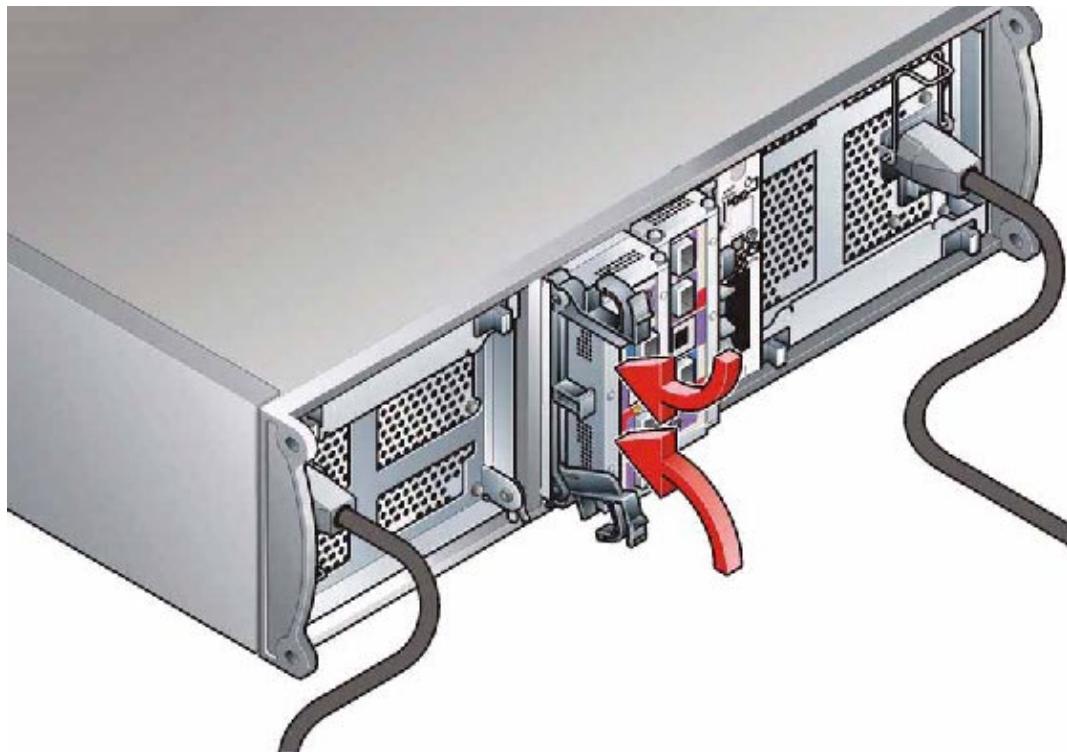
## 2.7.2 Procedure

Check for damage especially to the interface connector, do not install if any pins are bent.



**Figure 2–13** Controller Module Latch Operation

- 1 The modules should be installed in rear bays 3 and 4 of the Enclosure (Figure 2–1).
- 2 With the latch in the open position (see Figure 2–13), slide the Controller module into the enclosure until the latch engages automatically.
- 3 Cam the module home by manually closing the latches (see Figure 2–14).
- 4 A click should be heard as the latch engages.



**Figure 2–14** Installing a Controller I/O Module

## 2.8 Drive Enclosure Device Addressing

Each enclosure has 16 drive bays. The SEL\_ID of each drive is determined by the device slot (0-15) in which it is installed and the address range setting, which is set by means of the Enclosure ID switch.on the Ops Panel (shown in [Figure 1–7 on page 6](#)) at the rear of the enclosure. The switch settings are shown in [Table 2–2](#):

**Table 2–2** Ops Panel Switch Functions (*Default settings for Galaxy 16m Controller usage at 2Gb/s*)

Switch Number *See Sw 11	Function	Recommended Setting		Definition
1	Not Used			
2	Not Used			
3	Hub Mode Select	On		Enable: RAID host FC ports will be linked together internally.
		Off		Disable: RAID host FC ports will be independently connected.
4	Not Used			
5 & 6	RAID host hub speed select switches	Sw5 5	Sw 6	
		Off	Off	Force 1Gb/s
		On	Off	Force 2Gb/s
		Off	On	Auto
		On	On	Auto
7 & 8	Not Used			
9 & 10	Drive Addressing Mode Selection	Sw 9	Sw 10	
		On	On	Mode 0
11	SOFT SELECT	On		Select functions using the hardware switches.
12	Not Used			

**Notes** 1 **ON** = switch to the *Left*, **OFF** = switch to the *Right*.

2 Switches 4 and 12 are *Not Used*.

3 Modes 1, 2 and 3 are *Not Used*.

**Warning** **Switches 9 and 10 should not be turned Off together, damage may occur as a result.**

**Note** When using host side multi-pathing/fail over software that does not dynamically discover new data paths and no external switch is present, Hub Mode will be required. Hub Mode may also be required in alternative configurations.

**Table 2–3 Mode 0 Drive Enclosure Device Settings**

Device Slot SEL_ID	Mode 0																		
	0	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19		
	1	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19		
	2	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35		
	3	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51		
	4	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67		
	5	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83		
	6	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99		
	7	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115		
	8	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115		
	9	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115		
	10	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115		
	11	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115		
	12	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115		
	13	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115		
	14	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115		
	15	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115		

**Notes**    1 Drives are numbered row/column.

2 With only one active PSU the enclosure will take approximately 96 seconds to start all drives from Power On.

**Table 2–4 Drive Slot Arrangement: Enclosure Front View**

Column / row	1/#	2/#	3/#	4/#
#/1	Drive 0*	Drive 1	Drive 2	Drive 3
#/2	Drive 4	Drive 5	Drive 6	Drive 7
#/3	Drive 8	Drive 9	Drive 10	Drive 11
#/4	Drive 12	Drive 13	Drive 14	Drive 15*

**Important** SES drives: Drive bay set for immediate start, all other bays are delayed spin start (12 seconds x Modulo 8 of the SEL\_ID) unless there are two active PSUs when they all start immediately.

# 2.9 Drive Carrier Configuration

## 2.9.1 Planning and Configuring Your Installation

### 2.9.1.1 System Configuration

**Important** Before you begin installation you should become familiar with the configuration requirements of your Galaxy 16m system. Please refer to Section 2.2 for information on your overall system configurations.

There must be a drive present in Bay 1/1 or 4/4 to enable SES Communications to operate. Installing drives in both of these bays will provide redundant SES communication paths.

When planning your system configuration, please remember that:

- All Galaxy 16m enclosure drive bays must be filled with either a drive carrier or front dummy carrier module, no bays should be left completely empty.

**Warning** Operation of the Enclosure with ANY modules missing will disrupt the airflow and the drives will not receive sufficient cooling. It is ESSENTIAL that all apertures are filled before operating the unit. Dummy Carriers and/or Blank modules are available for this purpose.

### 2.9.1.2 Drive Configuration

**Important** After you have installed the drive carrier modules in your Galaxy 16m enclosure, please refer to Section 2.5 for configuration information relevant to the I/O module you are installing.

# 2.10 Drive Carrier Installation

## 2.10.1 Parts Check List

- Drive Carrier module, or
- Dummy Carrier module

## 2.10.2 Procedure

- 1 Ensure that the anti-tamper locks are disengaged.
- 2 Release the carrier handle, by pressing the latch in the handle towards the right and insert the carrier into the enclosure (Figure 2–15).

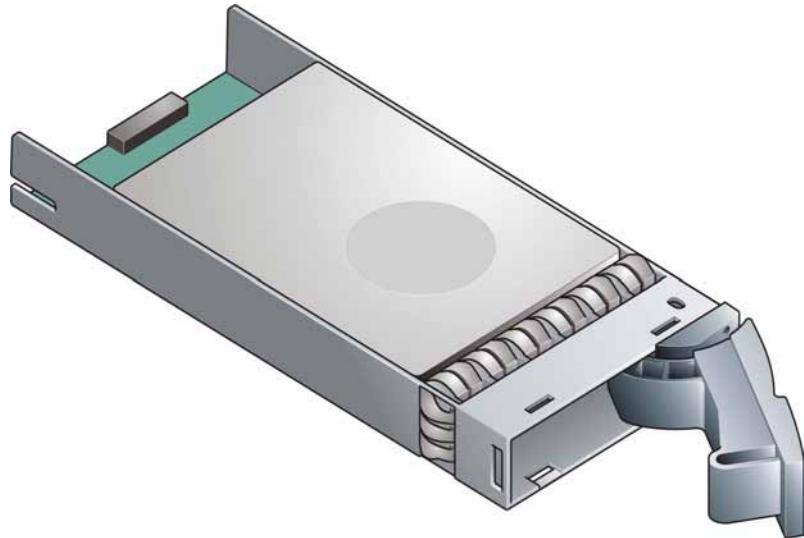
**Important** For a Rack Mounted System: Ensure that the carrier is orientated so that the drive is uppermost and the handle opens from the left.

For a Tower System: Ensure that the carrier is orientated so that the carrier lock position is uppermost and the handle opens from the top

- 3 Slide the carrier, gently, all the way into the enclosure until it is stopped by the camming lever on the right of the carrier (Figure 2–16)

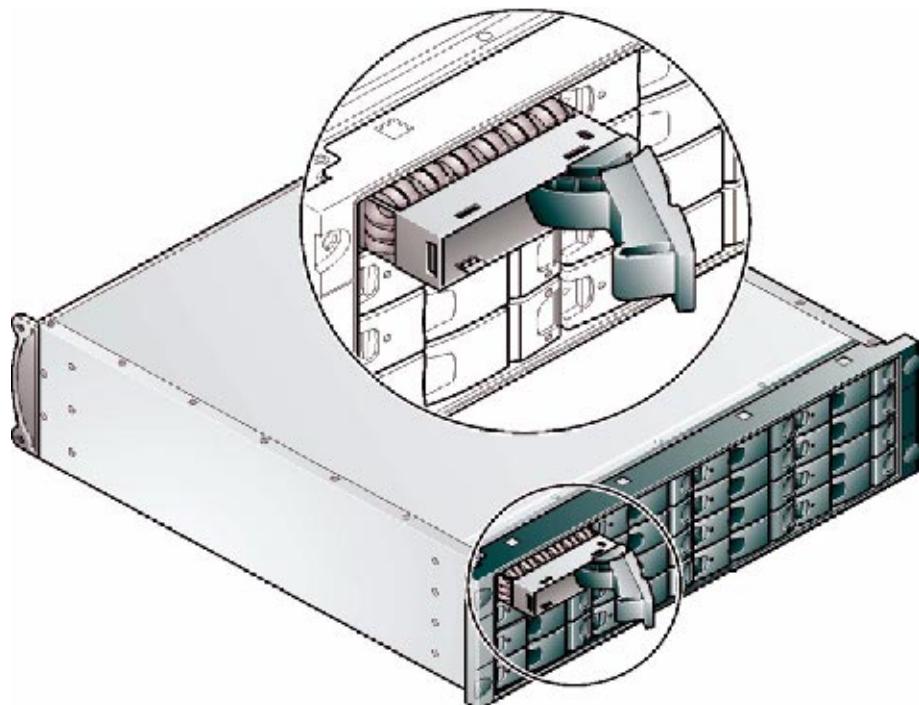
- 4 Cam the carrier home - the camming foot on the base of the carrier will engage into a slot in the enclosure. Continue to push firmly until the handle fully engages. A click should be heard as the latch engages and holds the handle closed ([Figure 2–17](#)).

**Note** Ensure that the Handle always opens from the left.

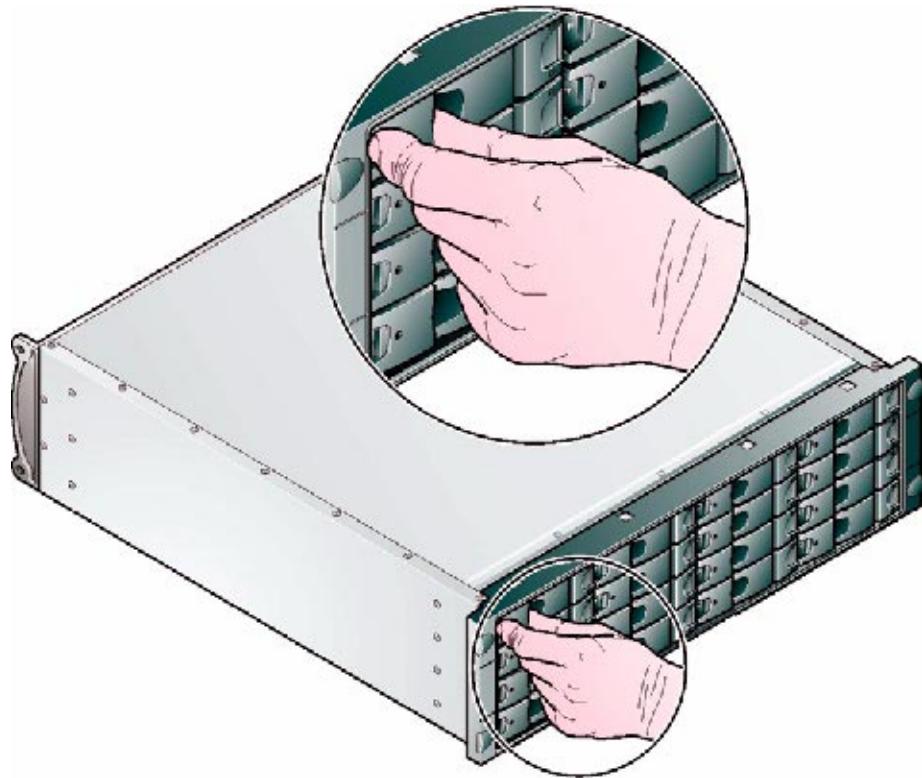


**Figure 2–15** Installing a SATA Drive Carrier Module (1)

**Note** Removal is the reverse of this procedure (press on the latch to release the handle).



**Figure 2–16** Installing a SATA Drive Carrier Module (2)



**Figure 2-17** Installing an SATA Drive Carrier Module (3)

### 2.10.3 Dummy Carrier Modules

Any unused drive bays must be fitted with a dummy carrier module.

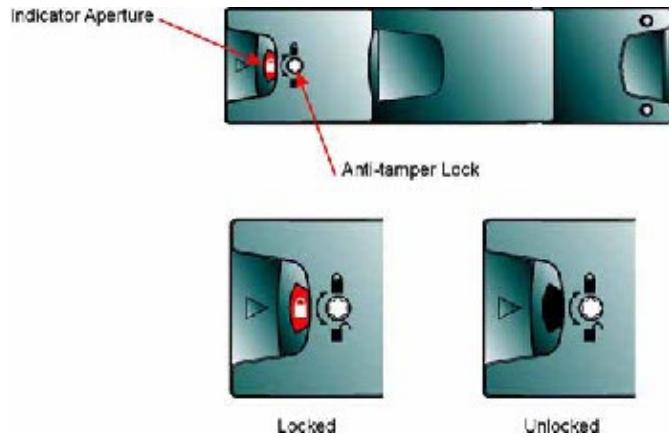
### 2.10.4 Engaging the Anti-tamper Locks

The anti-tamper locks are fitted in the drive carrier handles and are accessed through the small cutout in the latch section of the handle.

Drives are supplied with the locks set in the locked position.

#### 2.10.4.1 Activating the Locks

- 1 Carefully insert the lock key provided into the cutout in the handle.
- 2 Locate the key into its socket.
- 3 Rotate the key in a clockwise direction until the indicator is visible in the aperture beside the key.



**Figure 2–18** Activating the Anti-tamper Lock

- 4 Remove the key.

**De-activation** is the reverse of this procedure, that is:

- Rotate the key in an anti-clockwise direction until the indicator is no longer visible in the aperture beside the key.

**Note** A drive carrier cannot be installed if its anti-tamper lock is activated outside the Enclosure.

## 2.11 Power Cord Connection

### 2.11.1 Parts Check List

- Power cord to requisite local standards

### 2.11.2 Procedure

- 1 Attach the power cord to the Power Supply/Cooling Modules,
- 2 Attach the power cord to the in-line IEC connector in this cord.
- 3 Switch on each Power Supply/Cooling Module.
- 4 The “PSU Good” and “AC Fail” LEDs on the PSUs indicate whether AC power is present.

**Caution** *The power connections must always be disconnected prior to removal of the Power Supply/Cooling module from the enclosure.*

## 2.12 Grounding Checks

**Important** The following information is applicable to AC power sources only. If -48V DC PSUs are installed in your system, please refer to the -48V DC PSU Quick Installation Guide (P/N 37589-01A) supplied with these units.

The product must only be connected to a power source that has a safety electrical earth connection.

**Warning** If more than one product is fitted in a rack, the earth connection to the rack is even more important, because the rack will then have a high "EARTH LEAKAGE CURRENT" ("TOUCH CURRENT").

The earth connection to the rack must be checked before switching on, by an electrical engineer who is qualified to the appropriate local and National standards to perform the check.

•



# Chapter 3

# Operation

## 3.1 Before You Begin

Before powering up the enclosure please ensure that all the modules are firmly seated in their correct bays.

## 3.2 Power On

**Caution** *Do not operate the subsystem until the ambient temperature is within the specified operating range. If the drives have been recently installed ensure they have had time to acclimatize before operating them.*

**Note** Please refer to Section 3.3 for details of the Ops Panel LEDs and related fault conditions.

Follow the procedure below to Power On the enclosure.

- 1 Apply AC power to the enclosure. Turn the Power Supply modules to ON.
- 2 On the Ops Panel, the Audible Alarm beeps once, all LEDs flash for 7 seconds then the Alarm double beeps.
- 3 All LEDs on the Ops Panel should be lit (Green) when the enclosure power is activated (and the disk drive motors should start).

**Note** All LEDs on the Ops Panel should be lit Green at power up to indicate that the system is functioning correctly. If any show Amber then a problem exists and the procedure in Chapter 13 should be followed.

**Important** **If AC power is lost for any reason, on restoration of power the enclosure will re-start automatically.**

### 3.2.1 Power Supply/Cooling Module LEDs

The Power Supply/Cooling module incorporates 4 LEDs, located below the On/Off switch and shown in Table 3-1.

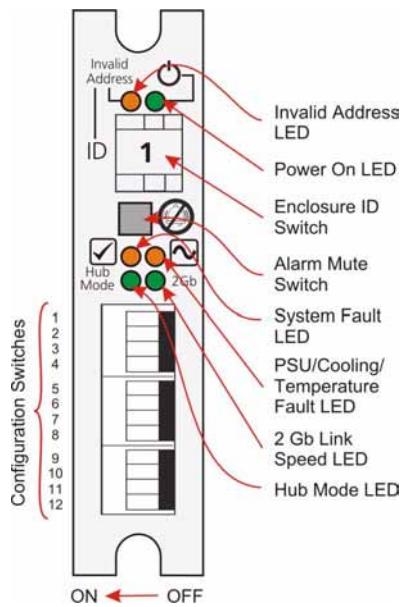
- Under Normal conditions the LEDs should all be illuminated constant GREEN
- If a problem is detected the color of the relevant LED will change to AMBER.

**Table 3–1** PSU LEDs

AC PSU		-48V DC PSU	
PSU Good	Green	PSU Good	Green
AC input Fail	Amber	Battery Fail	Amber
Fan Fault	Amber	Fan Fault	Amber
DC Output Fail	Amber	DC Output Fail	Amber

### 3.3 Ops Panel LEDs

The Ops Panel LEDs fault and status conditions are defined in [Table 3–2](#) and shown in [Figure 3–1](#).



**Figure 3–1** Ops Panel LEDs and Switches

Please refer to [Chapter 13 , "Troubleshooting and Problem Solving"](#) for details of any fault indication.

**Table 3–2** Ops Panel LED States

LED	Definition	Color	Normal Status	Fault Status
<b>Power On</b>	Enclosure Powered On	Green	On	Off
<b>System Fault</b>	System/ESI Fault	Amber	Off	On
<b>PSU Fault</b>	PSU Fault/ Cooling Temperature Fault	Amber	Off	On
<b>2Gb Link Speed</b>	Indicates link speed	Green	On = 2Gb Off = 1Gb	- -
<b>Hub Mode</b>	Indicates H0 -H0 and H1 - H1 Hubbed	Green	On	Off
<b>Invalid Address</b>	Not Used		-	-

**Table 3–3** Ops Panel LED Functionality

Status	BBU LED	Controller Fault LED	Ops Panel System Fault LED
<b>Battery LED Functions</b>			
Power ON Fully Charged	OFF	OFF	OFF
Power ON and Charging BBU	Flashing	OFF	OFF
BBU Voltage Below 2.5V	ON	ON	ON
Temperature Out of Range	ON	OFF	OFF
BBU Missing or Faulty	ON	ON	ON
<b>Cache LED Functions</b>			
Power ON Cache Empty	OFF	OFF	OFF
Power ON Cache Dirty	ON	OFF	OFF
Power ON Multi Bit ECC Errors	ON	ON	ON

## 3.4 Starting the Drives

Unless otherwise selected during installation, all drives in the enclosure should automatically start their motors. If this has not occurred one of the following conditions may exist:

- There may be a power problem (an alarm and power fault indication would normally be active).
- If there is only one Power Supply/Cooling Module present, the drive motors will spin up in a delayed sequence.

### 3.4.1 Disk Drives LEDs

Each drive carrier incorporates two indicators, an upper (GREEN) and lower (AMBER).

- In normal operation the Green LED will be ON and will flicker as the drive operates.
- The Amber LED will be OFF In normal operation. It will only be ON if there is a drive fault

## 3.5 Power Down

To power the Enclosure down:

either

- Switch off the Power Supply/Cooling modules installed in the Enclosure.  
or
- Remove AC at the power source

# Chapter 4

# RS 232 MUI Functional Description

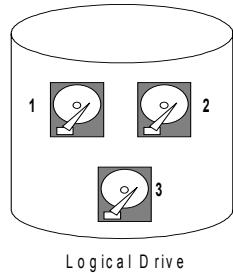
The following chapters (Chapter 4 to Chapter 12 inclusive) provide all of the necessary information that a system administrator needs to configure and maintain the RAID controllers, utilizing the RS232 Management User Interface (MUI). Also available is the User's Manual for the Java-based GUI RAID manager for remote and concurrent management of multiple RAID systems.

Redundant Array of Independent Disks, or RAID, offers the following advantages: Availability, Capacity, and Performance. Choosing the right RAID level and drive failure management can increase Capacity and Performance, subsequently increasing Availability.<sup>15</sup>

## 4.1 Logical Drive

The advantages mentioned above are achieved by creating “*logical drives*.” A logical drive is simply an array of independent physical drives. The logical drive appears to the host as a contiguous volume, the same as a local hard disk drive does.

The following section describes the different methods to create logical arrays of disk drives, such as spanning, mirroring and data parity. These methods are referred to as “**RAID levels**.”



**Figure 4–1** Logical Drive

## 4.2 Logical Volume

### ***What is a logical volume?***

The concept of a logical volume is very similar to that of a logical drive. A logical volume is the combination of one or several logical drives. These logical drives are combined into a larger capacity using the RAID 0 method (striping). When data is written to a logical volume, it is first broken into data segments and then striped across different logical drives in a logical volume. Each logical drive then distributes data segments to its member drives according to the specific RAID level it is composed of.

The member logical drives can be composed of the same RAID level or each of a different RAID level. A logical volume can be divided into a maximum of 64 partitions. During operation, the host sees a non-partitioned logical volume or a partition of a logical volume as one single physical drive.

## 4.3 RAID Levels

RAID stands for Redundant Array of Independent Disks. Using a RAID storage subsystem has the following advantages:

- Provides disk spanning by weaving all connected drives into one single volume.
- Increases disk access speed by breaking data into several blocks when reading/writing to several drives in parallel. With RAID, storage speed increases as more drives are added as the channel bus allows.
- Provides fault tolerance by mirroring or parity operation.

### ***What are the RAID levels?***

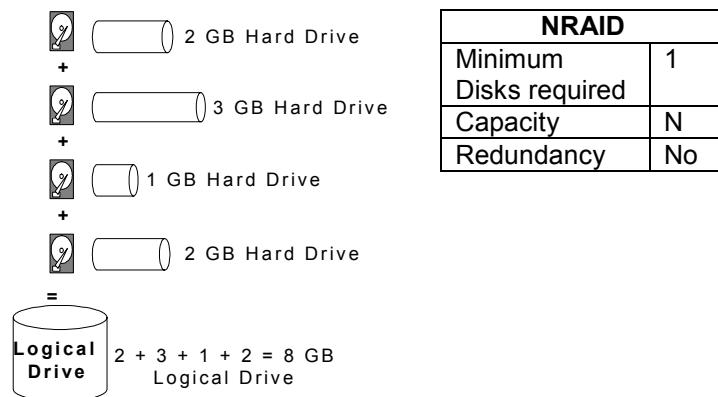
**Table 4-1 RAID Levels**

RAID Level	Description	Capacity	Data Availability
NRAID	Non-RAID	N	
RAID 0	Disk Striping	N	==NRAID
RAID 1 (0+1)	Mirroring Plus Striping (if N>1)	N/2	>>NRAID ==RAID 1
RAID 3	Striping with Parity on dedicated disk	N-1	>>NRAID ==RAID 3
RAID 5	Striping with interspersed parity	N-1	>>NRAID ==RAID 5
RAID 10 (Logical Volume)	Striping with RAID 1 logical drives	/	>>NRAID >>RAID 5
RAID 30 (Logical Volume)	Striping with RAID 3 logical drives	/	>>NRAID >>RAID 5
RAID 50 (Logical Volume)	Striping with RAID 5 logical drives	/	>>NRAID >>RAID 5

RAID Level	Performance Sequential	Performance Random
NRAID	Drive	Drive
RAID 0	R: Highest W: Highest	R: High W: Highest
RAID 1 (0+1)	R: High W: Medium	R: Medium W: Low
RAID 3	R: High W: Medium	R: Medium W: Low
RAID 5	R: High W: Medium	R: High W: Low

### 4.3.1 NRAID

Disk Spanning

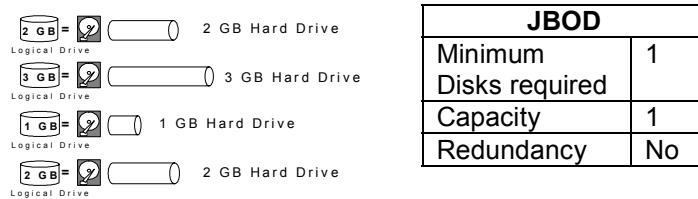


**Figure 4–2 NRAID**

NRAID stands for Non-RAID. The capacity of all the drives is combined to become one logical drive (no block striping). In other words, the capacity of the logical drive is the total capacity of the physical drives. NRAID does not provide data redundancy.

### 4.3.2 JBOD

Single Drive Control

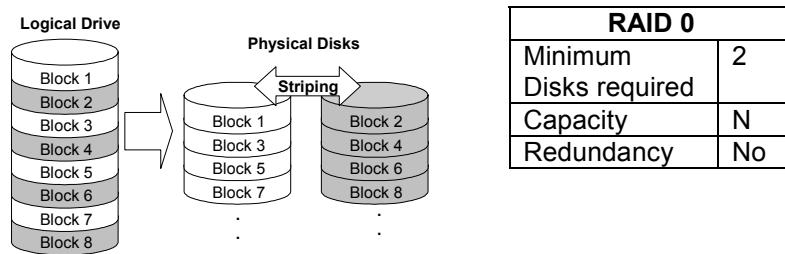


**Figure 4-3** JBOD

JBOD stands for Just a Bunch of Drives. The controller treats each drive as a stand-alone disk, therefore each drive is an independent logical drive. JBOD does not provide data redundancy.

### 4.3.3 RAID 0

Disk Striping

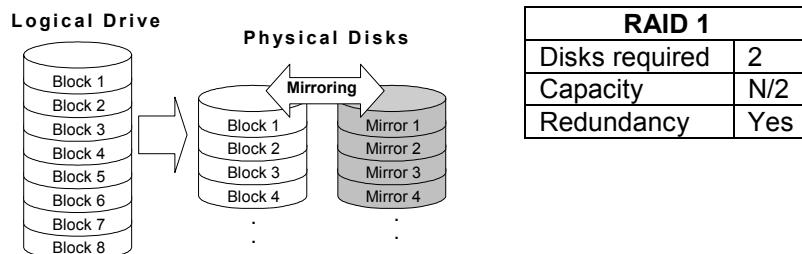


**Figure 4-4** RAID 0

RAID 0 provides the highest performance but no redundancy. Data in the logical drive is striped (distributed) across several physical drives.

### 4.3.4 RAID 1

Disk Mirroring

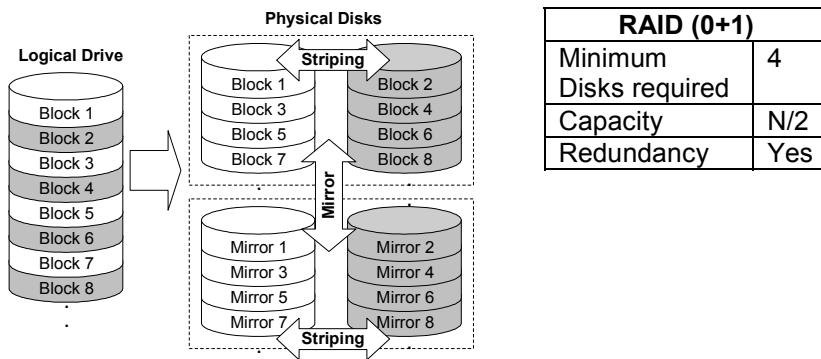


**Figure 4-5** RAID 1

RAID 1 mirrors the data stored in one hard drive to another. RAID 1 can only be performed with two hard drives. If there are more than two hard drives, RAID (0+1) will be performed automatically.

### 4.3.5 RAID (0+1)

Disk Striping with Mirroring



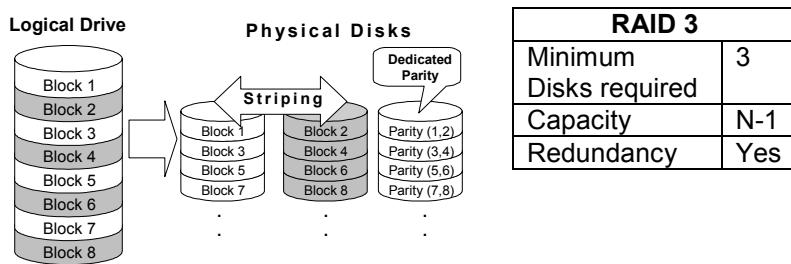
**Figure 4–6** RAID (0+1)

RAID (0+1) combines RAID 0 and RAID 1 - Mirroring and Striping. RAID (0+1) allows multiple drive failure because of the full redundancy of the hard drives. If there are more than two hard drives assigned to perform RAID 1, RAID (0+1) will be performed automatically.

**Important** \* “RAID (0+1)” will not appear in the list of RAID levels supported by the controller. If you wish to perform RAID 1, the controller will determine whether to perform RAID 1 or RAID (0+1). This will depend on the number of drives that has been selected for the logical drive.

### 4.3.6 RAID 3

Disk Striping with Dedicated Parity Disk

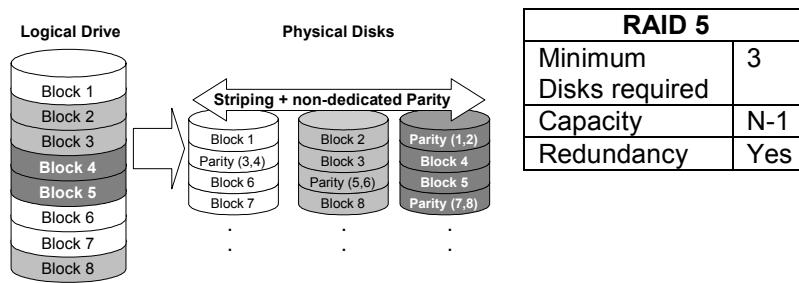


**Figure 4–7** RAID 3

RAID 3 performs Block Striping with Dedicated Parity. One drive member is dedicated to storing the parity data. When a drive member fails, the controller can recover/regenerate the lost data of the failed drive from the dedicated parity drive.

### 4.3.7 RAID 5

Striping with Interspersed Parity



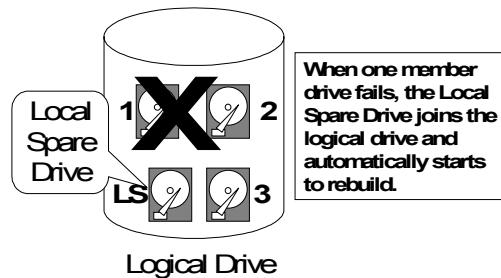
**Figure 4-8** RAID 5

RAID 5 is similar to RAID 3 but the parity data is not stored in one dedicated hard drive. Parity information is interspersed across the drive array. In the event of a failure, the controller can recover/regenerate the lost data of the failed drive from the other surviving drives.

**RAID 30** and **RAID 50** are implemented as logical volumes, please refer to the proceeding discussions for details.

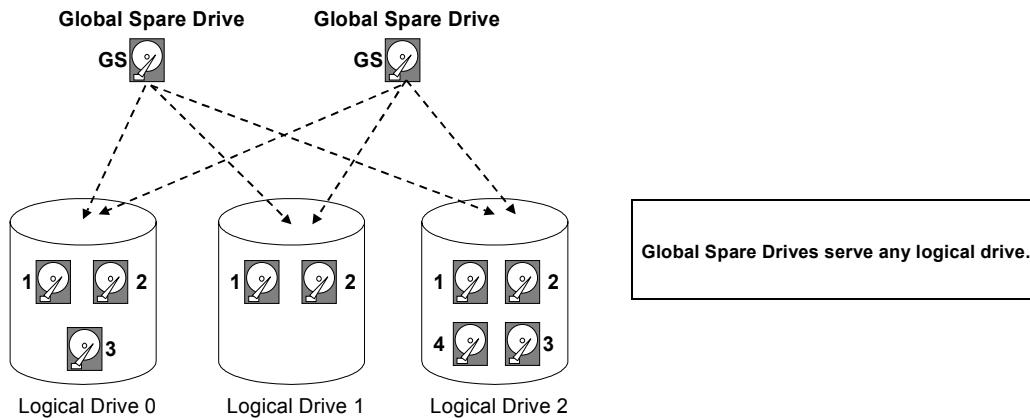
## 4.4 Spare Drives

### 4.4.1 Global and Local Spare Drive

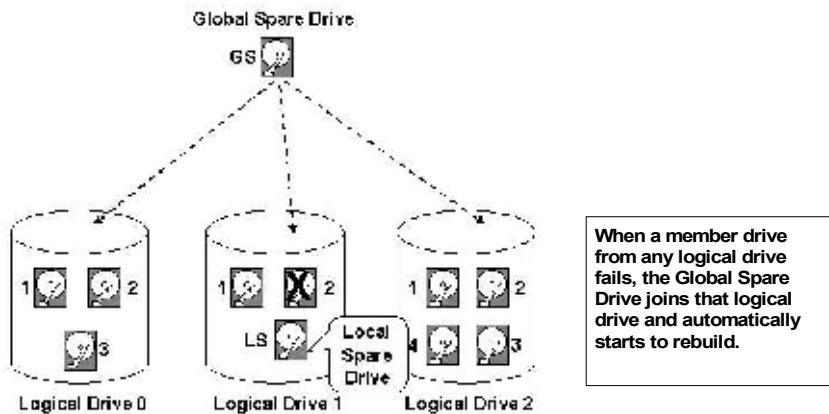


**Figure 4-9** Local (Dedicated) Spare

Local Spare Drive is a standby drive assigned to serve one specified logical drive. When a member drive of this specified logical drive fails, the Local Spare Drive becomes a member drive and automatically starts to rebuild.

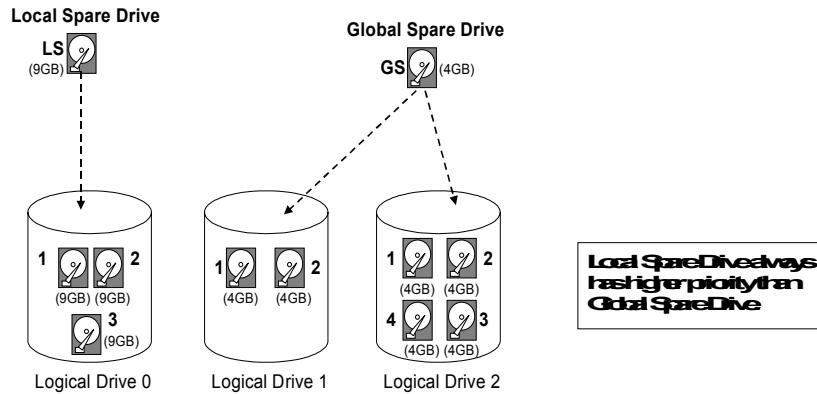
**Figure 4–10** Global Spare

Global Spare Drive does not only serve one specified logical drive. When a member drive from any of the logical drive fails, the Global Spare Drive will join that logical drive and automatically starts to rebuild.

**Figure 4–11** Global Spare Rebuild

The external RAID controllers provide both Local Spare Drive and Global Spare Drive functions. On certain occasions, applying these two functions together will better fit various needs. Take note though that ***the Local Spare Drive always has higher priority than the Global Spare Drive.***

In the example shown below, the member drives in Logical Drive 0 are 9 GB drives, and the members in Logical Drives 1 and 2 are all 4 GB drives.

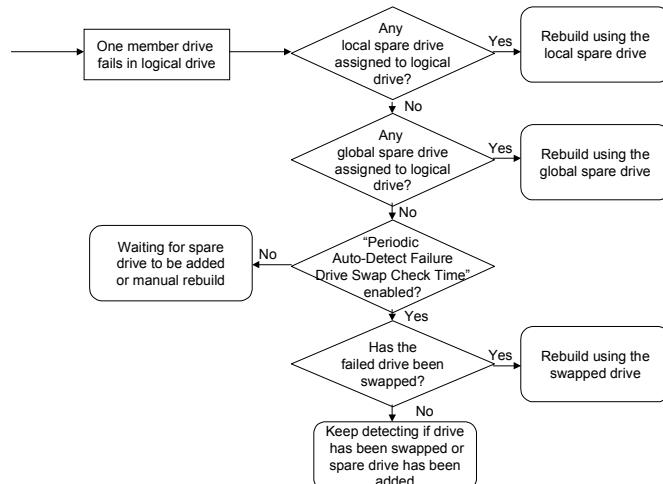


**Figure 4–12** Mixing Local and Global Spares

It is not possible for the 4 GB Global Spare Drive to join Logical Drive 0 because of its insufficient capacity. However using a 9GB drive as the Global Spare drive for a failed drive that comes from Logical Drive 1 or 2 will bring huge amount of excess capacity since these logical drives require 4 GB only. In the diagram below, the 9 GB Local Spare Drive will aid Logical Drive 0 once a drive in this logical drive fails. If the failed drive is in Logical Drive 1 or 2, the 4 GB Global Spare drive will immediately give aid to the failed drive.

## 4.5 Rebuild

### 4.5.1 Automatic Rebuild



**Figure 4–13** Automatic Rebuild

**Rebuild with Spare:** When a member drive in a logical drive fails, the controller will first examine whether there is a Local Spare Drive assigned to this logical drive. If yes, it will automatically start to rebuild.

If there is no Local Spare available, the controller will search for a Global Spare. If there is a Global Spare, it will automatically rebuild the logical drive.

**Failed Drive Swap Detect:** If neither Local Spare Drive nor Global Spare Drive is available, and the **Periodic Auto-Detect Failure Drive Swap Check Time** is **Disabled**, the controller will not attempt to rebuild unless the user applies a forced-manual rebuild.

When the **Periodic Auto-Detect Failure Drive Swap Check Time** is **Enabled** (i.e., a check time interval has been selected), the controller will detect whether or not the failed drive has been swapped (by checking the failed drive's channel/ID). Once the failed drive has been swapped, the rebuild will begin immediately.

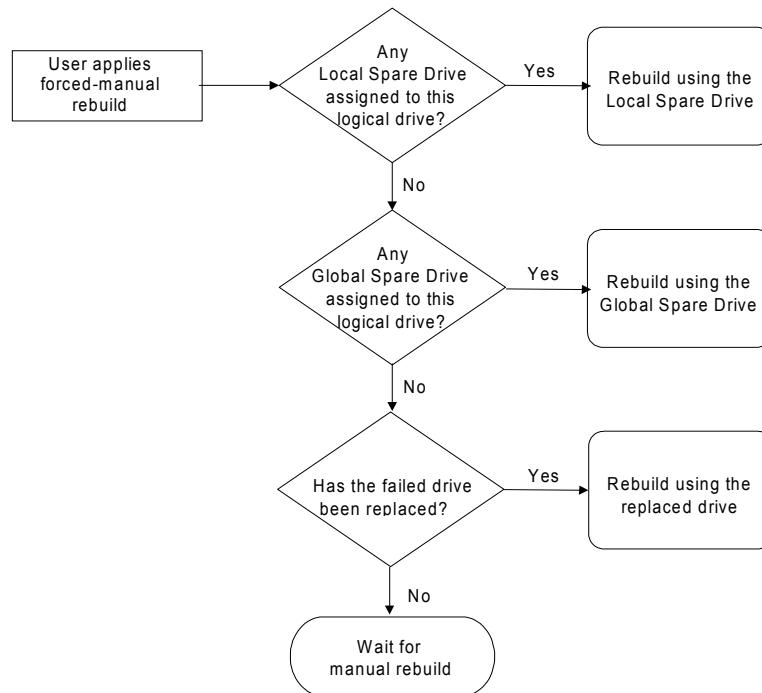
If the failed drive is not swapped but a Local Spare Drive is added to the logical drive, rebuild will begin with the spare.

If the SMART function is enabled on drives and the reaction scheme is selected for securing data on a failing drive, spare will also be used for restoring data. Please refer to [Chapter 10 , "Advanced Configuration", on page 137](#) for more details.

## 4.5.2 Manual Rebuild

When a user applies forced-manual rebuild, the controller will first examine whether there is any Local Spare assigned to the logical drive. If yes, it will automatically start to rebuild.

If there is no Local Spare available, the controller will search for a Global Spare. If there is a Global Spare, logical drive rebuild will be automatically conducted.



**Figure 4–14** Manual Rebuild

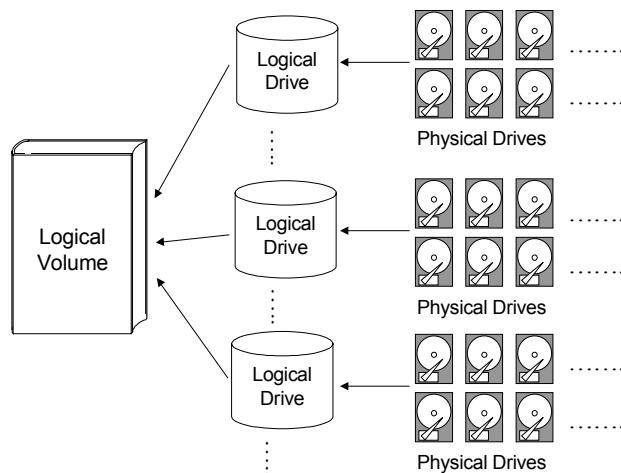
If neither Local Spare nor Global Spare is available, the controller will examine the ID of the failed drive. Once the failed drive has been replaced by a healthy one, it starts to rebuild using the new drive. If there is no available drive for rebuilding, the controller will not attempt to rebuild until the user applies another forced-manual rebuild.

### 4.5.3 Concurrent Rebuild in RAID (0+1)

RAID (0+1) allows multiple drive failures and concurrent multiple drive rebuild. Drives newly swapped must be scanned and set as Local Spares. These drives will be used for rebuild at the same time (you do not need to repeat the rebuild process for each drive).

## 4.6 Logical Volume (Multi-Level RAID)

### 1. What is a logical volume?



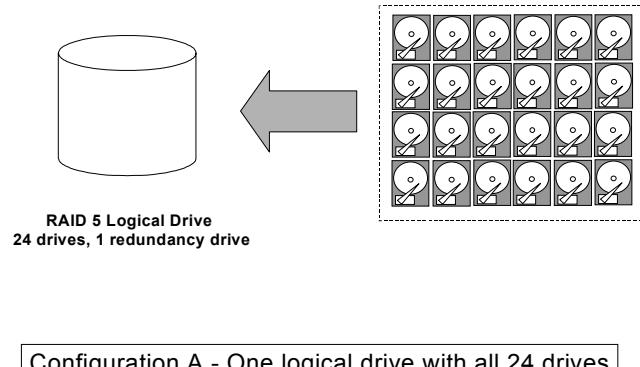
**Figure 4-15** Logical Volume

A logical volume is a combination of RAID 0 (Striping) and other RAID levels. Data written to a logical volume is first broken into smaller data segments and striped across different logical drives in a logical volume. A logical volume can be divided into a maximum of eight partitions. During normal operation, the host sees a non-partitioned logical volume or a partition of a partitioned logical volume as one single physical drive.

The benefits of using logical volumes include:

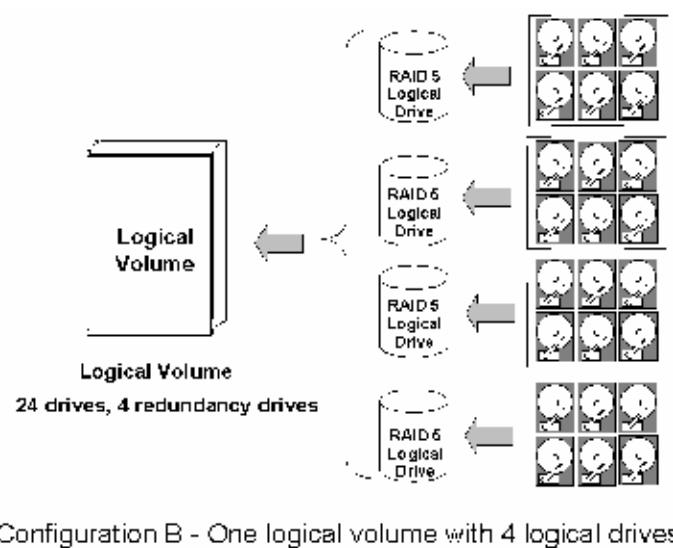
- Expand the MTBF (mean time between failure) by using more redundancy drives (spare drives).
- Decrease the time to rebuild and reduce the chance of data loss caused by multiple drive failures happening at the same time.
- Avoid the disastrous loss of data caused by channel bus failure with proper drive deployment.
- Cost-efficiency.

As shown in [Figure 4–16](#), numerous drives can be included in a logical drive, and one of them is used for redundancy. By grouping these drives into several logical drives, and then into a logical volume, chance of failing two drives in a logical unit is greatly reduced. Each logical drive can have one or more local spares. A failed drive can be immediately replaced by a local spare, reducing the risk of losing data if another should fail soon afterwards.



**Figure 4–16** Logical Drive Composed of 24 Drives

As shown in [Figure 4–16](#), **Configuration A** is a RAID 5 logical drive composed of 24 physical drives. **Configuration B** ([Figure 4–17](#)) is a logical volume composed of four RAID 5 logical drives.



**Figure 4–17** Logical Volume with 4 Logical Drives

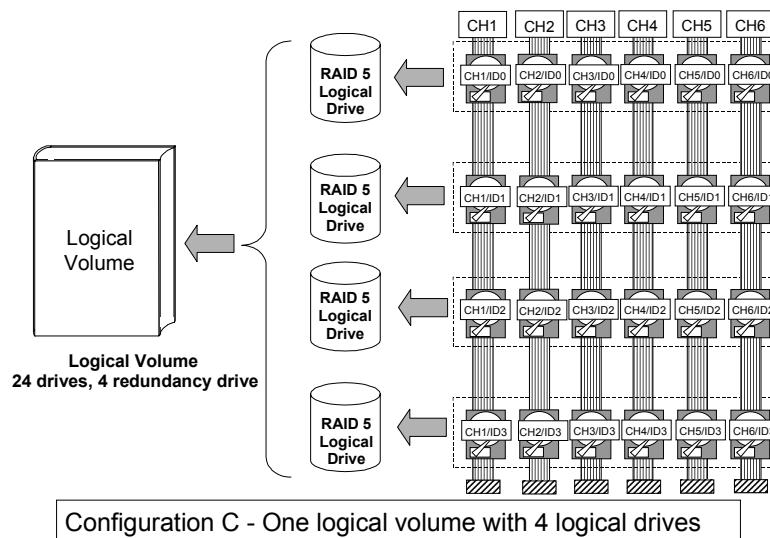
Configuration B can help to reduce the chance of encountering points of failure:

- **Higher Redundancy:** Configuration A has one dedicated spare, while Configuration B allows the configuration of four spares. In Configuration B, chance for failing two drives in a logical drive together is significantly reduced than in Configuration A. The total of drive capacity is comparatively smaller for the use of spares.

- **Less Rebuild Time:** The time during rebuild is a time of hazard. For example, a RAID 5 logical drive can only withstand single drive failure, if another drive fails during the rebuild process, data will be lost. The time span of rebuild process should be minimized to reduce the possibility of having two drives to fail at the same time.

Configuration A is a large logical drive and takes a long time to rebuild. All of the 24 members will be involved during the rebuild process. In Configuration B, the time span is shorter because only a maximum of 6 drives will participate when rebuilding any of the logical drives.

- **Channel Failure Protection:** Channel failure may sometimes result from absurd matters like a cable failure. A channel failure will cause multiple drives to fail at the same time and inevitably lead to a fatal failure. Using a logical volume with drives coming from different drive channels can get around this point of failure.



**Figure 4–18** Logical Volume with Drives on Different Channels

As illustrated above, should one of the drive channels fail, each logical drive loses one of its members. Logical drives will still be capable of normal operation. Data remains intact and the rebuild can be performed after the failed channel is recovered. No access interruptions to the logical volume will be experienced on the host side.

## 2. Spare drives assigned to a logical volume?

A Local Spare Drive cannot be assigned to a Logical Volume. If a drive fails, it fails as a member of a logical drive; therefore, the controller allows Local Spare's assignment to logical drives rather than logical volumes.

### Limitations:

The logical volume can not have any logical drive stated as "fatal failed." If there is any failed drive in any of its member logical drives (of a logical volume), controller will start to rebuild that logical drive. Should any of the member logical drives fail fatally, the logical volume fails fatally and data will not be accessible.

### **3. To avoid a logical volume failure:**

- 1 Logical drives as members to a logical volume should be configured in RAID levels that provide redundancy - RAID level 1 (0+1), 3, or 5.
- 2 Rebuild the logical drive as soon as possible whenever a drive failure occurs. Use of local spares is recommended.
- 3 A logical drive should be composed of physical drives from different drive channels. Compose the logical drive with drives from different drive channels to avoid the fatal loss of data caused by bus failure.

### **4. Partitioning - partitioning the logical drive or partitioning the logical volume?**

Once a logical drive has been divided into partitions, the logical drive can no longer be used as a member of a logical volume. The members of a logical volume should have one partition only with the entire capacity.

If you want to use a partitioned logical drive for a logical volume, delete the other partitions in this logical drive until there remains one partition only with the entire logical drive capacity. Mind that deleting the partition of the logical drive will also destroy all the data. Data should be backed up to somewhere else before making partition configuration.

When a logical drive is used as a member of a logical volume, this logical drive can no longer be partitioned in **View and Edit Logical Drives**. Instead, the Logical Volume can be partitioned into 8 in "View and Edit Logical Volume."

The procedure for partitioning a logical volume is the same as that for partitioning a logical drive. After the logical volume has been partitioned, map each partition to a host ID/LUN to allow the host computer to utilize the partitions as individual drives.

As members of a logical volume, all logical drives will be forced to adopt a consistent write policy. Whenever the write policy of a logical volume is changed, for example, the corresponding setting in its members will also be changed.

### **4. RAID expansion with logical volume?**

The Logical Volume can also be expanded using the RAID expansion function. The concept of expanding a logical volume is similar to that of expanding a logical drive. To perform RAID expansion on a logical drive, replace each member physical drive with a drive of larger capacity or add a new drive, then perform logical drive expansion to utilize the newly-added capacity. For information about RAID expansion, please refer to [Chapter 10 , "Advanced Configuration", on page 137](#).

To perform RAID expansion on a logical volume, expand each member logical drive, then perform RAID expansion on the logical volume.

#### **Steps to expand a Logical Volume:**

- 1 Expand each member logical drive.
- 2 Expand the logical volume.

- 3 Map the newly-added capacity (in the form of a new partition) to a host LUN.

**Important** If a logical unit has already been partitioned, and you wish to expand its capacity, the added capacity will be appended to the last partition. You will not be able to proceed with expansion using firmware version earlier than 3.27 when the unit already has 8 partitions.

Unless you move your data and merge two of the partitions, you will be not allowed to expand your logical volume. This is a precautionary limitation on logical unit expansion.

#### **5. Is there anything changed with logical volume?**

##### **Redundant Controller**

- **Without logical volume:** - logical drives can be assigned to the primary controller or to the secondary controller. The host I/Os directed to a logical drive will be served by the controller to which this logical drive is assigned. If a controller fails, the host I/Os originally assigned to the failed controller will be taken over by the existing controller. When the controller fails back (failed controller being replaced by a new one), logical drives will be returned to the replacement controller in the original configuration.
- **With logical volume:** logical volumes can also be assigned to different controllers. The only difference is that the Logical volumes will be considered as the base units for shifting the control during a controller failure.

#### **6. A logical volume with logical drives of different levels?**

##### **Multi-level RAID systems**

- 1 **RAID (0+1):** a standard feature of this RAID controller. It has the benefits of RAID 1 (high availability) and RAID 0 (enhanced I/O performance through striping). Simply choose multiple drives for a RAID 1 logical drive, the RAID controller will implement RAID (0+1) automatically.
- 2 **RAID (3+0):** a logical volume itself is a multi-level RAID implementation. A logical volume is composed of one or several logical drives with data "striping" (RAID 0). A logical volume with several RAID 3 member logical drives can be considered as a RAID (3+0), or RAID 53 as defined in "*The RAID Book*" (from The RAID Advisory Board).
- 3 **RAID (5+0):** a logical volume with several RAID 5 member logical drives.

# Chapter 5

# RAID Planning

This chapter summarizes the procedures and provides some useful tools for first-time configuration:

- Section 5.1, "Considerations": things you should know before setting up
- Section 5.2, "Configuring the Array" the most common configuration procedure
- Section 5.3, "Theory of Operation": the theory behind data bus and system drive mapping

## 5.1 Considerations

After you understand the basic ideas behind the RAID levels, you may still be wondering about how to begin. Here are the answers to some questions that may help you through the decision making.

### **1. How many physical drives do you have?**

When initially creating the drive groups, you should know how many drives you have in your RAID enclosure or in the JBOD attached to the RAID appliance.

### **2. How many drives on each drive channel?**

The optimal system planning is always a compromise between pros and cons. As a general rule, the number of drives you should connect on each channel equals the data bus bandwidth divided by the maximum transfer rate the average of your hard drives. Knowing the mechanical performance of your hard drives can help to determine how many drives should be connected over a drive channel.

Always use drives of the same speed and capacity for your disk array. A logical drive composed of an adequate number of larger drives can be more efficient than that of many but smaller drives.

### **3. How many drives would you like to appear to the host computer?**

It must be decided what capacity will be included in a logical configuration of drives. A logical configuration of drives will appear to the host as a single capacity volume.

A logical drive composed of fewer but larger drives can be more efficient than that of many smaller drives.

You may compose a large logical volume consisting of drives on different drive channels, and have it partitioned into smaller partitions. Each partition will appear as an independent capacity volume. In a performance-oriented configuration, you may configure the same number of drives into several RAID 0 logical drives just to get the most out of the array performance.

#### **4. What kind of host application?**

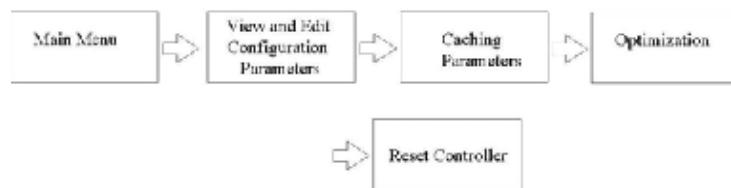
The frequency of read/write activities can vary from one host application to another. The application can be a SQL server, Oracle server, Informix, or other data base server of a transaction-based nature. Applications like video playback and video post-production editing require read/write activities of large files in a sequential order.

Choose an appropriate RAID level for what is the most important for a given application – capacity, availability, or performance. Before creating your RAID, you need to choose an optimization scheme and optimize each array/controller for your application. Stripe size and write policy can be adjusted on a per logical drive basis.

#### **5. Dual loop, hub, or switch?**

Unpredictable situations like a cable coming loose can cause system down time. Fibre channel dual loop or redundant data paths using SCSI cabling can guarantee no single point of failure. The use of Fibre channel hub or switch makes cabling and topology more flexible. Change the channel mode, connection type, and other associated settings to adjust the controller to your demands.

#### **6. Optimization?**



**Figure 5–1** Optimization Setting

You should select an optimization scheme best suited to your applications before configuring a RAID array. Once the optimization mode is selected, it will be applied to all arrays in the system.

Two options are available: Sequential I/Os and Random I/Os. You may refer to section [8.2, "Caching Parameters", on page 89](#) for the stripe size variables and its relations with RAID levels.

Numerous controller parameters are tuned for each optimization mode. Although stripe size can be adjusted on a per logical drive basis, users are not encouraged to make a change to the default values.

For example, smaller stripe sizes are ideal for I/Os that are transaction-based and randomly accessed. However, using the wrong stripe size can cause problems. When an array of the 4KB stripe size receives files of 128KB size, each drive will have to write many more times to store data fragments of the size of 4KB.

Unlike the previous firmware versions, controller optimization mode can be changed without changing the array stripe size.

The default values in optimization modes guarantee the optimal performance for most applications. Please refer to [Table 5–2 on page 68](#) for all the controller parameters that are related to system performance and fault-tolerance.

### **7. What RAID level?**

Different RAID levels provide varying degrees of performance and fault tolerance.

**Table 5–1** RAID Levels

RAID Level	Description	Capacity	Data Availability
NRAID	Non-RAID	N	
RAID 0	Disk Striping	N	==NRAID
RAID 1 (0+1)	Mirroring Plus Striping (if N>1)	N/2	>>NRAID ==RAID 5
RAID 3	Striping with Parity on dedicated disk	N-1	>>NRAID ==RAID 5
RAID 5	Striping with interspersed parity	N-1	>>NRAID ==RAID 5
Logical Volume	Striping; containing one or more logical drives of same RAID levels	*	Higher; depends on member logical drive(s)

RAID Level	Performance Sequential	Performance Random
NRAID	Drive	Drive
RAID 0	R: Highest W: Highest	R: High W: Highest
RAID 1 (0+1)	R: High W: Medium	R: Medium W: Low
RAID 3	R: High W: Medium	R: Medium W: Low
RAID 5	R: High W: Medium	R: High W: Low
Logical Volume	Depends on member logical drive(s)	Depends on member logical drive(s)

### **8. Any spare drives?**

*(Swap Drive Rebuild / Spare Drive Rebuild)*

Spare drives allow for the unattended rebuilding of a failed drive, heightening the degree of fault tolerance. If there is no spare drive, data rebuild has to be performed manually by replacing a failed drive with a healthy one.

### **9. Limitations?**

Firmware 3.31 and above support 64-bit LBA. A maximum of 64TB capacity can be included in single logical drive.

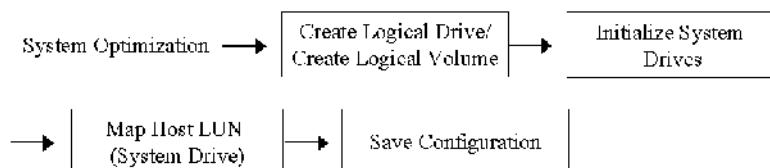
Up to 128 members can be included in each logical drive.

Extreme array sizes can cause operational problems with system backup and should be avoided.

## **5.2 Configuring the Array**

### **5.2.1 Starting a RAID System**

The following is a basic flowchart illustrating steps to be taken when configuring a RAID system. Hardware installation should be completed before any configuration takes place.



**Figure 5–2** Array Configuration Process

Drives must be configured and the controller properly initialized before host computer can access the storage capacity.

- 1 Use the RS232 terminal or the RAIDWatch manager to start configuring your array.
- 2 When powered on, the controller scans all the hard drives that are connected through the drive channels. If a hard drive was connected after the controller completes initialization, use the scan drive function to let the controller recognize the newly added drive and configure it as a member of a logical drive.
- 3 Optimize controller's parameters for your applications. Please refer to [Table 5–2](#) for details.
- 4 Configure one or more logical drives to contain your hard drives based on the desired RAID level, and/or partition the logical drive into one or several partitions. For the redundancy across different channels, you may also create a logical unit containing drives from different drive channels.

**Notes**

**1** A **Logical Drive** is a set of drives grouped together to operate under a given RAID level and appears as a single contiguous storage volume. The controller is capable of grouping drives into as many as 8 logical drives, each configured on the same or different RAID levels.

**2** A total of 8 **Logical Volumes** can be created each from one or several logical drives. A logical drive or logical volume can be further divided into a maximum of 8 "Partitions." A total of 64 partitions can be created in an array.

**5** The next step is to map each logical drive or storage partition as one system drive (host ID/LUN – **View and Edit Host LUNs** in the main configuration menu). The host SCSI or Fibre adapter will recognize the system drives after re-initializing the host bus.

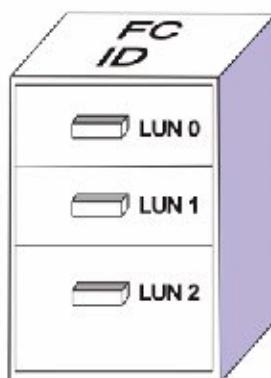
**6** The last step is to save your configuration profile as a file or save it to the logical drive you created.

The controller is totally independent from host operating system. Host operating system will not be able to tell whether the attached storage is a physical hard drive or the virtual system drives created by the RAID controller.

## 5.3 Theory of Operation

### 5.3.1 Fibre Channel Connectivity

A Fibre channel allows, theoretically, the connectivity of up to 125 devices in a loop. Each device has one unique ID.



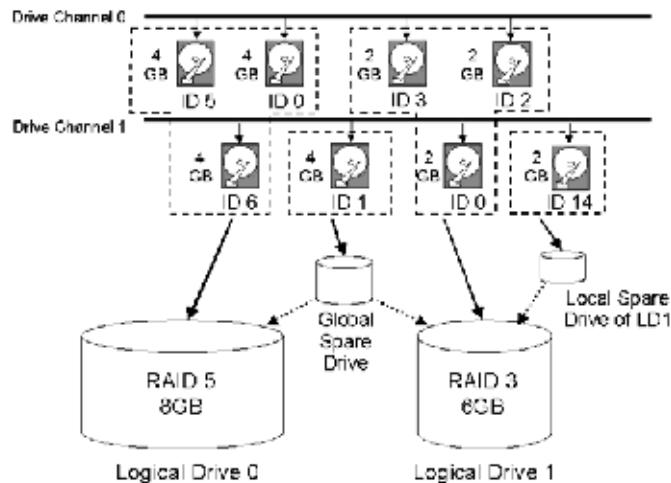
**Figure 5–3** FC ID/LUNs

**Figure 5–3** illustrates the idea of mapping a system drive to host ID/LUN combination. If you are to file document into a cabinet, you must put the document into one of the drawers. The ID is like a cabinet, and the drawers are the LUNs (LUN is short for Logical Unit Number). Each cabinet can have up to 32 drawers (LUNs). Data can be stored into one of the LUNs of the SCSI ID. Most host adapters treat a LUN like another SCSI device.

## 5.3.2 Grouping Drives into an Array

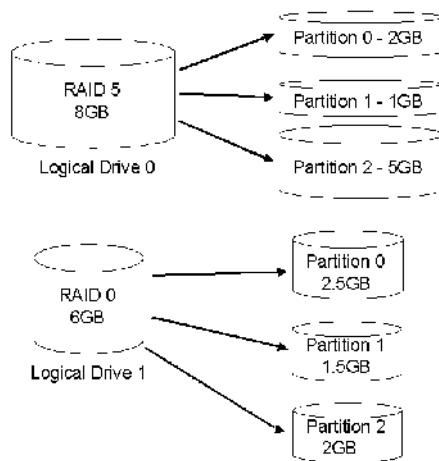
Install the controller into an enclosure canister, then connect drives to the controller's Fibre channels.

A Logical Drive consists of a group of physical drives. Drives in one logical drive do not have to come from the same channel. Also, each logical drive can be configured a different RAID level.



**Figure 5–4** Allocations of drives in Logical Configurations

A drive can be assigned as the Local Spare Drive that serves one specified logical drive, or as a Global Spare Drive, that participates in the rebuild of any logical drive. Spares automatically joins a logical drive when a drive fails. Spares are not applicable to logical drives that have no data redundancy (NRAID and RAID 0).



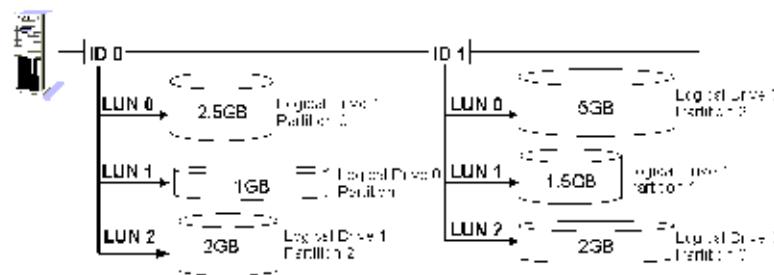
**Figure 5–5** Partitions in Logical Configurations

You may divide a logical drive or logical volume into several partitions, or use the entire logical drive as single partition.

- 1 It is not a requirement to partition any logical configuration. Partitioning helps to manage a massive capacity.

- 2 Note that a logical drive can not be included in a logical volume if it has already been partitioned.

### 5.3.3 Making Arrays Available to Hosts

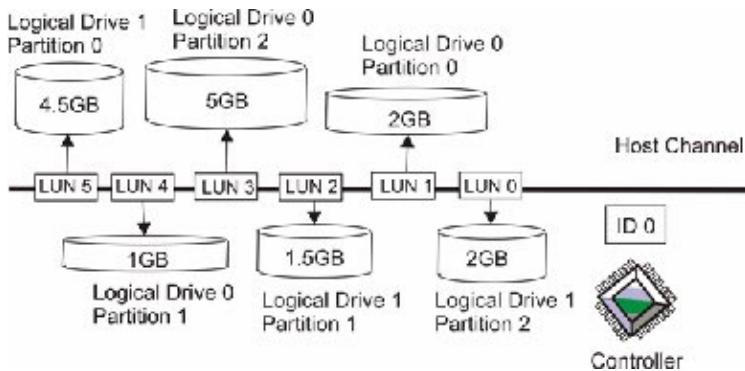


**Figure 5–6** Mapping Partitions to Host ID/LUNs

Host ID mapping is a process that associates a logical configuration of drives with a host channel ID/LUN. To avail logical partitions on host channel(s), map each partition to a host ID or one of the LUNs under host IDs. Each ID or LUN will appear to the host adapter as one virtual hard drive.

There are alternatives in mapping for different purposes:

- 1 Mapping a logical configuration to IDs/LUNs on different host channels allows two host computers to access the same array. This method is applicable when the array is shared in a clustering backup.
- 2 Mapping partitions of an array to IDs/LUNs across separate host channels can distribute workload over multiple data paths.
- 3 Mapping across separate host channels also helps to make use of all bandwidth in a multi-path configuration. Firmware automatically manages the process when one data path fails and the workload on the failed data path has to be shifted to the existing data paths.



**Figure 5–7** Mapping Partitions to LUNs under ID

## 5.4 Tunable Parameters

Fine-tune the controller and the array parameters for your host applications. Although the factory defaults guarantee the optimized controller operation, you may refer to the table below to facilitate tuning of your array. Some of the performance and fault-tolerance settings may also be changed later during the preparation process of your disk array.

Use [Table 5–2](#) as a checklist and make sure you have each item set to an appropriate value.

**Table 5–2** Controller Parameter Settings

User-Defined Parameters	Default	Alternate Settings
<b>Fault Management:</b>		
(1) Automatic Logical Drive Rebuild - Spare Drive	Enabled when Spare Drive is available	RAID 1 + Local Spare RAID 3 + Local Spare RAID 5 + Local Spare Global Spare
(1) SMART	Disabled	Detect Only Detect & Perpetual Clone Detect & Clone + Replace
(3) Clone Failing Drive	Manual function	Replace After Clone Perpetual Clone
(1) Rebuild Priority	Low (higher priority requires more system resource)	Low Normal Improved High
(1) Verification on Write	Disabled	On LD Initialization On LD Rebuild On Normal Drive Writes
(3) SDRAM ECC	Disabled	Enabled
(1) Event Notification	Reports to user interface and inboard alarm	Over Dial-out Modem Over SNMP Trap Over Java-Based Management Software
(1) System Events	System default	Upper and Lower event triggering thresholds configurable
<b>Optimization Mode:</b>		
(1) Write-back Cache	Enabled	Disabled
(1) Optimization for Random/ Sequential	Sequential	Either (sequential for LD larger than 512MB and can not be changed)
<b>Drive Parameters:</b>		
(1) Data Transfer Rate	Auto	1Gb/2Gb

**Table 5–2** Controller Parameter Settings

User-Defined Parameters	Default	Alternate Settings
(1) Maximum Tag Count	32	1-256
(1) Maximum Queued I/O Count	256	1 to 1024
(2) LUN's per Channel ID	8	Up to 32
(1) Periodic Drive Check Time	Disabled	Enabled - up to 30 seconds
(1) Periodic SAF-TE and SES Device Check Time	5	Disabled to 60 seconds
(1) Periodic Auto-Detect Failure Drive Swap Check Time	Disabled	5 to 60 seconds
(1) Number of Host-LUN Connection	4	1 to 32
(1) Tag per Host-LUN Connection	32	1 to 256
(1) Parity Check	Disabled	Enabled
<b>Spin-up Parameters:</b>		
(1) Motor Spin-up	Disabled	Enabled
(1) Reset at Power-up	Enabled	Disabled
(1) Initial Disk Access Delay	15	None to 75 seconds
<b>Fibre Channel Parameters:</b>		
(1) Fibre Connection Options	Loop only	Point-to-Point Only Loop Preferred otherwise Point-to-Point
(1) Fibre Channel Dual-Loop	Enabled	Enabled by cabling
(1) Host ID/WWN name list	*	User configurable
(1) LUN Filtering	*	Host Access Filter Control Configurable - filter type - access right - name
(1) Controller Unique Identifier	N/A	Necessary: 1 to 65535; or, hex number from 0 to FFFF (FW 3.25 and above)
(1) RCC through Fibre channel	N/A	N/A

**Table 5–2** Controller Parameter Settings

User-Defined Parameters	Default	Alternate Settings
<b>Others:</b>		
(3) Password	N/A	User-Defined; Password Validation Timeout: 1 to Always Check Configurable

(1) Parameters that should be configured at the initial stage of system configuration

(2) Parameters that can be changed later

(3) Non-critical

- 1 Create and configure one or more logical drives or logical volumes. The host and drive channel configuration depends on your application topology. Map the logical units you created to Host IDs/LUN combinations.
- 2 Remember to enter a controller unique ID for your controller. Enter a hex number between 0 and FFFF (FW3.25 and above). In redundant mode, the unique ID of the primary controller will be adopted for both controllers in the system.
- 3 Save your configuration. The configuration information can be saved to logical drives or as a file in host system disk. When all the RAID configuration is done, use the **Save NVRAM to Disk** function (please refer to section [8.14.2 on page 119](#)) to save your configuration data. You may also use the forms in [Chapter 12](#) of this manual to keep a hard record of your configuration.
- 4 Initialize your system and proceed with installing your operating system.

## Chapter 6

# Out-of-Band via Serial Port & Ethernet

## 6.1 RS-232 Serial Port

The controller can be configured via a PC running a VT100 terminal emulation program, or a VT-100 compatible terminal. In order to transfer the configuration commands to your host computer, you need to connect the RAID system to a service computer. RAID enclosures usually provide one or more DB-9 RS-232 ports. Simply use an RS-232 cable to connect between controller RS-232 port and the PC terminal port.

Make sure Null Modem is already installed in your enclosure or that a Null Modem can be attached to the host serial port. The Null Modem has the serial signals swapped for connecting to a standard PC serial interface.

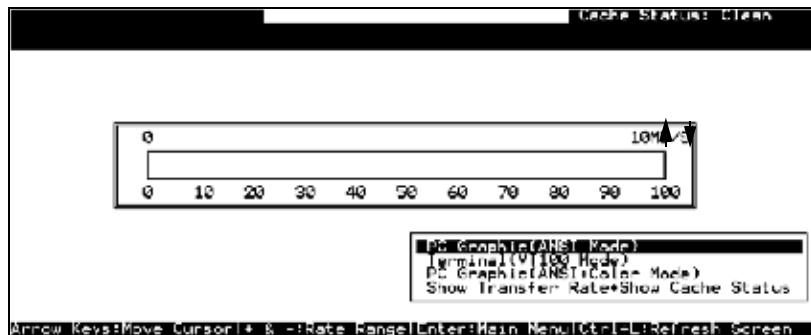
The following are guidelines on using the serial port:

- The serial port's default is set at 38400 baud, 8 bit, 1 stop bit and no parity. Use the COM1 serial port of the controller.
- In most cases, connecting RD, TD, and SG are enough to establish the communication with a terminal.
- If you are using a PC as a terminal, any VT-100 terminal emulation software will suffice. Microsoft® Windows includes a terminal emulation program as presented with the **(Hyper) Terminal** icon in the Accessories window.

### 6.1.1 Starting RS232 Terminal Emulation

The keys used when operating via the terminal are as follows:

	To select options
[Enter]	To go to a submenu or to execute a selected option
[Esc.]	To escape and go back to the previous menu
[Ctrl] [L]	The controller will refresh the screen information



**Important** If the RS-232 cable is connected while the controller is powered on, press [Ctrl] [L] to refresh the screen information.

The initial screen appears when the controller is powered-on. Use the **Up** and **Down** arrow keys to select the desired terminal emulation mode, then press [**ENTER**] to enter the Main Menu.



Choose a functional item from the main menu to begin configuring your RAID.

## 6.2 Out-of-Band via Ethernet

The RAIDWatch manager software provides graphical interface to RAID subsystems. There are two different methods to install the RAIDWatch software if Ethernet connection is preferred:

### 6.2.1 Method 1: Installing to a Management Computer

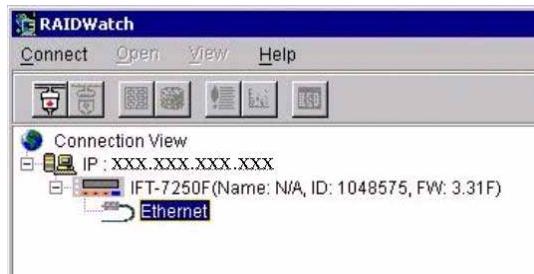
Install RAIDWatch on a management computer and setup the RAID controller's TCP/IP settings. You may then access the array by opening a software session with the controller IP address.

- 1 Connect the RAID system Ethernet port to a local network. Your management computer must have a valid network connection.
- 2 Configure your RAID controller for TCP/IP settings. Please refer to section [6.2.4, "Configuring the Controller", on page 75](#)

- 3 If you have problems setting up an IP, contact your LAN administrator for a valid IP and appropriate values about subnet mask and gateway values.
- 4 Install Java Runtime (version 1.2.2 or 1.3) and use RAIDWatch's installer program. The installer program, install.htm, can be located in the CD-ROM that came with your system. The program will guide you through the rest of the installation procedure.
- 5 Start the manager program and enter the controller's IP address.



- 6 Double-click the Ethernet icon to start configuring your array.



## 6.2.2 Method 2: Installing to the RAID System

Segregate a reserved space on your arrays and setup the RAID controller's TCP/IP settings. RAIDWatch's main programs can be stored on the reserved space. Open a browser from your management computer and enter the controller IP address followed by **grm.htm** as your URL (e.g., *http://xx.xx.xx.xx/grm.htm*) to start the software.

- 1 Connect the RAID system' Ethernet port to a local network. Your management computer must have a valid network connection.
- 2 Create a reserved space on your array(s). For more details, please refer to section [6.2.4, "Configuring the Controller", on page 75](#)
- 3 Set up the related TCP/IP configurations to enable the Ethernet port and the http service will be automatically activated.
- 4 FTP RAIDWatch program files to the controller IP address.
- 5 Open your browser to access the RAID system. Enter the controller IP address followed by "grm.htm" as your URL.

- 6 It may take a while for the manager to start. When started for the first time, Java Applet will be loaded.
- 7 Double-click the Ethernet icon to start configuring your array.



### 6.2.2.1 What Is the “Disk Reserved Space”?

#### RAIDWatch and Reserved Space

- There is no need to install the RAIDWatch program to your management computer if you access the software using the controller Ethernet port. In order to simplify the installation process, system firmware already contains important software agents.
- User's configuration data and the manager's main programs are kept in a small section of disk space on each data drive. The segregated disk space is called a **Disk Reserved Space**. When configuring a logical drive, firmware automatically segregates a 256MB of disk space from each of the member drives.
- Because the manager's main program is run from the reserved space on drives, in the event of single controller failure, the manager interface can “failover” to a counterpart controller. Operators' access to the system will not be interrupted.

### 6.2.2.2 Other Concerns

#### Availability Concern:

For safety reason, it is better to create a reserved space on more than one logical drive.

Whatever data is put into the reserved space, firmware will automatically duplicate and distribute it to the reserved section on every data drive. Even if one hard drive or one logical drive fails, an exact replica still resides on other drives.

#### Web-Based Management

The controller firmware has embedded http server. Once properly configured, the controller/subsystem's Ethernet port behaves like an HTTP server.

### 6.2.2.3 Requirements

- 1 Controller/subsystem running **Firmware** revision 3.21 and above [3.25 onwards has embedded NPC (Notification Processing Center) support]

**2 Management Station:** Pentium or above compatible (or equivalent PC) running Windows NT 4/Windows 2000; Solaris 7 & 8 (SPARC, x86); AIX 4.3; or Red Hat Linux 6.1 (kernel v2.2.xx); Red Hat 7, SUSE 7, WIN95/98, Windows Me/XP

**3 Standard Web Browser:** E6 or above recommended.

**4** A computer station (computer) accessing RAIDWatch manager must support:

- **TCP/IP**

- **Java Runtime:** a package is bundled with RAIDWatch installer or it can be downloaded from SUN Microsystem's web site.

**5 A static or an IP address obtained by DHCP method**

### 6.2.3 Connecting Ethernet Port(s)

Use a LAN cable to connect the Ethernet port(s) on the subsystem's RAID controller unit(s). Use only shielded cable to avoid radiated emissions that may cause interruptions. Connect the cable between controller's LAN port and a LAN port from your local network.

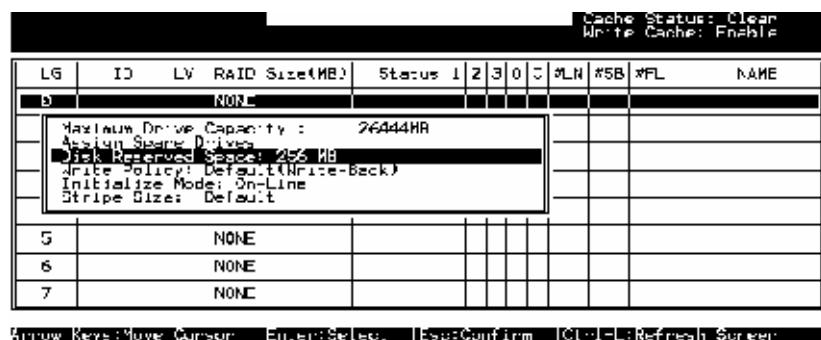
### 6.2.4 Configuring the Controller

Prepare the controller for using the RAIDWatch manager as follows:

#### 1 Use a Terminal Emulator to Begin Configuration

- Connect the subsystem's serial port to a PC running a VT100 terminal emulation program or a VT-100 compatible terminal.
- Make sure the included Null Modem is already attached to enclosure serial port or the host computer's COM port. The Null Modem converts the serial signals for connecting to a standard PC serial interface. For more details, please refer to the descriptions in section [6.1 on page 71](#).

#### 2 Create a Reserved Space on Drives



- Create one or more logical drives and the reserved space option will be automatically available. The default size is 256MB, and it is recommended to keep it as is. A reserved disk space will be formatted on every member drives.

- If you delete a logical drive later, the reserved space will remain intact. Unless you manually remove the reserved space, data kept in it will be unaffected. These drives can later be used to create a new logical drive without making additional changes.

Quick View	Slot	Chl	ID	Size(MB)	Speed	LG DRV	Status	Vendor and Product ID
view	1	4	4857	80MB	NONE	FRMT DRY		
view	1	1	4857	80MB	NONE	FRMT DRY		
view	1	2	4857	80MB	NONE	FRMT DRY		
view	1	3	4857	80MB	NONE	HEH DRY		
view	1	4	4857	80MB	NONE	NEW DRY		
	1	5	4857	80MB	NONE	NEW DRY		
	1	6	4857	80MB	NONE	NEW DRY		
	1	8	4857	80MB	NONE	NEW DRY		

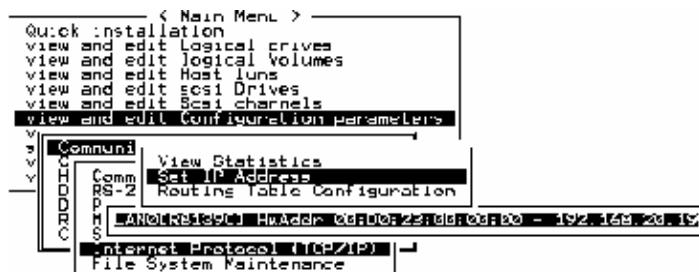
Arrow Keys: Move Cursor | Enter: Select | Esc: Exit | Ctrl+L: Refresh Screen

- When formatted, a meta-file system is created on the 256MB reserved space. A drive configured with a reserved space will be stated as a “formatted drive”.

### 3 Assign an IP Address to Ethernet Port

Assign an IP address to the controller Ethernet port and specify the Net Mask and gateway values. Reset the controller for the configuration to take effect.

- Select **View and Edit Configuration Parameters** from the Main Menu. Select **Communication Parameters** -> **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)**-> press [**ENTER**] on the chip hardware address -> and then select **Set IP Address**.



- Provide the IP address, NetMask, and Gateway values accordingly.



- PING the IP address from your management computer to make sure the link is up and running.

#### 4 FTP Manager Programs to the Controller IP Address

There are several RAIDWatch programs that need to be FTP'd to the controller IP address.

- 1 Necessary program files can be found in a zip file (*GUI.zip*) in the CD-ROM that came with your machine. Unzip **grem.htm**, **grem.jar**, **grm.htm**, and **grm.jar** to your PC. Files are available in the following directory: X:\Java where X is the CD-ROM letter.
- 2 Open a DOS prompt. You may use an FTP program to complete the same process. Move to the folder where the up zipped program files reside. Key in **ftp xx.xx.xx.xx** (controller IP address) and press Enter to proceed.
- 3 Login as **root** and there is no password for the first login. Press Enter to skip password entry.
- 4 Use the **put** command to transfer the following files:

```
put grm.htm
```

```
put grem.jar
```

```
put grm.htm
```

```
put grem.jar
```

- 5 Proceed to install Java Run-time environment from the CD (If the management station is a P4-based computer, it is required to install Java JRE version1.3.1).
- 6 Reset the RAID subsystem using the “Reset Controller” command in “System Functions” for the configuration to take effect.

#### 5 Starting the Manager:

Start your web browser and enter the IP address assigned to the controller followed by “grm.htm” as your URL (e.g., <http://xx.xx.xx.xx/grm.htm>).

Enter the IP address followed by **grem.htm** to start **Event Monitor**.

### 6.2.5 NPC Onboard

NPC is an abbreviation for **Notification Processing Center**, a sub-module for use with system event notification.

To activate the NPC module, do the following:

- 1 Create an NPC configuration file (in a simple text file format) using a text editor program like Notepad in Win32 systems.
- 2 Save it in the name of **agent.ini**
- 3 FTP it to the controller IP address, and then reset the controller for the configuration to take effect.

The sample configuration is listed in [Table 6–1](#). Specify your configuration using simple defining parameters as shown in [Table 6–1](#).

**Table 6-1** Sample NPC Configuration.

```
[SNMP_TRAP]
ENABLED=0 (1=on; 0=off)
SEVERITY=1
COMMUNITY=public
RECEIVER1=XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX,2 ("2" specifies the level of events to be received by this receiver)
[EMAIL]
ENABLED=
SEVERITY=
SUBJECT=Event Message
SENDER_MAIL_BOX=XXXX@XXXXX.XXX
SMTP_SERVER=XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
RECEIVER1=XXXX@XXXXX.XXX,3
RECEIVER2=XXXX@XXXXX.XXX,1
RECEIVER3=XXXX@XXXXX.XXX,2
RECEIVER4=XXXX@XXXXX.XXX,1
[BROADCAST]
ENABLED=0
SEVERITY=1
RECEIVER=XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX, 1
RECEIVER=XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX, 1
```

**Note** NPC will be automatically activated if any of the notifier settings (email, SNMP, or broadcast) is set to ***enabled***."

The configuration file is comprised of three major sections: SNMP, Email and Broadcast. Each notifying method can be separately enabled or disabled.

#### **The SNMP\_TRAP section**

[SNMP\_TRAP] – section header  
 [ENABLED] – 1=enabled, 0=disabled (applies to this section only)  
 [SEVERITY] - level of severity of the messages to be received:  
 1. notification, 2. warning, 3. alert. "1" covers events of all levels. "3" sends only the most serious events.)  
 [COMMUNITY] – SNMP community name of the destination/ receiver  
 [RECEIVER] – The IP address of the receiver computer. Add additional lines to specify multiple receivers.  
 Up to 4 receivers can be configured.

#### **The EMAIL section**

[EMAIL] – section header  
 [ENABLED] – 1=enabled, 0=disabled (applies to this section only)  
 [SEVERITY] - level of severity of the messages to be received:  
 notification, 2. warning, 3. alert. "1" covers events of all levels. "3" sends only the most serious events.)

[SUBJECT] – add a topic to email. This can be used to specify the location of the RAID system, if there are many.

[SENDER\_MAIL\_BOX] – a valid email address to be used as the “from” part of the email message.

[SMTP\_SERVER] – SMTP server used to send email. IP address only, do not enter a host name here.

[RECEIVER#] – receiver’s email address. The receiver’s number followed by an “=” mark, an email address, “comma,” and the number to specify the message severity level.

\* \* \* \*

#### **The BROADCAST section**

BROADCAST] – section header

[ENABLED] – 1=enabled, 0=disabled (applies to this section only)

[SEVERITY] – level of severity of the messages to be received:

1. notification, 2. warning, 3. alert. “1” covers events of all levels. “3” only the most serious events will be broadcast.)

[RECEIVER#] – The IP address of the receiver computer. Add additional lines to specify multiple receivers. Up to 4 receivers can be configured.

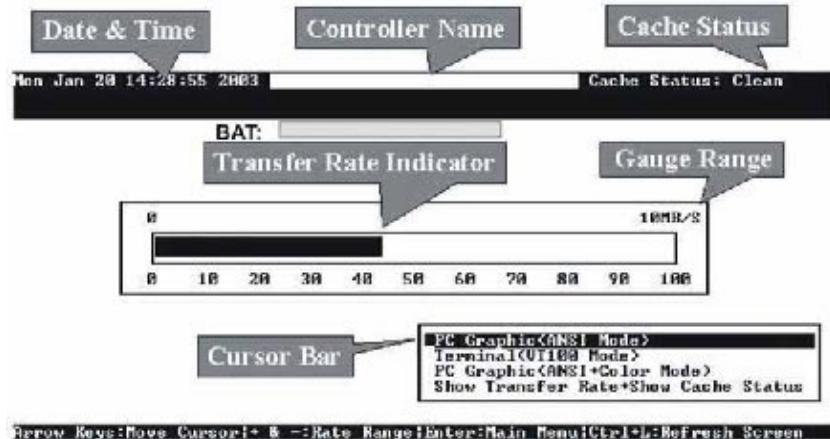


# Chapter 7

# Terminal Screen Messages

The following guide to the on-screen information applies to both the RS-232 terminal emulation and the inband SCSI Text-based manager.

## 7.1 The Initial Screen



Cursor Bar:

Move the cursor bar to a desired item, then press [ENTER] to select.

Controller Name:

Identifies the type of controller.

Transfer Rate Indicator

Indicates the current data transfer rate.

Gauge Range:

Use + or - keys to change the gauge range in order to view the transfer rate indicator.

Cache Status:

Indicates the current cache status.

BAT:	Battery Back-up Status
Date & Time:	Current system date and time, generated by controller real time clock
PC Graphic (ANSI Mode):	Enters the Main Menu and operates in ANSI mode
Terminal (VT-100 Mode):	Enters the Main Menu and operates in VT-100 mode.
PC Graphic (ANSI+Color Mode):	Enters the Main Menu and operates in ANSI color mode.
Show Transfer Rate+Show Cache Status:	Press [ENTER] on this item to show the cache status and transfer rate.

## 7.2 Main Menu



Use the arrow keys to move the cursor bar through the menu items, then press [ENTER] to choose a menu, or [ESC] to return to the previous menu/screen.

In a subsystem or controller head where battery status can be detected, battery status will be displayed at the top center. Status will be stated as **Good**, **Bad**, or several "+" (plus) signs will be used to indicate battery charge. A battery fully-charged will be indicated by five plus signs.

When initializing or scanning an array, the controller displays progress percentage on the upper left corner of the configuration screen. "i" indicates array initialization. "s" stands for scanning process. The following number indicates logical drive number.

## 7.3 Quick Installation



Type **Q** or use the **Up** and **Down** arrow keys to select **Quick installation**, then press [**ENTER**]. Choose Yes to create a logical drive.

All possible RAID levels will be displayed. Use the **Up** and **Down** arrow keys to select a RAID level, then press [**ENTER**]. The assigned spare drive will be a Local Spare Drive, not a Global Spare Drive.

The controller will start initialization and automatically map the logical drive to LUN 0 of the first host channel.

## 7.4 Logical Drive Status

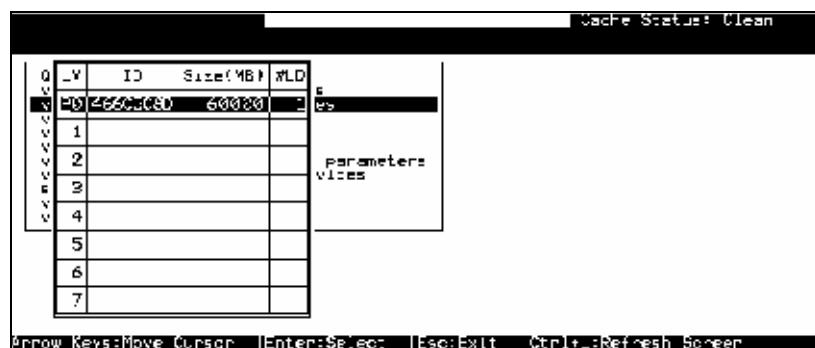
Cache Status: Clear										
LG	ID	LV	RAID	Size(MB)	Status	D	ALN	PSB	#FL	NAME
P0	64D415B6	NA	RAID05	60400	GOOD	S	3	0	0	
1		NONE								
2		NONE								
3		NONE								
4		NONE								
5		NONE								
6		NONE								
7		NONE								

Arrow Keys:Move Cursor |Enter:Select |Esc:Exit |Ctrl-L:Refresh Screen

<b>LG</b>	Logical Drive number
<b>P0:</b>	Logical Drive 0 of the Primary Controller
<b>S0:</b>	Logical Drive 0 managed by the Secondary Controller
<b>LV</b>	The Logical volume to which this logical drive belongs
<b>ID</b>	Controller-generated unique ID
<b>RAID</b>	RAID level
<b>SIZE (MB)</b>	Capacity of the Logical Drive
<b>Size(MB)</b>	Capacity of the Logical Drive
<b>Status 1</b>	Logical Drive Status - Column 1
<b>GOOD</b>	The logical drive is in good condition
<b>DRV FAILED</b>	A drive member failed in the logical drive
<b>CREATING</b>	Logical drive is being initiated

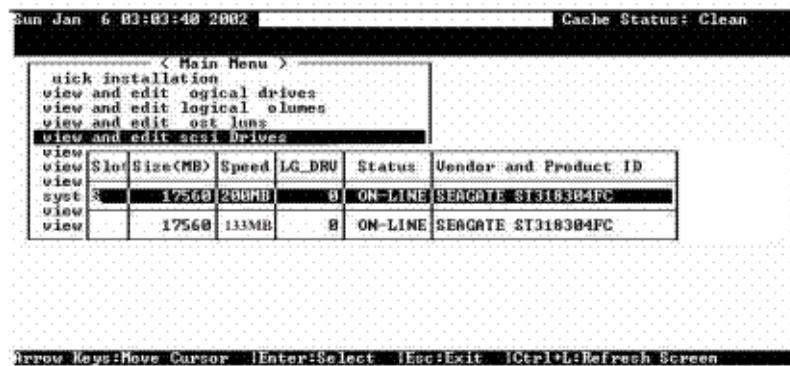
	DRV ABSENT	One of the drives cannot be detected					
	INCOMPLETE	Two or more drives failed in the logical drive					
<b>Status 2</b>	Logical Drive Status - Column 2						
	I	Initializing drives					
	A	Adding drive(s)					
	E	Expanding logical drive					
<b>Status 3</b>	Logical Drive Status - Column 3						
	R	Rebuilding the logical drive					
	P	Regenerating array parity					
<b>Column 0</b>	Logical drive status - Stripe size						
	N/A	Default					
	2	4kB	6	64kB			
	3	8kB	7	128kB			
	4	16kB	8	256kB			
	5	32kB					
	6	64kB					
	7	128kB					
	8	256kB					
<b>Column 0</b>	Logical drive status - Write Policy setting						
	B	Write-back					
	T	Write-through					
#LN	Total drive members in the logical drive						
#SB	Standby drives available for the logical drive. This includes all the spare drives (local spare, global spare) available for the logical drive						
#FL	Number of Failed drive member(s) in the logical drive						
Name	Logical drive name (user configurable)						

## 7.5 Logical Volume Status



<b>LV</b>	Logical Volume number. P0: Logical Volume 0 of the Primary Controller S0: Logical Volume 0 of the Secondary Controller
<b>ID</b>	Logical Volume ID number (controller random generated)
<b>Size(MB)</b>	Capacity of the Logical Volume
<b>#LD</b>	The number of Logical Drive(s) included in this Logical Volume

## 7.6 Drive Status



<b>Slot</b>	Slot number of the drive
<b>Size (MB)</b>	Drive Capacity.
<b>Speed</b>	<b>XxMB</b> Maximum synchronous transfer rate of this drive.
<b>LG_DRV</b>	<b>Async</b> The drive is using asynchronous mode.
	<b>X</b> The drive is a drive member of logical drive x. If the Status column shows "STAND-BY", the SCSI drive is a Local Spare Drive of logical drive x.
<b>Status</b>	Global The drive is a Global Spare Drive
<b>INITING</b>	Processing initialization
<b>ON-LINE</b>	The drive is in good condition
<b>REBUILD</b>	Processing Rebuild
<b>STAND-BY</b>	Local Spare Drive or Global Spare Drive. The Local Spare Drive's LG_DRV column will show the logical drive number. The Global Spare Drive's LG_DRV column will show "Global".
<b>NEW DRV</b>	The new drive has not been configured to any logical drive or as a spare drive
<b>USED DRV</b>	The used drive has not been configured to any logical drive or as a spare drive
<b>BAD</b>	Failed drive
<b>ABSENT</b>	Drive does not exist
<b>MISSING</b>	Drive once existed, but is missing now
<b>SB-MISS</b>	Spare drive missing
<b>Vendor and Product ID</b>	The vendor and product model information of the drive

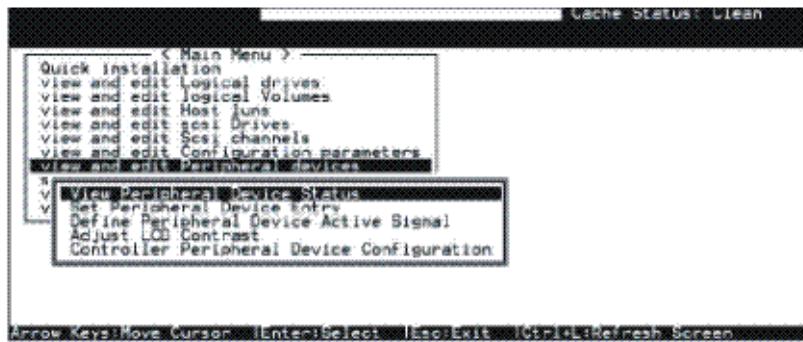
## 7.7 Channel Status

Cache Status: Clean									
Chl	Mode	PID	SID	DefSynClk	DefWid	S	Term	CurSynClk	CurWid
0	RCCon								
1	Host	-	N/A	2Gb	Wide	S	On	Asyne	Serial
2	Drive	7	N/A	2Gb	Serial	S	NA	Asyne	SATA
3	Drive	7	N/A	2Gb	Serial	S	NA	Asyne	SATA
4	Drive	7	N/A	2Gb	Serial	S	NA	Asyne	SATA
5	Drive	7	N/A	2Gb	Serial	S	NA	Asyne	SATA
6	Drive	119	N/A	1 Gb	Serial	F	NA		
7	Drive	119	N/A	1 Gb	Serial	F	NA		

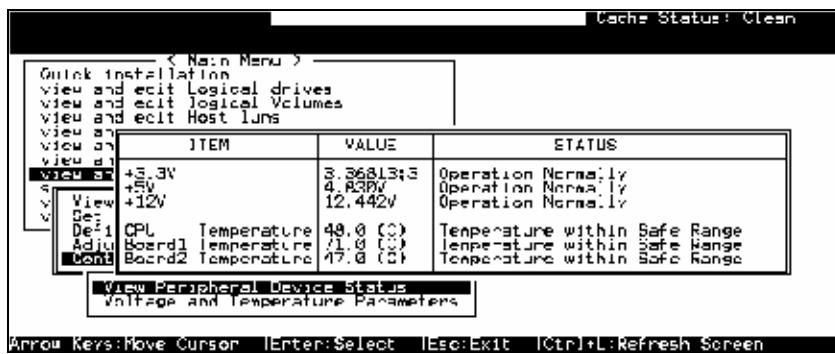
Arrow Keys:Move Cursor |Enter:Select |Esc:Exit |Ctrl+L:Refresh Screen

<b>Chl</b>	Channel's ID.
<b>Mode</b>	Channel mode.
	Host Host Channel mode
	Drive + RCC Drive Channel mode
<b>PID</b>	Primary controller's Channel ID
<b>SID</b>	Secondary controller's Channel ID
<b>DefSynClk</b>	Default FC rate bus synchronous clock
	– Auto
	– 1Gb
	– 2Gb
<b>DefWid</b>	Bus Type'
<b>S</b>	Signal F Fibre Channel
<b>Term</b>	N/A
<b>CurSynClk</b>	Current bus synchronous clock
	– Auto
	– 1Gb
	– 2Gb
	– 133Mb
<b>?CurWid</b>	Current Bus Width
	– Serial
	– SATA

## 7.8 Controller Voltage and Temperature Monitoring



Choose from Main Menu, **View and Edit Peripheral Devices** and press [**ENTER**]. From the submenu, choose **Controller Peripheral Device Configuration**, then press [**ENTER**]. Select **Voltage and Temperature Monitor** and press [**ENTER**].



The current specimens of voltage and temperature detected by controller will be displayed on screen and will be defined as normal or out of order.

## 7.9 Viewing Event Logs on the Screen

There may be a chance when errors occur and you may want to trace down the record to see what has happened to your system. The controller's event log management will record all the events from power on, it can record up to 1,000 events. Powering off or resetting the controller will cause an automatic deletion of all the recorded event logs. To view the events logs on screen, choose from Main Menu **View and Edit Event logs** by pressing [**ENTER**].

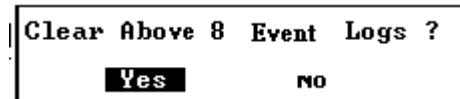


The controller can store up to 1000 event logs for use in modifying the configuration with reference to the present time on the upper left of the configuration screen and the time when the events occurred.



The “P” or “S” icon on the right indicates which one of the controllers (Primary or Secondary) issued an event in a redundant controller setting.

To clear the saved event logs, scroll the cursor down to the last event and press [ENTER].



Choose **Yes** to clear the recorded event logs.

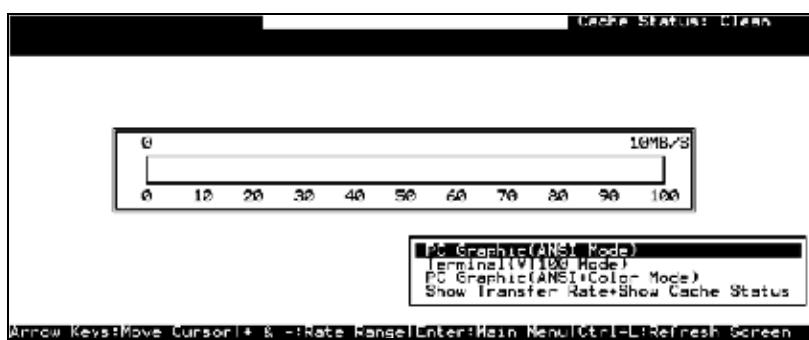
## Chapter 8

# Terminal Operation

## 8.1 Power on RAID Enclosure

Hardware installation should be completed before powering on your RAID enclosure. Drives must be configured and the controller properly initialized before host computer can access the storage capacity. The configuration and administration utility resides in controller's firmware.

Open the initial terminal screen: use arrow keys to move cursor bar through menu items, then press [ENTER] to choose the terminal emulation mode, and [ESC] to return to the previous menu/screen.



## 8.2 Caching Parameters

### 8.2.1 Optimization Modes

Mass storage applications can be roughly categorized into two as database and video/imaging, according to its read/write characteristics. To optimize the controller for these two categories, the controller has two embedded optimization modes with controller behaviors adjusted to different read/write parameters. They are the ***Optimization for Random I/O*** and the ***Optimization for Sequential I/O***.

### 8.2.1.1 Limitations

There are limitations on the use of optimization modes.

- 1 You can select the stripe size of each array (logical drive) during the initial configuration. However, changing stripe size is only recommended for experienced engineers who have tested the effects tuning stripe sizes for different applications.
- 2 The array stripe size can only be changed during the initial configuration process.
- 3 Once the controller optimization mode is applied, access to different logical drives in a RAID system will follow the same optimized pattern. You can change the optimization mode later without having to re-organize your array.

### 8.2.1.2 Database and Transaction-based Applications

This kind of applications usually include SQL server, Oracle server, Informix, or other data base services. These applications keep each transaction within the minimal size, so that I/O transfers will not be clogged by one large transaction. Due to its transaction-based nature, these applications do not read or write a bunch of data in a sequential order. Instead, access to data occurs randomly. The transaction size ranges from 2K to 4K. Transaction-based performance is usually measured in “I/Os per second” or “IOPS.”

### 8.2.1.3 Video Recording/Playback and Imaging Applications

This kind of application usually belongs to video playback, video post-production editing, or other similar applications. These applications read or write large files from and into storage in a sequential order. The size of each I/O can be 128K, 256K, 512K, or up to 1MB. Performance is measured in “MB/Sec.”

When an array works with applications such as video or image oriented applications, the application reads/writes from the drive as large-block, sequential files instead of small-block and randomly accessed files.

The controller optimization modes have read-ahead buffer and other R/W characteristics tuned to obtain the best performance for these two major application categories.

#### 1 Optimization for Random I/O

The logical drive, cache memory, and other controller parameters will be adjusted for the use of database/transaction-processing applications.

#### 2 Optimization for Sequential I/O

***Optimization for Sequential I/O*** provides larger stripe size (block size, also known as Chunk size) than ***Optimization for Random I/O***. Numerous controller's internal parameters will also be changed to optimize for sequential or random I/O. The change will take effect after the controller resets.

The logical drive, cache memory, and other controller internal parameters will be adjusted for the use of video/imaging applications.

## 8.2.2 Optimization Mode and Stripe Size

Each controller optimization mode has preset values for the stripe size of arrays created in different RAID levels. If you want a different value for your array, you may change the controller optimization mode, reset the controller, and then go back to create the array. Once the array is created, stripe size can not be changed.

Using the default value should be sufficient for most applications.

**Table 8-1** RAID Levels, Optimization Modes, and Stripe Sizes

	Opt. for Sequential I/O	Opt. for Random I/O
RAID0	128	32
RAID1	128	32
RAID3	16	4
RAID5	128	32

## 8.2.3 Optimization for Random or Sequential I/O

Choose **Optimization for Random I/O** or **Optimization for Sequential I/O**, then press [ENTER]. The **Random or Sequential** dialog box will appear, depending on the option you have selected. Choose **Yes** in the dialog box that follows to confirm the setting.

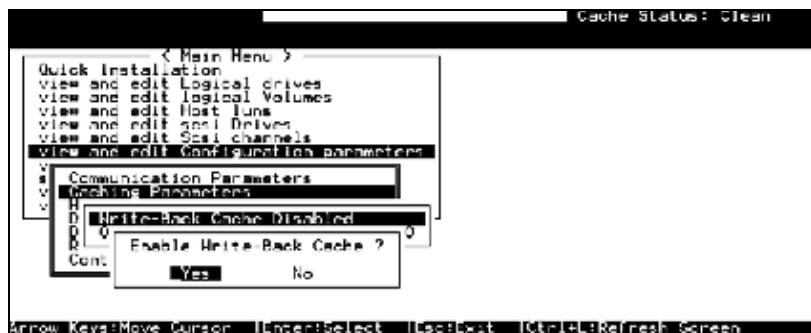


**Important** Changing the setting to “Optimization for Sequential I/O” or “Optimization for Random I/O” should be performed only when no logical drive exists.

If the logical drive size is larger than 512GB, only the optimization for sequential I/O can be applied.

## 8.2.4 Write-Back/Write-Through Cache Enable/Disable

Choose **Caching Parameters**, then press [ENTER]. Select **Write-Back Cache**, then press [ENTER]. **Enabled** or **Disabled** will display the current setting with the Write-Back caching. Choose **Yes** in the dialog box that follows to confirm the setting.



The Write-through mode is safer if your controller is not configured in a redundant pair and there is no battery backup.

Write-back caching can dramatically improve write performance by caching the unfinished writes in memory and let them be committed to drives in a more efficient manner. In the event of power failure, a battery module can hold cached data for days. In the event of controller failure, data cached in the failed controller has an exact replica on its counterpart controller and therefore remains intact.

**Important** **The original 512GB threshold on array optimization mode is canceled. If the size of an array is larger than 16TB, only the optimization for sequential I/O can be applied. Logical drives of this size are not practical; therefore, there is actually no limitation on the optimization mode and array capacity.**

**Every time you change the Caching Parameters, you must reset the controller for the changes to take effect.**

**In the redundant controller configuration, write-back will only be applicable when there is a synchronized cache channel between partner controllers.**

## 8.3 Viewing the Connected Drives

Prior to configuring disk drives into a logical drive, it is necessary to understand the status of physical drives in your enclosure.

Cache Status: Clean					
Slot	Size(MB)	Speed	LG_DRV	Status	Vendor and Product ID
1010	133MB	NONE	NEW DRV		
2010	133MB	NONE	NEW DRV		
2010	133MB	NONE	NEW DRV		
2010	133MB	NONE	NEW DRV		
2010	133MB	NONE	NEW DRV		
2010	133MB	NONE	NEW DRV		
2010	133MB	NONE	NEW DRV		
2010	133MB	NONE	NEW DRV		

Use arrow keys to scroll down to **View and Edit Drives**. This will display information of all the physical drives installed.

Drives will be listed in the table of **View and Edit Drives**. Use arrow keys to scroll the table. You may first examine whether there is any drive installed but not listed here. If there is a drive installed but not listed, the drive may be defective or not installed correctly, please contact your RAID supplier.

**Important** Drives of the same brand/model/capacity might not have the same block number.

The basic read/write unit of a hard drive is a block. If the drive members in one logical drive have different block numbers (capacity), the minimum block number among all the member drives will be chosen as the maximum block number for the RAID configuration. Therefore, use drives of the same capacity.

You may assign a Local/Global Spare Drive to a logical drive whose member drive's block number is equal or smaller to the Local/Global Spare Drive's block number but you may not do the reverse.

## 8.4 Creating a Logical Drive

Browse through the Main Menu and select **View and Edit Logical Drive**.

Cache Status: Clean										
LG	ID	LV	RAID	Size(MB)	Status	D	WLN	MSB	MFL	NAME
0			NONE							
1			NONE							
2			NONE							
3			NONE							
4			NONE							
5			NONE							
6			NONE							
7			NONE							

For the first logical drive on RAID, simply choose **LG 0** and press [**ENTER**] to proceed. You may create as many as eight logical drives from drives on any SCSI bus.

When prompted to **Create Logical Drive?**, select **Yes** and press [**ENTER**] to proceed.

Create Logical Drive ?	
Yes	No

### 8.4.1 Choosing a RAID Level

A pull-down list of supported RAID levels will appear. In this chapter, RAID 5 will be used to demonstrate the configuration process. Choose a RAID level for this logical drive.



## 8.4.2 Choosing Member Drives

Choose your member drive(s) from the list of available physical drives. The drives can be tagged for inclusion by positioning the cursor bar on the drive and then pressing [ENTER]. An asterisk (\*) mark will appear on the selected physical drive(s). To deselect the drive, press [ENTER] again on the selected drive. The "\*" mark will disappear. Use **Up** and **Down** arrow keys to select more drives.

Cache Status: Clean 0 of 4 Selected									
	LG	ID	LU	RAID	Size(MB)	Status	0#	RAID 5	NAME
*	0	Slot	Chl	ID	Size(MB)	Speed	LG_DRV	Status	Vendor and Product ID
*	1	2	0	9999	40MB	NONE	NEW DRV		SEAGATE ST31055W
	2		2	1	9999	40MB	NONE		SEAGATE ST31055W
	3		2	2	9999	40MB	NONE		SEAGATE ST31055W
	4		2	4	9999	40MB	NONE		SEAGATE ST31055W
	5			NONE					
	6			NONE					
	7			NONE					

Arrow Keys:Home Cursor Up:Print-Select Esc:Cancel (Ctrl)+F:Refresh Screen

## 8.4.3 Logical Drive Preferences

Maximum Drive Capacity : 9999MB
Assign Spare Drives
Disk Reserved Space: 256 MB
Logical Drive Assignments
Write Policy: Default(Write-Back)
Initialize Mode: On-Line
Stripe Size: Default

**Caution** After all member drives have been selected, press **ESC** to continue with the next option. A list of array options is displayed.

## 8.4.4 Maximum Drive Capacity

Maximum Available Drive Capacity(MB): 9999
Maximum Drive Capacity(MB): 9999

As a rule, a logical drive should be composed of drives with the same capacity. A logical drive can only use the capacity of each drive up to the maximum capacity of the smallest drive.

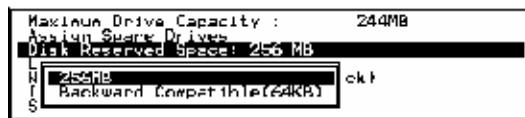
## 8.4.5 Assign Spare Drives

Maximum Drive Capacity : 9999MB						
Assign Spare Drives						
Slot	Chl	ID	Size(MB)	Speed	LG_DRV	Status
1	4	9999	40MB	NONE	NEW DRV	
1	5	9999	40MB	NONE	NEW DRV	
1	6	9999	40MB	NONE	NEW DRV	
1	8	9999	40MB	NONE	NEW DRV	

You can add a spare drive from the list of unused drives. The spare chosen here is a Local Spare Drive and will automatically replace any failed drive in the event of drive failure. The controller will then rebuild data onto the replacement drive.

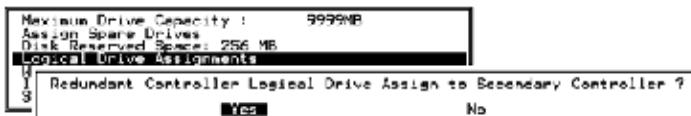
A logical drive composed in a none-redundancy RAID level (NRAID or RAID 0) does not support spare drive rebuild.

## 8.4.6 Disk Reserved Space



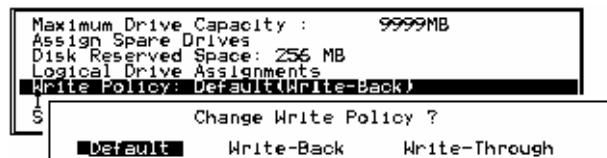
The reserved space is a small section of disk space formatted for storing array configuration and RAIDWatch program. Do not change the size of reserved space unless you want your array to be accessed by controllers using older firmware.

## 8.4.7 Logical Drive Assignments



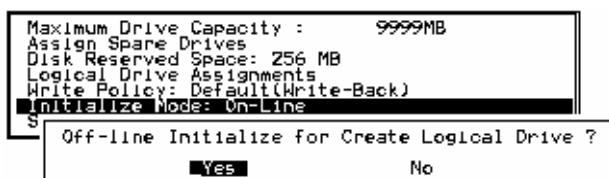
If you use two controllers for the redundant configuration, a logical drive can be assigned to either of the controllers to balance workload. The default is primary controller, press [ESC] if change is not preferred. Logical Drive Assignment can be changed any time later.

## 8.4.8 Write Policy



This sub-menu allows you to set the caching mode for this specific logical drive. **Default** is a neutral value that is coordinated with the controller's current caching mode setting, that you can see bracketed in the write policy status.

## 8.4.9 Initialization Mode



This sub-menu allows you to set if the logical drive is immediately available. If the online (*default*) mode is used, data can be written onto it and you may continue with array configuration, e.g., including the array into a logical volume, before the array's initialization is completed.

## 8.4.10 Stripe Size



This option should only be changed by experienced engineers. Setting to an incongruous value can severely drag the performance. This option should only be changed when you can be sure of the performance gains it might bring you.

The default value is determined by controller Optimization Mode setting and the RAID level used for the array.

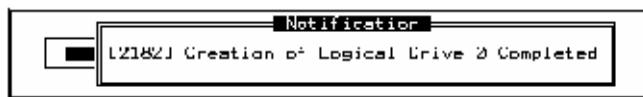
Press [ESC] to continue when all the preferences have been set.



A confirm box will appear on the screen. Verify all information in the box before choosing **Yes** to confirm and proceed.



If online initialization mode is applied, logical drive will first be created and the controller will find appropriate time to initialize the array.



The completion of array creation will be indicated by the message prompt above.



A controller event will then prompt to indicate that the logical drive initialization has begun. Tap [**ESC**] to cancel the **Notification** prompt and a progress indicator will be displayed on the screen as a percentage bar.

The array initialization runs in the background while you can start using the array or continue configuring your RAID system.



When a fault tolerant RAID level (RAID 1, 3, or 5) is selected, the controller will start initializing parity.

Use the [**ESC**] key to view the status of the created logical drive.

Cache Status: Clean Write Cache: Enable														
LE	ID	LV	RAID	Size(MB)	Status	1	2	3	Q	G	MLN	MSB	MFL	NAME
10	64302158	NRAID0	RAID0	19998	GOOD	15	0	3	0	0	0	0	0	
View scsi drives Delete logical drive Partition logical drive Logical drive Name Logical drive Assignments Expand logical drive Add SCSI drives Regenerate parity Copy and replace drive Media scan Write policy														
7														

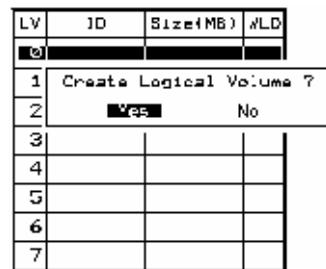
Arrow Keys:Move Cursor | Enter:Select | Esc:Exit | Ctrl+L:Refresh Screen

**Important** Note that only logical drives with RAID level 1, 3 and 5 will take the time to initialize the logical drive. Logical drives with RAID level 0 and NRAID do not have the necessity to perform logical drive initialization; the drive initialization will be finished immediately.

## 8.5 Creating a Logical Volume

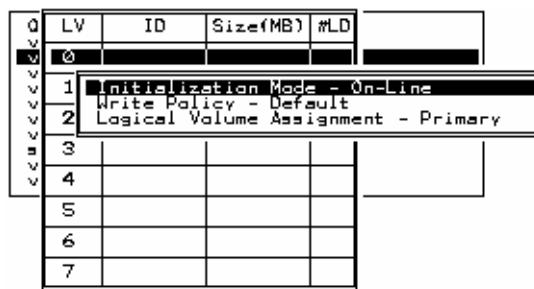


A logical volume consists of one or several logical drives. Choose **View and Edit Logical Volumes** in the Main Menu. The current logical volume configuration and status will be displayed on the screen. Choose a logical volume number (0-7) that has not yet been defined, then press [**ENTER**] to proceed. A prompt **Create Logical Volume?** will appear. Select **Yes** and press [**ENTER**].



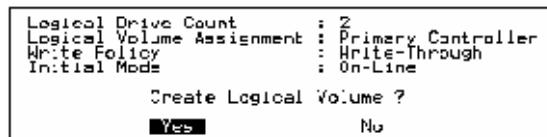
LV	ID	Size(MB)	#LD	
0				
1				
2				
3				
4				
5				
6				
7				

Select one or more logical drive(s) available on the list. The same as creating a logical drive, the logical drive(s) can be tagged for inclusion by positioning the cursor bar on the desired drive and then press [**ENTER**] to select. An asterisk (\*) will appear on the selected drive. Press [**ENTER**] again will deselect a logical drive.



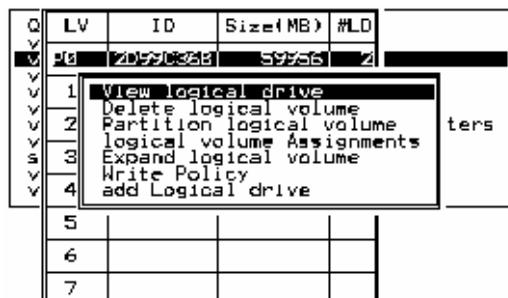
Use arrow keys to select a sub-menu and make change to the initialization mode, write policy, or the managing controller.

Logical volumes can also be assigned to different controllers (primary or secondary). Default is primary.



**Note** If a logical volume is manually assigned to a specific controller, all its members' assignment will also be shifted to that controller.

As all the member logical drives are selected, press [ESC] to continue. The logical volume creation confirm box will appear. Choose **Yes** to create the logical volume.



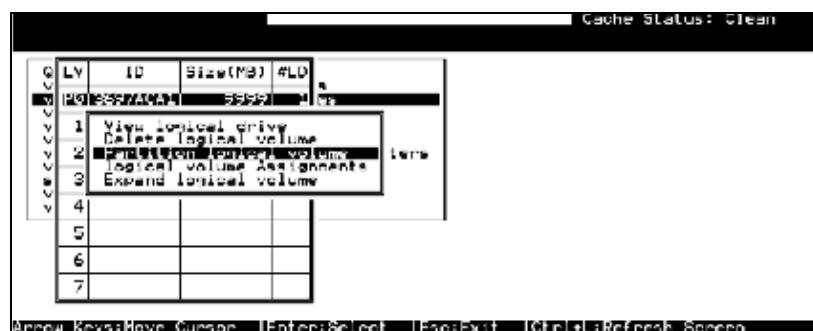
Press [ENTER] and the information of the created logical volume displays.

**LV:** Logical Volume number  
**P0:** Logical Volume 0 belongs to the primary controller  
**S0:** Logical Volume 0 belongs to the secondary controller  
**ID:** Controller random generated Logical Volume's unique ID  
**Size:** The capacity of the Logical Volume  
**#LD:** Number of the member logical drive(s)

## 8.6 Partitioning a Logical Drive/Logical Volume

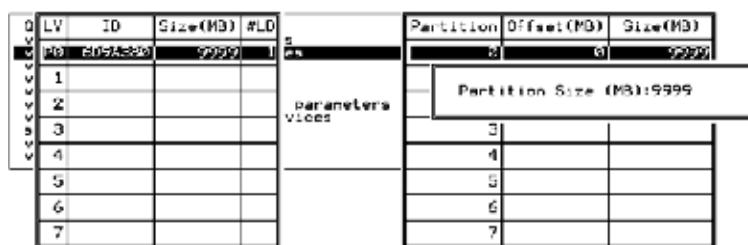
The process of partitioning a logical drive is the same as that of partitioning a logical volume. We take the partitioning of a logical volume for an example in the proceeding discussion.

Please note that partitioning can be very useful when dealing with a very large capacity but partitioning of a logical drive or logical volume is not a must for RAID configuration.



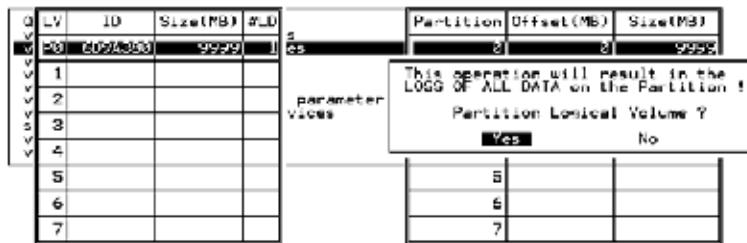
Choose the logical volume you wish to partition, then press [ENTER]. Choose **Partition logical volume** from the sub-menu, then press [ENTER]. Select from the list of undefined partitions and Press [ENTER].

A list of the partitions for this logical volume will appear. If the logical volume has not yet been partitioned, all the logical volume capacity will list as **partition 0**.



Press [ENTER] and type the desired size for the selected partition, and then press [ENTER] to proceed. The remaining size will be automatically allotted to the next partition.

Choose **Yes** to confirm when prompted to the **Partition Logical Volume?** message. Press [ENTER] to confirm. Follow the same procedure to partition the remaining capacity of your logical volume.

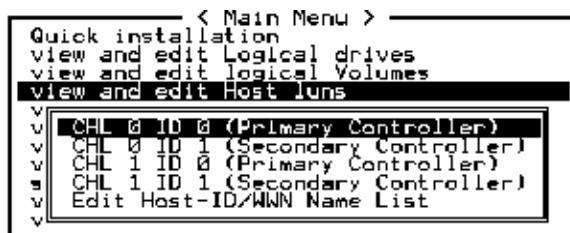


When a partition of logical drive/logical volume is deleted, the capacity of the deleted partition will be added to the last partition.

**Important** As long as a partition has been changed, it is necessary to re-configure all host LUN mappings. All the host LUN mappings will be removed with any change to partition capacity.

## 8.7 Mapping a Logical Volume to Host LUN

Select **View and Edit Host LUNs** in the Main Menu, then press [**ENTER**].



A list of host channel(s)/ID(s) combinations appears on the screen. The diagram above shows two host channels and each is designated with both a primary and a secondary ID. Multiple IDs on host channels are necessary for redundant controller configuration. Details on creating multiple IDs and changing channel mode will be discussed later. Choose a host ID by pressing [**ENTER**].

Several details are noticeable here:

- 1 A logical group of drives (logical drive/logical volume) previously assigned to the primary controller can not be mapped to a secondary ID combination. Neither can that assigned to the secondary controller mapped to a primary ID.
- 2 On drive channels, ID 7 is reserved for the controller itself. If there are two controllers, controllers might occupy ID 6 and ID 7.



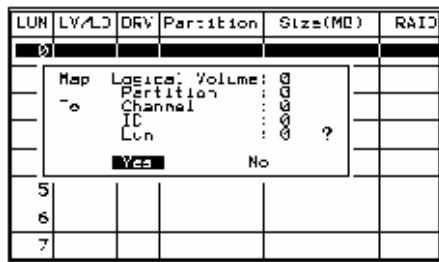
Choose the **channel-ID** combination you wish to map, then press [**ENTER**] to proceed. Choose mapping a **Logical Drive**, a **Logical Volume**, or a **Physical SCSI Drive** on the drop box.

LUN	LV/LD	DRV	Partition	Size(MB)	RAID
1					1
2	LV	ID	Size(MB)	#LD	
3	LD	Logical	2499	1	2
4					
5					
6	Partition	Offset(MB)	Size(MB)		
7	1	2499	2499		3
	2	4998	2499		
	3	7497	2499		

- 1 A list of LUNs and their respective mappings will be displayed on the screen. To map a host LUN to a logical volume's partition, select an available LUN (one not mapped yet) by moving the cursor bar to the LUN, then press [**ENTER**].
- 2 A list of available logical volumes will be displayed on the screen. Move the cursor bar to the desired logical unit, then press [**ENTER**].
- 3 A list of available partitions within the logical volume will be displayed. Move cursor bar to the desired partition, then press [**ENTER**]. If you have not partitioned the logical volume, it will be displayed as one logical partition.
- 4 When prompted to map **Host LUN**, press [**ENTER**] to proceed. For access control over Fibre network, find in [Chapter 9 on page 125](#) details about **Create Host Filter Entry**.



- 5 When prompted to **Map Logical Volume?**, select **Yes** to continue.



A prompt will display the mapping you wish to create. Choose **Yes** to confirm the LUN mapping you selected.

The details in the confirm box reads: *partition 0 of logical volume 0 will map to LUN 0 of ID 0 on host channel 0.*

Continue to map other partitions to host LUNs.

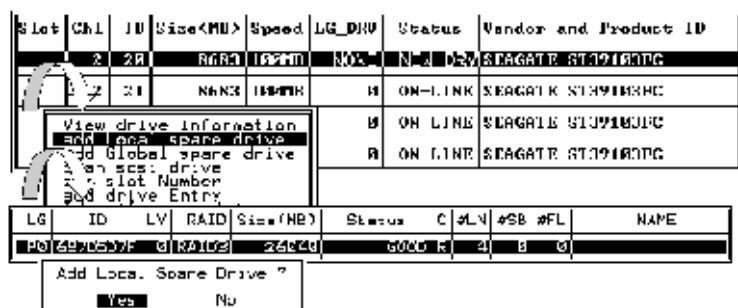
With any of the Host ID/LUN successfully associated with a logical capacity, the **No Host LUN** message in the LCD screen will change to **Ready**.

If your controller has not been configured with a host channel and assigned with a channel ID, please move on to section [8.12 on page 112](#).

## 8.8 Assigning Spare Drive, Rebuild Settings

### 8.8.1 Adding Local Spare Drive

A spare drive is a standby drive automatically initiated by controller firmware to replace and rebuild a failed drive. A spare drive must have an equal or larger capacity than member drives. A Local Spare Drive should have a capacity equal or larger than the members of the logical drive it is assigned to. A global spare should have a capacity equal or larger than all physical drives used in an array.



Choose **View and Edit Drives** on the Main Menu, press [ENTER]. Move the cursor bar to a drive that is not assigned to a logical drive or as a spare drive (usually indicated as a **New Drive** or **None**), and then press [ENTER].

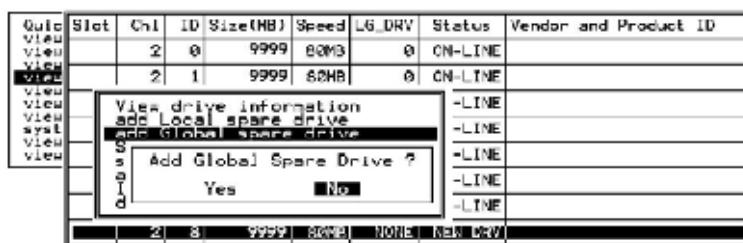
Choose **Add Local Spare Drive** and press [ENTER]. A list of available logical drives will be displayed on the screen.

Move the cursor bar to a logical drive, then press [ENTER]. The unassigned drive will be assigned to this logical drive as the Local Spare Drive.

When prompted to **Add Local Spare Drive?**, choose **Yes** to confirm. The status of this drive will change to **Standby**.

### 8.8.2 Adding a Global Spare Drive

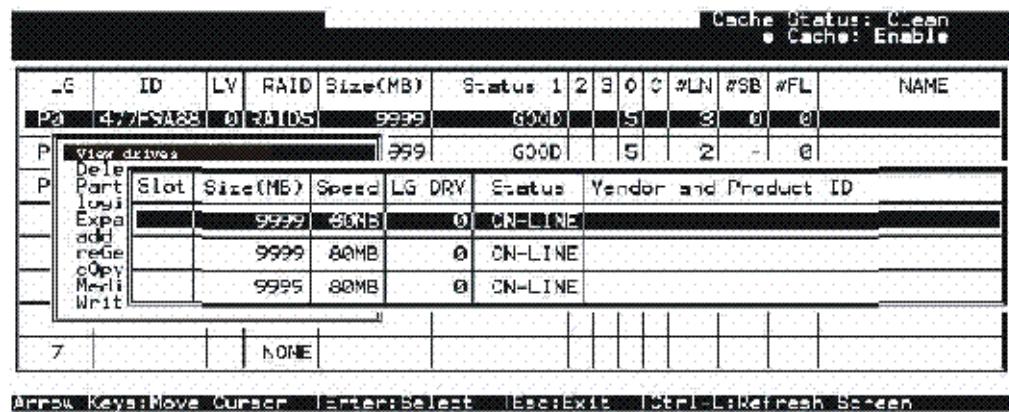
A global spare replaces and is used to rebuild any failed drive in any of the logical drives of a RAID array.



Move cursor bar to the drive that is not assigned to a logical drive or as a spare drive (usually indicated as a **New Drive**), and then press [ENTER]. Choose **Add Global Spare Drive**. When prompted to **Add Global Spare Drive?**, choose **Yes**.

## 8.9 Viewing and Editing Logical Drive and Drive Members

Choose **View and Edit Logical Drives** in the Main Menu. The current logical drive configuration and status will be displayed on the screen. Refer to the previous chapter for more details on the legends used in Logical Drive's Status. To view the drive members of the logical drive, choose the logical drive by pressing [ENTER].



Choose **View Drives**. The member drive information will be displayed on the screen.

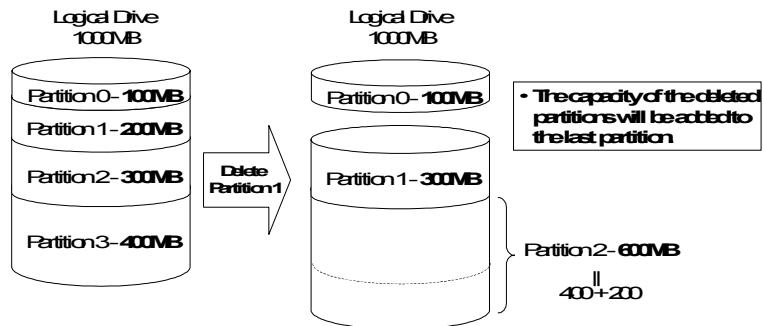
## **8.9.1 Deleting Logical Drive**

Choose the logical drive you wish to delete, then press [ENTER]. Choose **Delete logical drive**. Choose **Yes** when prompted to confirm.

### **8.9.2 Deleting a Partition of a Logical Drive**

C	LG	ID	LV	RAID	Size(MB)	Partition	Offset(MB)	Size(MB)	NAME
P0	E1G1W7-2IN	NA	RAID0	39		0	0	3999	
P1	76CD4DF6	NA	RAID0	119		1	3999	6669	
2			NONE						
3			NONE						
4			NONE			4	15999	3999	
5			NONE			5			
6			NONE			6			
7			NONE			7			

Choose the logical drive which has a partition you wish to delete, then press [ENTER]. Choose **Partition logical drive**. Partitions of the logical drive will be displayed in tabulated form. Move the cursor bar to the partition you wish to delete, then press [ENTER]. Enter “0” on the partition size to delete this partition.



**Figure 8–1** Drive Space Allocated to the Last Partition

As illustrated above, the capacity of the deleted partition will be added into the last partition.

**Warning** As long as a partition has been changed, it is necessary to reconfigure all host LUN mappings. All the host LUN mappings will be removed with any partition change.

### **8.9.3 Assigning Logical Drive Name**

Naming a logical drive can help to identify different logical drives. In the event such as when one or more logical drives have been deleted, the drive indexing is changed after system reboot. The second logical drive might become the first on the list after system reboot.

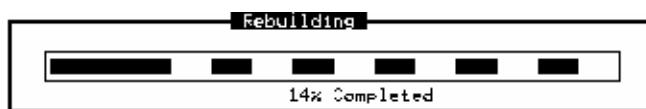
Choose the logical drive you wish to assign a name, then press [ENTER]. Choose **logical drive name**, then press [ENTER] again. The current logical drive name will be displayed on the screen. You may now enter the new logical drive name in this field. Enter the logical drive name, then press [ENTER] to save the new name.

#### **8.9.4 Rebuilding Logical Drive**

If no spare drive is ready for logical drive rebuild, a failed drive should be replaced immediately by a new drive and the rebuild process should be initiated manually.

LG	ID	LV	RAID	Size(GB)	Status	O	#LN	#SB	#FL	NAME
0	PB 4149A720	NA RAID5	RAIDS	19996	GOOD	R	3	0	0	
v	P	View scsi drives								
v	P	Delete logical drive								
v	P	Partition logical drive								
v	P	Logical drive Name								
*	P	Rebuild Logical Drive								
v	P	Rebuild Logical Drive ?								
S		Yes		No						
6			NONE							
7			NONE							

Choose the logical drive that has a failed member drive, then press [ENTER]. Choose **Rebuild logical drive**, then press [ENTER]. When prompted to **Rebuild Logical Drive?**, select Yes.



The rebuilding progress will be displayed on the screen.

When rebuilding has already started or the logical drive has been automatically rebuilt by a Local Spare Drive or Global Spare Drive, choose **Rebuild progress** to view the rebuilding progress.

**Important** The **Rebuild function will appear only when a logical drive (with RAID level 1, 3 or 5) has a failed drive member. NRAID and RAID 0 configurations provide no data redundancy.**

The different levels of rebuild priority will reserve different levels of controller resources to perform logical Drive Rebuild. The default setting of the rebuild priority is *LOW*, the Host I/O access will have lower impact during the logical drive rebuilding process, but the time needed to rebuild is longer than the other settings. Changing the rebuild priority to a higher level will result in a shorter rebuilding time, but will certainly increase the Host I/O access response time. The default setting *LOW* is recommended.

## 8.9.5 Regenerating Logical Drive Parity

(Applies to RAID 1, 3 and 5)

If no verifying method is applied to data writes, this function can be performed every so often by user to ensure bad sectors will not cause data loss in the event of drive failure. In a RAID unit, data is striped across multiple member drives and this function can regenerate parity and prevent bad blocks on drives.

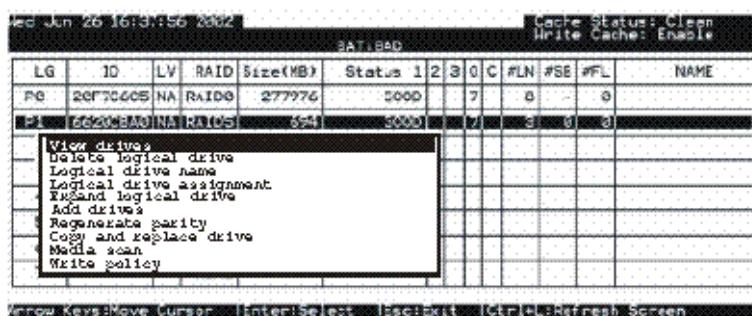
LE	ID	LV	RAID	Size(GB)	Status	O	#LN	#SB	#FL	NAME
PB	4149A720	NA RAID5	RAIDS	19996	GOOD	R	3	0	0	
v	P	View scsi drives								
v	P	Delete logical drive								
v	P	Regenerate Logical Drive Parity ?								
S	P	Yes		No						
v	P	Regenerate parity								
v	P	Copy and replace drive								
S		NONE								

Choose the logical drive that you want to regenerate the parity for, and then press [ENTER]. Choose **Regenerate Parity**, then press [ENTER]. When prompted to **Regenerate Parity?**, select Yes.

**Important** If a regenerating process is stopped by a drive failure, the process cannot restart until logical drive rebuild has been completed.

## 8.9.6 Media Scan

Media Scan is used to examine drives and is able to detect the presence of bad blocks. If any data blocks have not been properly committed and are found during the scanning process, data from those blocks are automatically recalculated, retrieved and stored onto undamaged sectors. If bad blocks are encountered on yet another drive during the rebuild process, the block LBA (Logical Block Address) of those bad blocks will be shown. If rebuild is carried out under this situation, rebuild will continue with the unaffected sectors, salvaging the majority of the stored data.

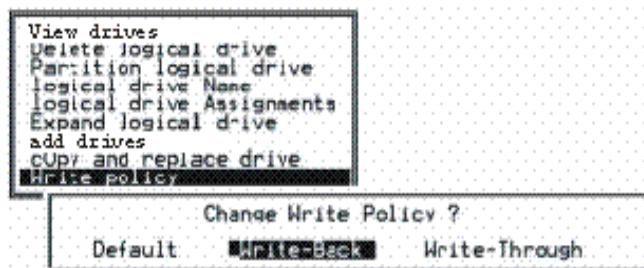


There are two options with performing the media scan:

- **Media Scan Priority:** determines how much system resources will be used for drive scanning and recalculating process.
- **Iteration Count:** determines how many times the scan is performed. If set to the continuous, the scan will run in the background continuously until it is stopped by user.



## 8.9.7 Write Policy

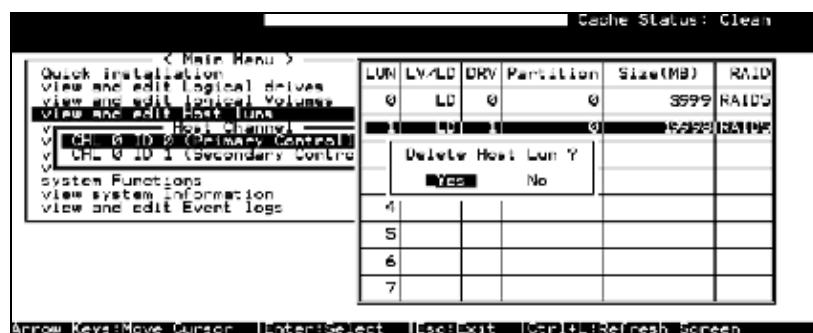


The Write-Back cache setting is configurable on the per array basis. Setting to the default value means the array setting is coordinated with the controller's general setting. The controller's general setting option can be found in **View and Edit Configuration Parameters**"-> **Caching Parameters**"-> **Write-Back Cache**. Note that cached writes are lost if power failure should occur.

## 8.10 Viewing and Editing Host LUNs

### 8.10.1 Viewing or Deleting LUN Mappings

Choose the host channel and SCSI ID of the LUN mapping you wish to view or delete.

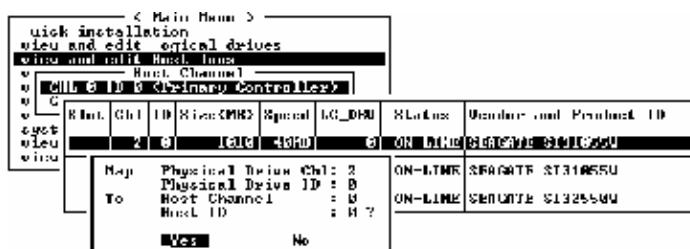


A list of the current LUN mapping will be displayed on the screen. Move the cursor bar to the LUN mapping you wish to delete, then press [ENTER]. Select **Yes** to delete the LUN mapping, or **No** to cancel.

### 8.10.2 Edit Host-ID/WWN Name List

This is a specific item used for systems communicating over Fibre host loops. Please refer to [Chapter 9](#), "Fibre Operation", on page 125f or more details.

### 8.10.3 Pass-through Commands



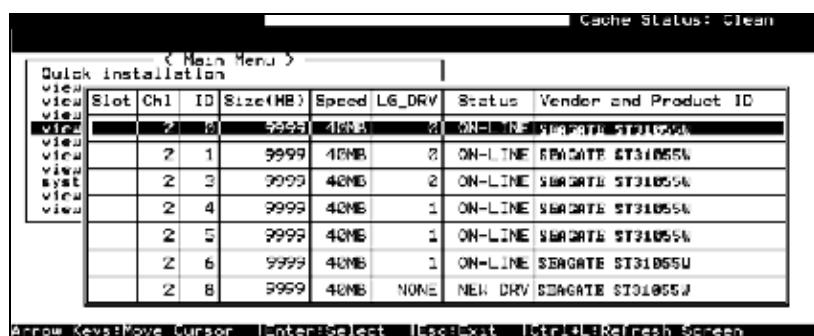
If you have primary and secondary controllers, move the cursor to the controller for the device that you wish to map; then press [ENTER]. You will be prompted to map an ID to a physical drive.

**Caution** *Pass-through Commands are only intended to perform maintenance functions for a drive or device on the drive side. Do not perform any destructive commands to a disk drive (i.e., any commands that write data*

*(to a drive media). This will result in inconsistent parity among drives included in a logical configuration of drives. If a disk drive is a spare drive or a member of a logical drive, such a destructive command may cause a data inconsistency.*

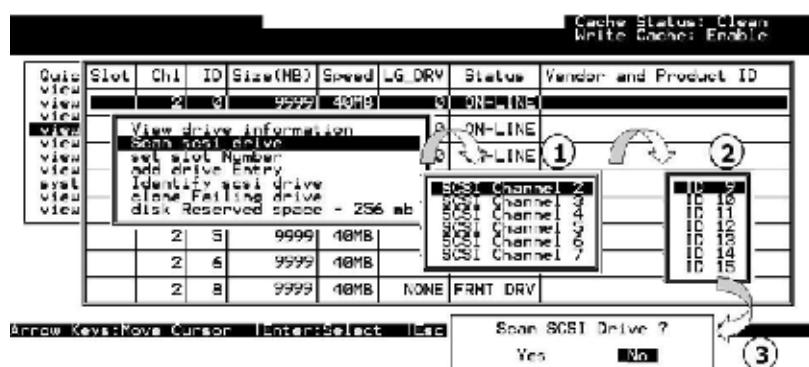
*When a drive/device is mapped to a host ID so that Pass-through Commands can be used, the data on that drive/device will not be protected by the controller. Users who employ Pass-through Commands to perform any write commands to drive media do so at their own risk.*

## 8.11 Viewing and Editing Drives



Choose **View and Edit Drives** in the Main Menu. All drives attached to the drive channels will be displayed on the screen.

### 8.11.1 Scanning New Drive



If there is a drive connected after the array is started, choose a drive and press [ENTER]. Choose **Scan drive**, then press [ENTER]. The menu may vary according to the drive status. Choose the drive channel and ID of the drive you wish to scan, then press [ENTER].

#### Slot Number

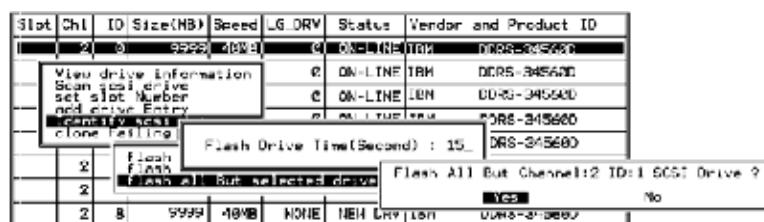
#### Drive Entry

These two functions are reserved for Fault Bus configuration.

## 8.11.2 Identifying Drive



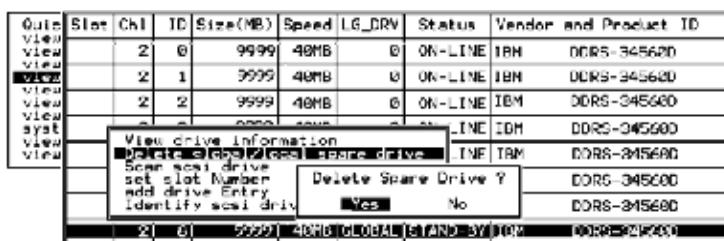
Move the cursor bar to the drive you wish to identify, then press [ENTER]. Choose **Identify drive**, then choose **flash all drives** to flash the read/write LEDs of all the drives in the drive channel. Choose **Yes**



You may also choose **flash selected drive** or **flash all But Selected drives** to flash the read/write LED of the selected drive only, or all the drives except the selected drive. Choose **Yes** and choose an extent of time from 1 to 999 seconds.

### **8.11.3 Deleting Spare Drive (Global/Local Spare Drive)**

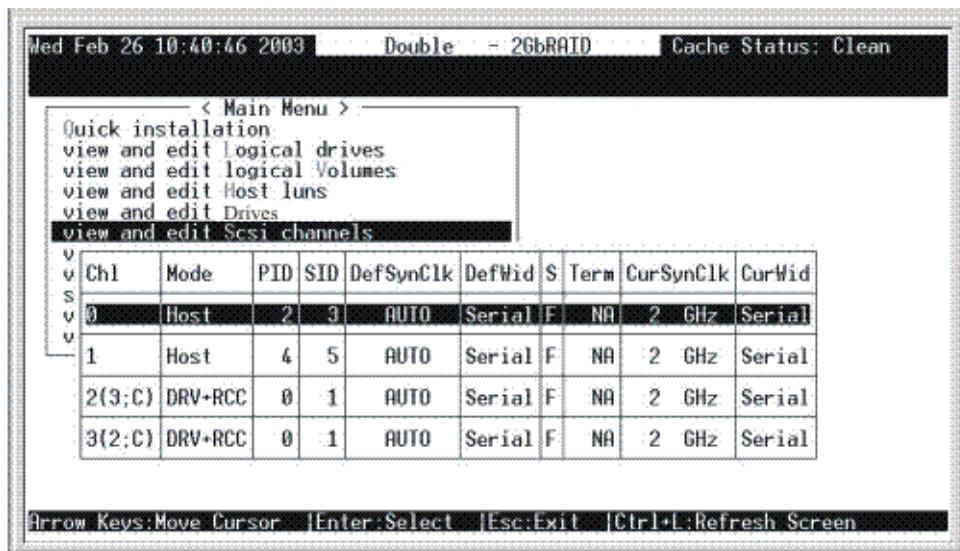
Move the cursor to a Local Spare Drive or Global Spare Drive, then press [ENTER]. Choose **Delete Global/Local Spare Drive**, then press [ENTER] again. Choose **Yes** to confirm.



**Note** The spare drive you deleted or any drive you replaced from a logical unit will be indicated as a **used drive**.

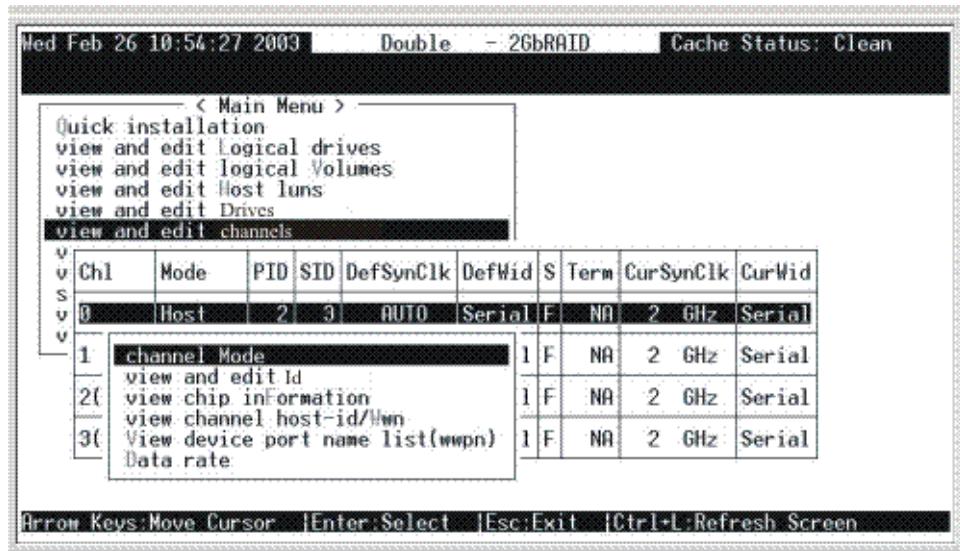
## 8.12 Viewing and Editing Channels

Except for those shipped in dual-redundant chassis, the factory default uses channel 0 as the host channel and also the communications path between controllers. If redundant controller configuration is preferred, you may need to assign other channels as host. Flexibility is added such that all channels can be configured as host or drive.



Choose **View and Edit Channels** in the Main Menu. Channel status will be displayed on the screen.

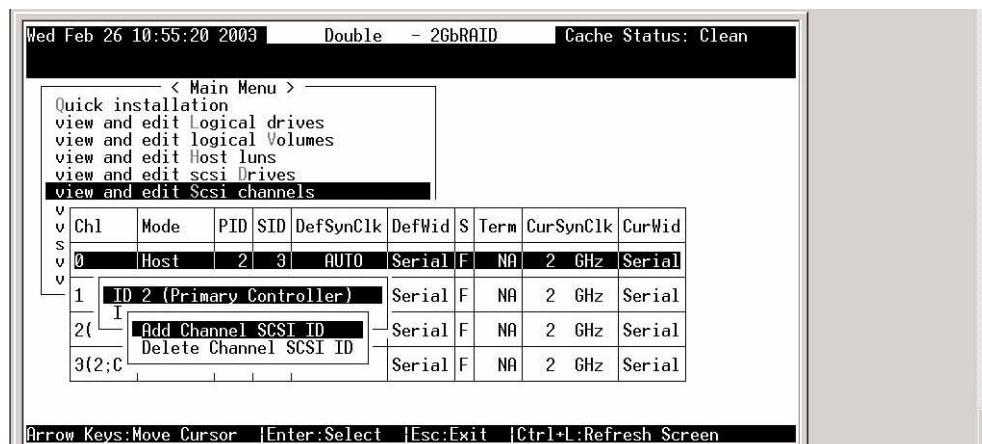
### 8.12.1 Channel Mode



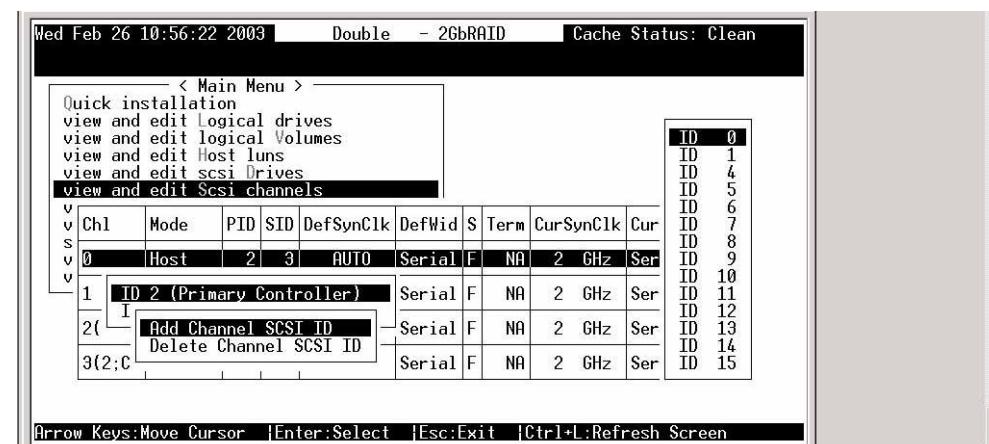
**Important** Rorke Data hardware implementation is 2 hosts and 2 drives loop. This must not be changed

## 8.12.2 Viewing and Editing IDs/Host Channel

choose a host channel then press [ENTER]. Choose **View and Edit ID**. A list of existing ID(s) will be displayed on the screen.



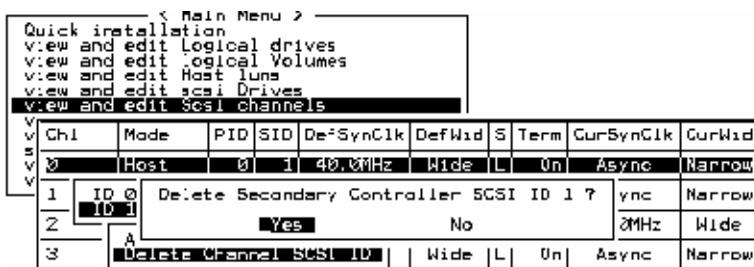
## 8.12.3 Adding an ID (Primary/Secondary Controller ID)



In single controller mode, you should set the Secondary Controller's ID to **NA**. In dual-controller mode, you need to set an ID for the Secondary controller on each of your drive channels.

Press [**ENTER**] on one of the existing IDs. Choose **Add Channel ID**, then choose to assign an ID for either the **Primary Controller** or **Secondary Controller**. A list of IDs will appear. Choose an ID. **DO NOT** choose an ID used by another device on the same channel. The defaults are PID=0 and SID=1 (channel). In redundant mode, logical drives mapped to a primary ID will be managed by the primary controller and vice versa.

## 8.12.4 Deleting an ID



Choose the SCSI ID you wish to delete. Choose **Delete Channel SCSI ID**. The dialog box **Delete Primary/Secondary Controller SCSI ID?** will appear. Select **Yes** then press [**ENTER**] to confirm.

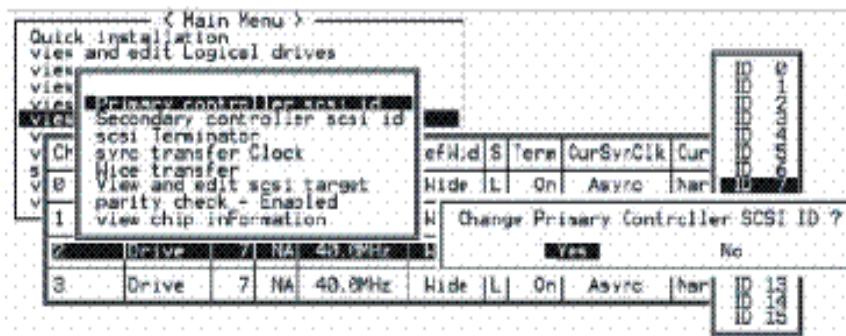
**Important** Every time you change a channel's SCSI ID, you must reset the controller for the changes to take effect.

If only one controller exists, you must set the Secondary Controller's SCSI ID to "NA." If a secondary controller exists, you need to set a secondary SCSI ID on host and drive channels.

Multiple SCSI IDs can be applied to the Host and Drive channels.

At least a controller's SCSI ID has to present on the SCSI bus.

## 8.12.5 Setting a Primary Controller SCSI ID/Drive Channel



Choose a drive channel, then press [**ENTER**]. Choose **Primary Controller SCSI ID**. A list of SCSI IDs will be displayed on the screen. Now choose a SCSI ID. The dialog box **Change Primary Controller SCSI ID?** will appear. Select **Yes**, then press [**ENTER**].

For more details on ID settings in redundant mode, please refer to [Chapter 11 on page 177](#).

Choose a Drive channel, then press [**ENTER**]. Choose **Secondary Controller SCSI ID**. A list of SCSI IDs will be displayed on the screen. Assign a SCSI ID to the drive channel of the secondary controller. Choose a SCSI ID. The dialog box **Change Secondary Controller SCSI ID?** will appear. Select **Yes**, then press [**ENTER**].

**Important** Every time you change a channel's SCSI ID, you must reset the controller for the changes to take effect.

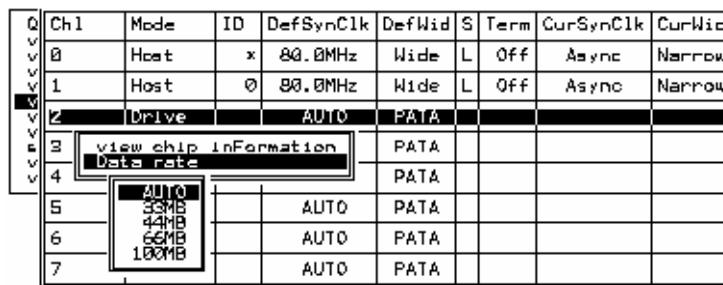
The default SCSI ID of the Host channel is 0, the Drive channel is 7. If there is only one controller, it is presumed by firmware as the primary controller.

If only one controller exists, you must set the Secondary Controller's SCSI ID to "NA." If a secondary controller exists, you need to set a SCSI ID.

Multiple SCSI ID can be applied to the Host channel while the Drive channel has one or two SCSI IDs (in redundant mode).

At least a controller's SCSI ID has to be present on the SCSI bus.

## 8.12.6 Data Rate



A screenshot of a drive channel configuration interface. The main table shows channels 0, 1, and 2 as Hosts, and channels 3 through 7 as Drives. Channel 2 is currently selected. A small pop-up window titled "Data rate" is open over channel 2, listing options: AUTO, 33MB, 44MB, 66MB, and 100MB. The "AUTO" option is highlighted with a black border.

Ch1	Mode	ID	DefSynClk	DefWid	S	Term	CurSynClk	CurWid
0	Host	x	80.0MHz	Wide	L	Off	Async	Narrow
1	Host	0	80.0MHz	Wide	L	Off	Async	Narrow
2	Drive	AUTO	PATA					
3	view chip information				PATA			
4	Data rate				PATA			
5	AUTO	33MB						
6		44MB						
7		66MB						
		100MB						

This option is available in the drive channel configuration menus of Fibre, ATA, or SATA-based subsystems. Default is **AUTO** and should work fine with most drives. Changing this setting is not recommended unless some particular bus signal issues occur.

All SATA/ATA-based system connects only one drive per SATA/ATA channel. This helps to avoid single drive failure from affecting other drives. The maximum mechanical performance of today's drives can reach around 30MB/sec (sustained read). This is still far below the bandwidth of a drive channel bus. Setting the SATA/ATA bus speed to a lower value can get around some problems, but will not become a bottleneck to system performance.

Mind that the SATA/ATA speed is the maximum transfer rate of SATA/ATA bus in that mode. It does not mean the drive can actually carry out that amount of sustained read/write performance. For the performance of each drive model, please refer to the documentation provided by drive manufacturer.

# 8.13 System Functions



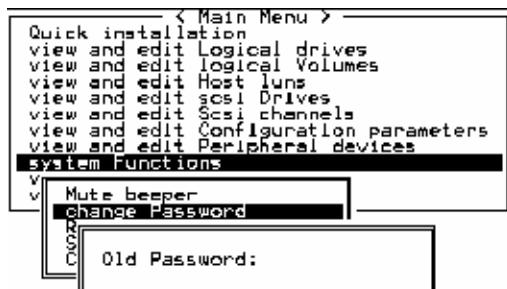
Choose **System Functions** in the Main Menu, then press [**ENTER**]. The System Functions menu will appear. Move the cursor bar to an item, then press [**ENTER**].

## 8.13.1 Mute Beeper



When the controller's beeper has been activated, choose **Mute beeper**, then press [**ENTER**]. Choose **Yes** and press [**ENTER**] in the next dialog box to turn the beeper off temporarily for the current event. The beeper will still be activated on the next event.

## 8.13.2 Change Password



Use the controller's password to protect the array from unauthorized entry. Once the controller's password has been set, regardless of whether the RS-232 terminal interface or RAIDWatch Manager is used, the user can only configure and monitor the RAID controller by providing the correct password.

**Important** The controller is able to verify the password when entering the Main Menu from the initial screen or making configuration change. If the controller is going to be left unattended, the "Password Validation Timeout" can be set to "Always Check." Setting validation timeout to "always check" will protect the controller configuration from any unauthorized change.

The controller password and controller name share a 16-character space. The maximum characters for the controller password is 15. When the controller name occupies 15 characters, there is only one character left for the controller password, and vice versa.

### 8.13.3 Changing the Password

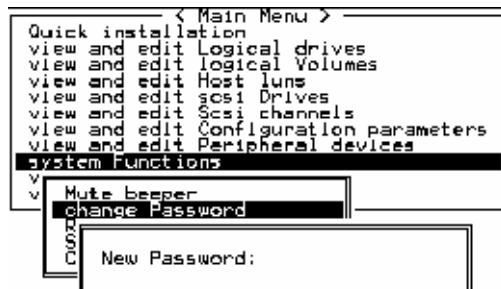
To set or change the controller password, move the cursor bar to **Change Password**, then press **[ENTER]**.

If a password has previously been set, the controller will ask for the old password first. If the password has not yet been set, the controller will directly ask for the new password. The password can not be replaced unless a correct old password is provided.

Key-in the old password, then press **[ENTER]**. If the password is incorrect, it will not allow you to change the password. Instead, it will display the message **Password incorrect** then go back to the previous menu.

If the password is correct, or there is no preset password, it will ask for the new password.

### 8.13.4 Setting a New Password



Enter the desired password in the column, then press **[ENTER]**. The next dialog box will display "Re-Enter Password". Enter the password again to confirm and press **[ENTER]**.

The new password will now become the controller's password. Providing the correct password is necessary when entering the Main Menu from the Initial screen.

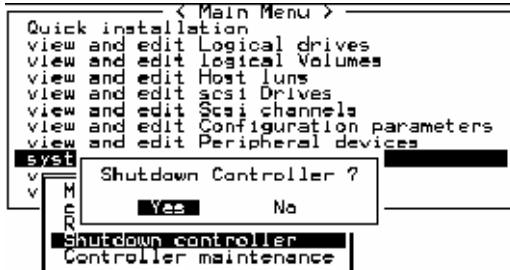
## 8.13.5 Reset Controller



To reset the controller without powering off the system, move the cursor bar to **Reset Controller**, then press [**ENTER**]. Choose **Yes** in the dialog box that follows, then press [**ENTER**]. The controller will now reset as well as power-off or re-power-on.

## 8.13.6 Shutdown Controller

Before powering off the controller, unwritten data may still reside in cache memory. Use the **Shutdown Controller** function to flush the cache content. Move the cursor bar to **Shutdown Controller**, then press [**ENTER**]. Choose **Yes** in the dialog box that follows, then press [**ENTER**]. The controller will now flush the cache memory.



For "Controller Maintenance" functions, such as "Download Firmware," please refer to [Appendix A](#) on page 229.

# 8.14 Controller Parameters

## 8.14.1 Controller Name



Choose **View and Edit Configuration Parameters**, **Controller Parameters**, then press **[ENTER]**. The current controller name will be displayed. Press **[ENTER]**. Enter the new controller name in the dialog box that follows, then press **[ENTER]**.

## 8.14.2 Saving NVRAM to Disks

You can choose to backup your controller-dependent configuration information to disks. We recommend using this function to save configuration information whenever a configuration change is made. The information will be written to a logical configuration of drives.

First, a RAID configuration of drives must exist for the controller to write NVRAM content onto it.

From the Main Menu, choose **system functions**. Use arrow keys to scroll down and select **controller maintenance, save NVRAM to disks**, then press **[ENTER]**.



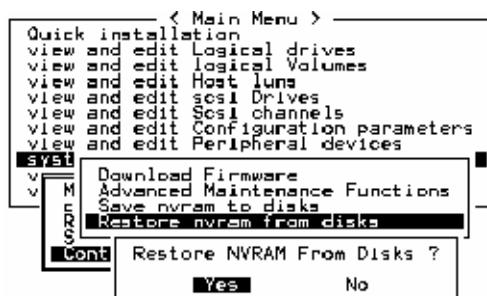
Choose **Yes** to confirm.

A prompt will inform you that NVRAM information has been successfully saved.

### 8.14.3 Restore NVRAM from Disks

When you want to restore your NVRAM information from what you previously saved onto disk, use this function to restore the configuration information.

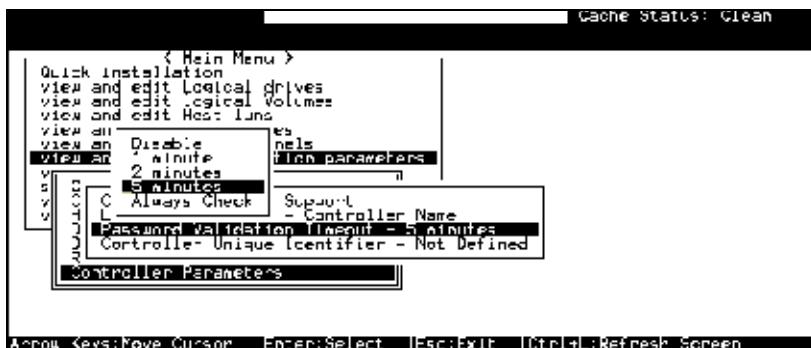
From the Main Menu, choose **system functions**. Use arrow keys to scroll down and select **controller maintenance, restore NVRAM from disks**, and then press [ENTER]



Press **Yes** to confirm.

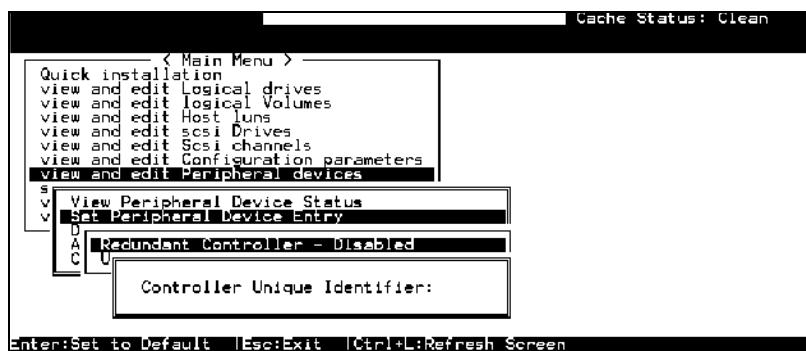
A prompt will notify you that the controller NVRAM data has been successfully restored from disks.

#### 8.14.3.1 Password Validation Timeout



Choose **View and Edit Configuration Parameters, Controller Parameters**, then press [ENTER]. Select **Password Validation Timeout**, and press [ENTER]. Choose to enable a validation timeout from one minute to always check. The always check timeout will disable any configuration change without entering the correct password.

## 8.14.4 Controller Unique Identifier



Enter any hex number between **0** and **FFFFF** for the unique identifier. The value you enter MUST be different for each controller.

The **Controller Unique Identifier** is required for configuring every RAID controller. The controller automatically notifies users to enter a unique identifier when the first logical drive is created in a dual-controller system.

Enter a unique ID for any RAID controller no matter it is configured in a single or dual-controller configuration. The unique ID is necessary for the following:

- 1** A controller-specific identifier that helps controllers to identify its counterpart in a dual-active configuration.
- 2** The unique ID is generated into a Fibre channel WWN node name for controllers or RAID systems using Fibre channel host ports. The node name is used to prevent host computers from mis-addressing the storage system during the controller Failover/Failback processes.
- 3** MAC addresses for the controller's Ethernet port that should be taken over by a surviving controller in the event of controller failure.

In redundant mode, configuration data is synchronized between controllers. Host ports on both controllers appear with the same node name but each with a different port name (WWPN).

When a controller fails and a replacement is combined as the Secondary controller, the node name will be passed down to the Secondary controller. The host will not acknowledge any differences so that controller failback is totally transparent.

The unique identifier setting can be accessed from **View and Edit Configuration Parameters (Controller Parameters (Controller Unique ID))**.

## 8.14.5 Set Controller Date and Time

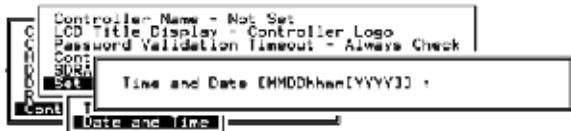
This sub-menu only appears when the controller is equipped with a real-time clock.

### Time Zone



The controller uses GMT (Greenwich Mean Time), a 24-hours clock. To change the clock to your local time zone, enter the hours later than the Greenwich mean time following a plus (+) sign. For example, enter **+9** for Japanese time zone.

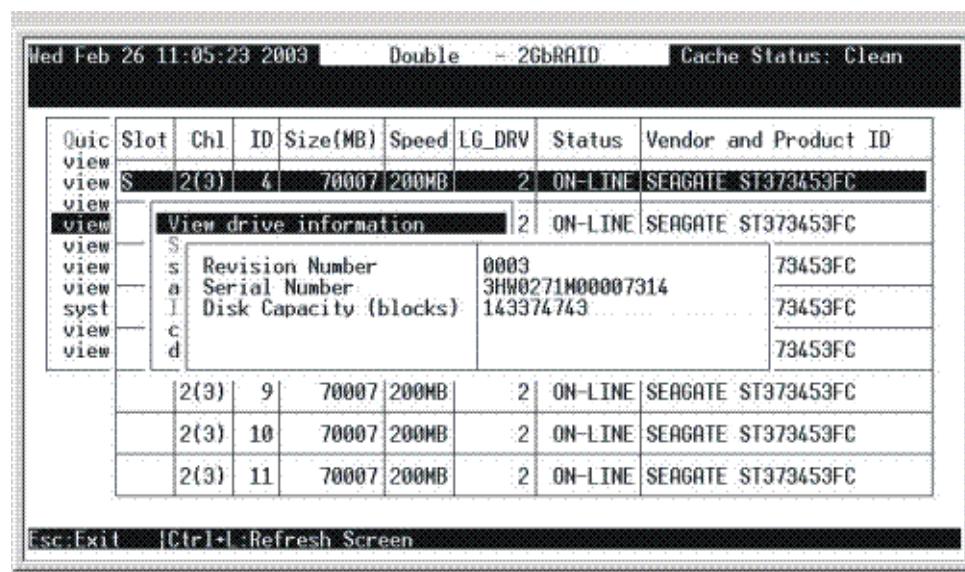
### Date and Time



Enter time and date in its numeric representatives in the following order: month, day, hour, minute, and the year.

## 8.15 Drive Information

### **8.15.1 View Drive Information**



From the **View and Edit Drives** menu, select the drive that the utility is to be performed on, then press **[ENTER]**. Select **View drive information**, then press **[ENTER]**.



# Chapter 9

# Fibre Operation

## 9.1 Overview

Fibre channel is a device (in term of RAID, a data storage device) protocol capable of high data transfer rates. Fibre channel simplifies data bus sharing and supports not only greater speed, but also more devices on the same bus than SCSI. Fibre channel can be used over both copper wire and optical cable. It can be used for concurrent communications among multiple workstations, servers, storage systems, and other peripherals using SCSI and IP protocols. When a Fibre hub or fabric switch is employed, flexible topologies can be achieved with the interconnections of multiple devices.

This chapter describes the Fibre-specific functions available since the firmware release 3.12 and above. Optional functions have been implemented for Fibre channel operation and access control under a -host environment such as the Storage Area Network.

### Summary:

- 9.2, "Major Concerns" - Things you should know before setup
- 9.3, "Supported Features" - List of functionality supported by the Fibre channel chips
- 9.4, "LUN Filtering: RAID-Based Mapping" - Learning how to setup the LUN Filtering function, a useful tool for access control

## 9.2 Major Concerns

All Fibre-to-Fibre controllers support controller hot-plug capability. The topology that supports the transparent Failover/Failback functionality requires proper hardware and software configuration. The configuration requirements can be summarized as follows:

Redundant Cache Coherency Channels (RCC):	
• RCC	FC channels can be manually assigned as the dedicated communications loops. Two are recommended for path redundancy and sufficient bandwidth.
• Drive + RCC	Communications traffic distributed over drive loops

<b>Connection between Controllers:</b>	
	Cabling between the controllers, hardware link through a common backplane, Fibre hub or switch (for SAN applications and for those models that do not have the by-pass chips on board.)
<b>Channel Mode Assignment</b>	
	According to the topological plan, your I/O channels can be designated as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Host</li> <li>• RCC paths</li> <li>• Drive</li> <li>• Drive + RCC</li> </ul>
<b>Host Channel Connection Type:</b>	
	This depends on the way your RAID system is connected to the host computer(s). The host connection type can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FC-AL</li> <li>• Fabric (point-to-point).</li> </ul>
<b>Controller Unique ID:</b>	
	This ID will be used to generate Fibre ports' node names, and is necessary for addressing the controller during the controller failover/failback operation.
<b>Dual-Loop:</b>	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Drive-side</b> dual loop provides data path redundancy. Firmware is capable of executing a load-sharing algorithm to optimize dual-loop performance.</li> <li>• <b>Host-side</b> dual loop is passively supported and requires failover software on the host computer.</li> </ul>

## 9.3 Supported Features

### 9.3.1 Hardware Features

#### Fibre Chip

- **1Gbit Fibre Channel:**

Fibre loops (1Gbit FC-AL) comply with:

- (FC-PH) X2.230:1994
- (SCSI-FCP) X3.269:1996
- (FC-AL-2) Project 1133-D rev.6.5
- (SCSI-2) X3.131-1994
- Supporting sustained 1 Gigabit/sec (100MB/sec) transfer rates
- Each Fibre loop can be independently configured for the connection to host or drive

- **2Gbit Fibre Channel:**

Fibre loops (2Gbit FC-AL) comply with:

- Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop (FC-AL-2) working draft, rev 6.4
- Fibre Channel Fabric Loop Attach (FC-FLA) working draft, rev 2.7

- Fibre Channel Private Loop SCSI Direct Attach (FC-PLDA) working draft, rev 2.1
- Fibre Channel Tape (FC-TAPE) profile, T11/98-124vD, rev 1.13
- Support Fibre Channel protocol-SCSI (FCP-SCSI)
- Support Fibre Channel Internet protocol (IP)

### 9.3.2 Multiple Target IDs

Each channel configured as a host loop supports Multiple Target IDs in the range from 0 to 125.

Supported ways to address a Fibre port include Hard assigned and Soft assigned. The controller supports automatic loop ID assignment on drive channels. A hard loop address ID can be assigned to disk drives by switching jumpers on the enclosure backplane. If the AL\_PA configuration on the backplane has been set to a neutral status, physical IDs will be automatically assigned to drives.

### 9.3.3 Drive IDs

Supported ways to address a Fibre port include Hard assigned and Soft assigned. The controller supports automatic loop ID assignment on drive channels. A hard loop address ID can be assigned to disk drives by enclosure jumper setting. If the AL\_PA configuration on drive enclosure has been set to a neutral status, physical IDs will be automatically assigned to drives.

### 9.3.4 In-band Fibre Support

**SCSI Pass-through** commands are supported over host and drive loops just as they are over SCSI channels. The **in-band Fibre** protocol for packaging **External Interface** protocol commands/responses is supported over host Fibre loops. (such as the RAIDWatch Manager). Drive-side S.E.S. device identification, monitoring and control are likewise supported over drive loops.

### 9.3.5 Redundant Controller Configuration

Fibre channel is generally applied to storage configurations with topologies that aim to avoid loss of data by component failure. To prevent loss of data by component failure, all data path connections between host and drive should be configured into redundant pairs.

### 9.3.6 Active to Active Redundant Controller

#### 9.3.6.1 1Gbit Models

- **LUN Mapping**

Each host port should present either the primary or the secondary controller's LUNs. LUNs can be assigned to either controller by assigning host IDs either to the primary or the secondary controller. A host loop that has a primary ID is a primary loop, a secondary ID secondary loop.

- **Failover/Failback**

The primary loop serves the I/O traffic directed to the primary controller, and its pair loop serves that to the secondary controller. In the unlikely event of controller failure, a host-side management software should be able to direct I/O traffic to its pair loop if one of the redundant loops fails.

Should one controller fail, the existing controller inherits ID settings from its counterpart and activate the once standby ID(s) (chips) to continue host I/Os.

### 9.3.6.2 2Gbit Models

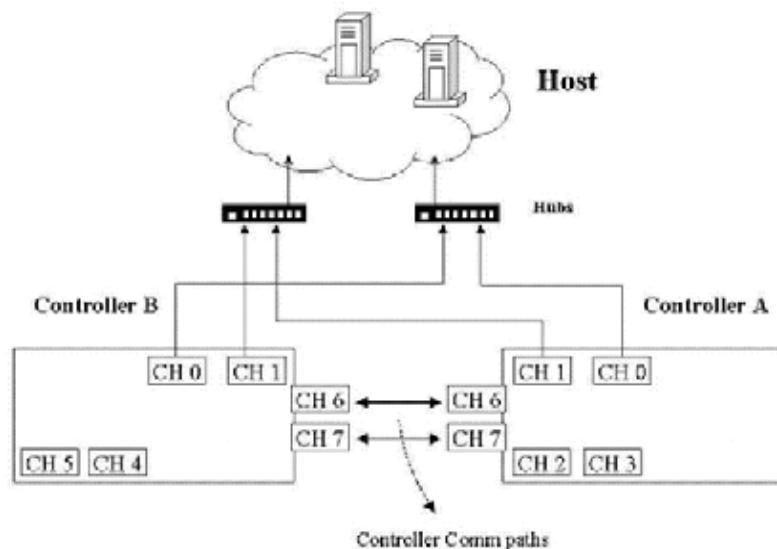
- **Failover/Failback:**

Firmware supports aliases for FC port addresses (Multiple Target IDs). No standby IDs (chips) are necessary for the dual-active configuration. If a controller fails, its port addresses will failover to the surviving controller host-transparently and without user's intervention.

Multiple Target IDs can be assigned on a single host loop, letting host I/Os to be directed to both controllers via the same channel. Each of the target IDs on host channels should be either a primary ID or a secondary ID.

### 9.3.7 Example: Configuring the Controller 2Gbit Model

There are two host ports. More than one host ID can be configured with each host port.



**Figure 9–1** Host Loop Connection: 2G Models in Redundant Mode (without Bypass)

Controller/Host Channel	Status	ID Mapping
A/ Fibre channel 0	Active	Primary ID 0
A/ Fibre channel 1	Active	Secondary ID 0
B/ Fibre channel 0	Active	Primary ID 1
B/ Fibre channel 1	Active	Secondary ID 1

Channel Number	Channel Mode
CH0 & CH1	Host
CH2 & CH3	Drive + RCC

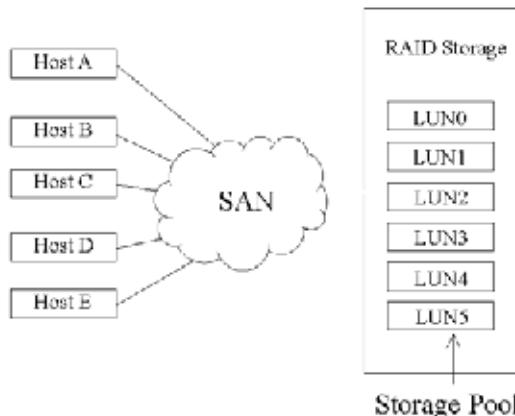
In the event of controller failure, the surviving controller will inherit the failed controller's port addresses and service the I/O requests originally directed to the failed controller.

With multi-ID setting, there is no need for a standby channel (chip) on the partner controller. A dual-active configuration using a single host port is possible. The Failover/Failback process is handled by firmware and is totally transparent to the host computer.

## 9.4 LUN Filtering: RAID-Based Mapping

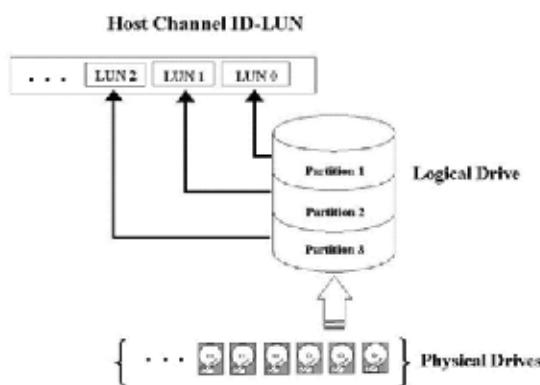
RAID-based mapping provides access control over a Storage Area Network where:

- 1 Servers may share common storage;
- 2 File integrity becomes a problem and access contentions might occur;
- 3 File access must be coordinated among multiple servers.



**Figure 9–2** Storage Pool

RAID-based mapping provides the centralized management for host-storage access. It is derived from the concept that storage can be divided into manageable pieces by mapping storage units to different Logical Unit Numbers (LUNs). The storage can then be managed in the context of a LUN map. We then append filtering mask(s) to the LUNs making specific storage unit accessible or inaccessible to one or multiple host adapters (HBAs).

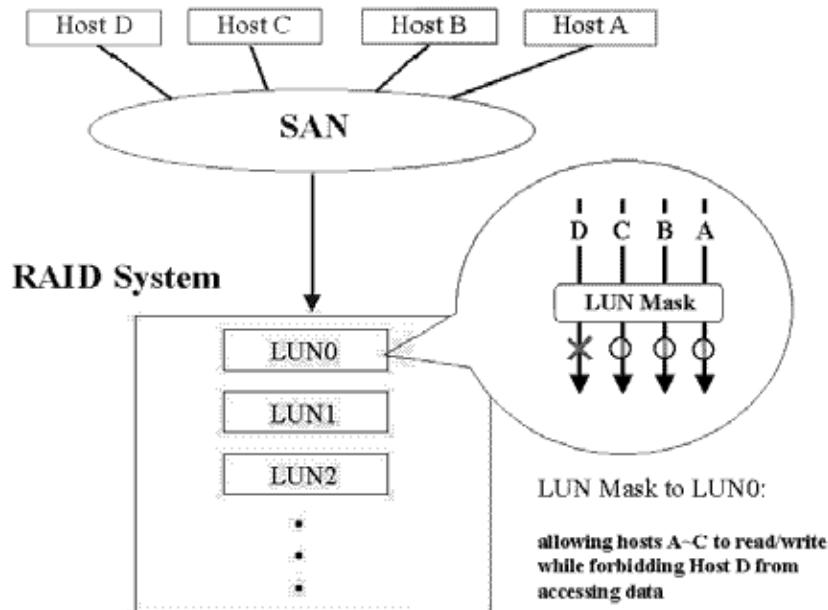


**Figure 9–3** Host-LUN Mapping

### 9.4.1 Creating LUN Masks

User can configure the storage subsystem to appear as 32 LUNs per Fibre target ID. Each LUN can be mapped with a storage unit -a partition or the entire logical drive. The configuration of logical units depends on host applications and how many drives and drive channels have been employed in the storage system.

The diagram below shows the idea of the virtual connection and the physical connection from host computers to drives. There can be many host computers connected across a storage network and a system administrator may want to make each storage unit available for certain host systems while forbidden for some others.



**Figure 9–4** LUN Mask

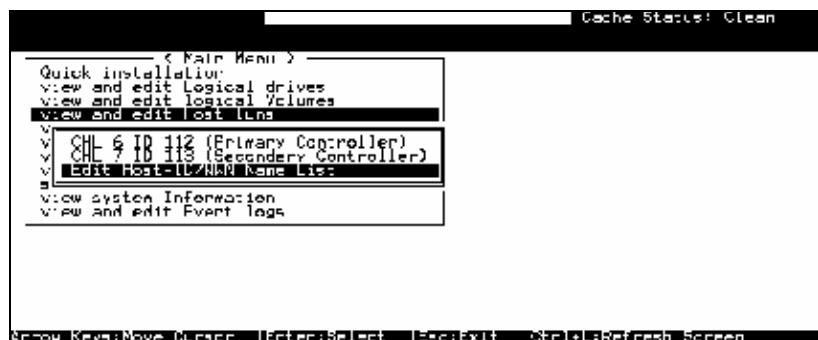
The access control can also be implemented by filter drivers. However, comparing to the control by software, access control based on controller LUN mapping can avoid overheads on server and the additional I/O latency.

The LUN map combines Host ID (in the Fibre case, a 64-bit **port name**; in the SCSI case, the initiator ID) with the list of attributes of a LUN map that originally only consisted of the channel, target ID, and the LUN number.

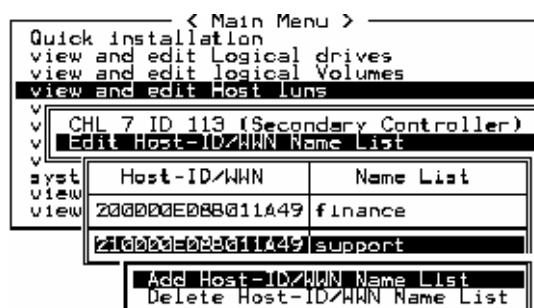
To create LUN masks, select **View and Edit Host LUNs** from the Main Menu, then select a host data path (channel-ID combination). In active-to-active mode, selecting a host channel means selecting either the Primary or the Secondary controller I/O path.

## 9.4.2 WWN Name List

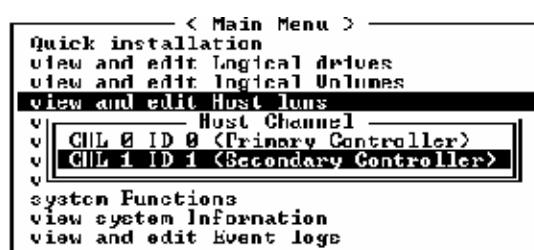
Before mapping host LUNs, you may add host adapter port names to a WWN name list to combine with a nickname given to each adapter. Names will be recorded in controller NVRAM.



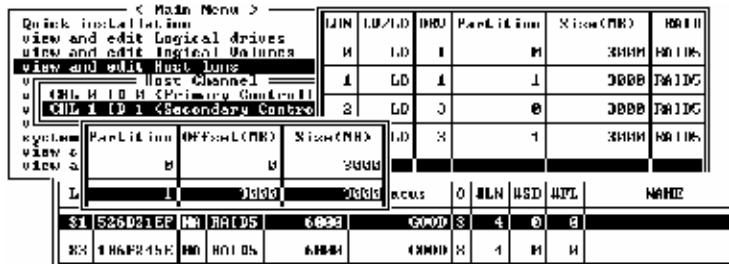
A named adapter (by location or the nature of host applications) can be easily identified and later combined with filtering masks.



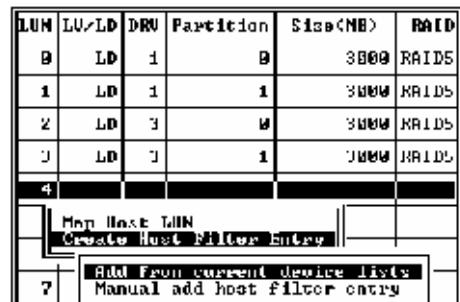
## 9.4.3 Logical Unit to Host LUN Mapping



Assign Logical Unit Numbers (LUNs) to logical units (logical drives/logical volumes/logical partitions). Select a host channel/ID and then select a LUN number. Select a Host LUN and associate a logical unit with it.



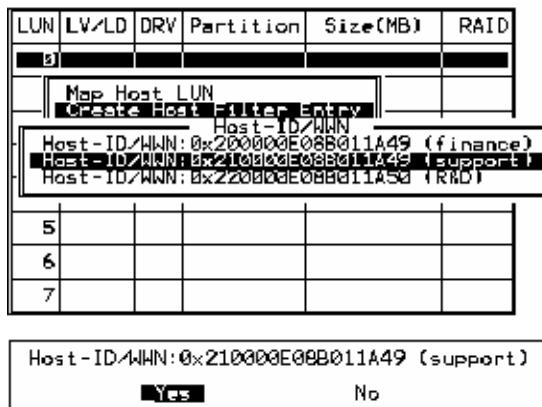
When a logical unit is selected, you may choose to **Map Host LUN** or **Create Host Filter Entry**. If you select to map the logical unit directly to a host LUN without LUN masking, the particular logical unit will be accessible for all host computers connected through the network.



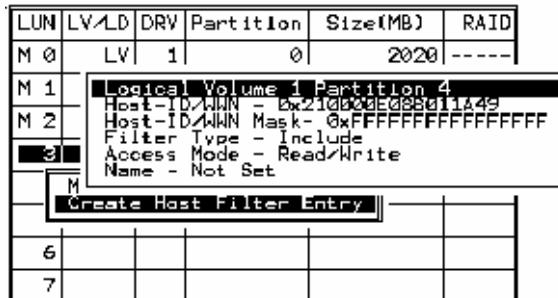
If you want the logical unit to be accessible for some host computers while inaccessible for some others, choose **Create Host Filter Entry**. More than one filter entry can be appended to a host LUN to compose a more complex mapping scheme. LUN map is port name-oriented. You can choose to **Add from current device list** or **Manual(ly) add host filter entry**.



Pressing [ENTER] on **Add from current device list** will bring forth a list of port names detected on host loops. If you have a name list pre-configured, port names will appear with its nicknames. Select a port name by pressing [ENTER].



Choose **Yes** to proceed.



The next step is to edit Host ID/WWN Mask. Move cursor bar through the menu items and press **ENTER** on the **Host ID/WWN Mask**.

#### 9.4.4 LUN Mask (ID Range) Configuration

Ranges can be established by combining a basis ID with a mask similar to the way routing table entries are set up on a LAN/WAN. If the port name ID "AND'd" with the mask equals the basis ID AND'd with the mask, then the port name ID is considered to fall within the range. If a default value **0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFF** is selected, then the port name ID must match the basis ID for the port name to be considered to fall within the range. "0x" means that all values are presented in hexadecimal. If, for instance, a value **0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFC** is selected, and the basic ID is **0x11111111111111**, port name IDs ranging from **0x....1110** to **0x....1113** will fall in the ID range.

As the general rule, a host HBA's port name can be used as the basic ID. If a host adapter's port name is used as the basic ID and the default mask value, **0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFF**, is applied, the host will fall exactly within the ID range for the port name ID AND'd with mask equals the basic ID AND'd with mask.

## 9.4.5 Filter Type: Include or Exclude

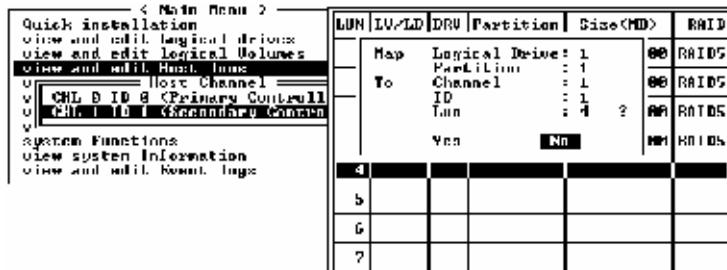
Filter entry can serve both ends: to include or exclude certain adapters from data access.

- **Include:** If a node's (a workstation or a server) WWN falls in an ID range specified as **Include**, the node will be allowed to access the storage capacity mapped to the associated LUN. The access mode can be **read only** or **read/write**.
- **Exclude:** If a node's WWN falls in an ID range specified as **Exclude**, the node will not be allowed to access the storage capacity mapped with this entry.
- **Multiple ranges**, or filter entries, can be established for a single channel, target-ID, and LUN combination. Each range can have its own Exclude/Include attributes. The rules for determining whether a particular ID is considered as **included** or **excluded** are listed below:
  - a If an ID falls within one or more Include ranges and does not fall in any Exclude range, then it is included.
  - b If an ID falls within ANY Exclude range no matter if it also falls in another Include range, then it is excluded.
  - c If the ID falls in none of the ranges and there is at least one Include range specified, then the ID should be considered as excluded.
  - d If the ID falls in none of the ranges and only Exclude ranges are specified, then the ID is considered as included.

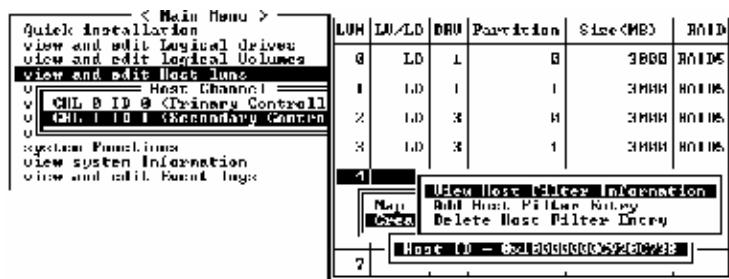
## 9.4.6 Access Mode: Read Only or Read/Write

A particular extended LUN map can be setup with an attribute of **Read Only** in the event that certain hosts may need to read the data on the media but must not be allowed to change it. In the degenerate case (range only includes a single ID), different hosts can be mapped with completely different logical drives/logical volumes/logical partitions even when they address the same channel, target-ID, and LUN.

When completed with configuring LUN mask, press [ESC] to map a logical unit to LUN.

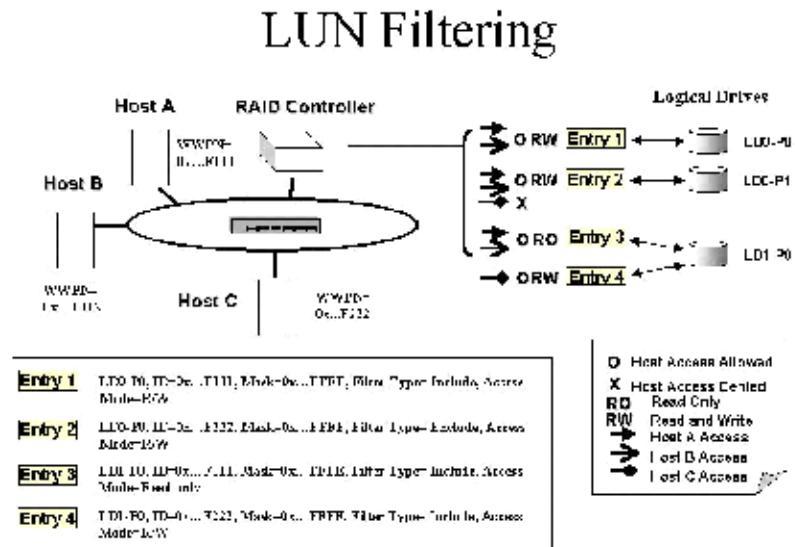


Multiple filter entries can be created for a Host ID/LUN combination, select the Host LUN again to enter the editing menu.



You may continue to add more entries, to delete or edit the existing entries.

### 9.4.7 Sample Configuration:



**Figure 9–5** LUN Filtering - Configuration Sample

#### 1 Host HBA port name (WWPN) list:

Host A = 0x...F111

Host B = 0x...F112

Host C = 0x...F222

#### 2 Controller Configuration:

- Logical drives are LD0 and LD1. LD0 is partitioned into two: P0 and P1.
- Filter Entry (LUN map) list

#### 9.4.7.1 Configuration Procedure:

- 1 Create an entry list for the specific logical unit from **View and Edit Host LUN\Host Channel\Create Host Filter Entry**.
- 2 Select Host Channel ID, and then select a configured logical unit (a logical drive, logical volume, or one of its logical partitions) to create the entry. The entry submenu will appear.
- 3 Enter and modify the **Host ID**, **Host ID Mask**, **Filter Type**, and **Access Mode**.

The exemplary entry list is shown below. Please refer to [Figure 9–5](#) above:

- **Entry 1:** "LD0-P0, ID=0x...F111, Mask=0x...FFFE, Filter Type = Include, Access Mode = Read/Write." It means Host A and B can read/write P0 of LD0.
- **Entry 2:** "LD0-P1, ID=0x...F222, Mask=0x...FFFF, Filter Type = Exclude, Access Mode = Read/Write." It means Host A and B can read/write P1 of LD0, but this partition is inaccessible for Host C.
- **Entry 3:** "LD1-P0, ID=0x...F111, Mask=0x...FFFE, Filter Type = Include, Access Mode = Read Only." It means P0 of LD1 is 'Read Only' for Host A and B.
- **Entry 4:** "LD1-P0, ID=0x...F222, Mask=0x...FFFF, Filter Type = Include, Access Mode = Read/Write." It means Host C can read/write P0 of LD1.

# Chapter 10

# Advanced Configuration

This chapter aims to discuss the advanced options for configuring and maintaining a RAID system. Each function will be given a brief explanation as well as a configuration sample. Terminal screens will be used for the configuration samples. Some of the operations require the basic knowledge of RAID technology and the practice of them is only recommended for an experienced user.

## 10.1 RAID Expansion

### ***What is it and how does it work?***

Before the invention of RAID Expansion, increasing the capacity of a RAID system meant backing up all data in the disk array, re-creating disk array configuration with new drives, and then restoring data back into system. RAID Expansion allows users to expand a logical drive by adding new drives, or by copying the data from the original member drives to the new ones, and then the smaller drives are replaced without powering down the system.

### 10.1.1 Logical Drive Expansion

#### **Notes**

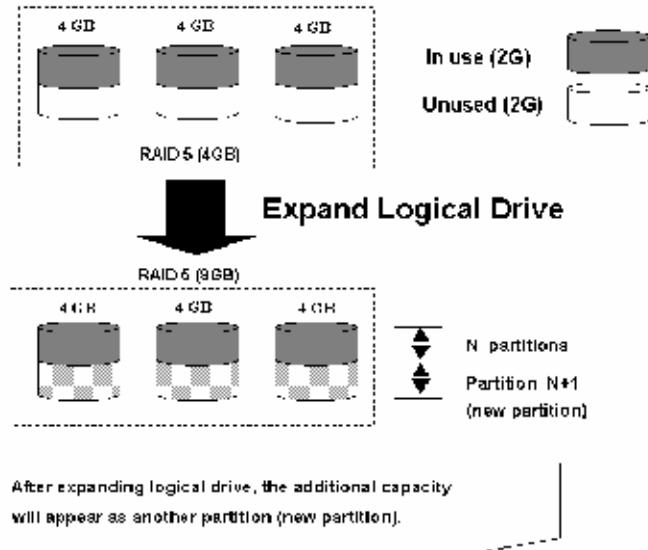
- 1 When a new drive is added to an existing logical drive, the added capacity brought by the new drive appears as a new partition. Assuming that you have 4 physical drives (each of the size of 36GB) to compose a logical drive, and that each drive's maximum capacity is used, you will have a logical drive of the size of 108GB. One drive's capacity is used for parity; i.e., RAID 3. A 36GB drive is added, the capacity will be increased to 144GB with two partitions (one 108GB and the other 36GB).

Upon the completion of array expansion, the additional capacity will appear as another partition (a new partition). The diagram below shows this idea.

- 2 A new drive used for adding the capacity should be the same size.
- 3 Expansion can only be performed on RAID 0, 3, and 5 logical drives. Expansion can not be performed on a logical configurations that do not have parity; i.e., NRAID or RAID 1.

**Note:** expansion on RAID 0 is **NOT** recommended, because RAID 0 array has no redundancy. Interruptions during the process of expansion may cause unrecoverable data loss.

- 4 Expansion should not be canceled or interrupted once begun. A manual restart should be conducted after power failure or interruption of any kind.



**Figure 10–1** Logical Drive Expansion

RAID levels supported: RAID 0, 3, and 5

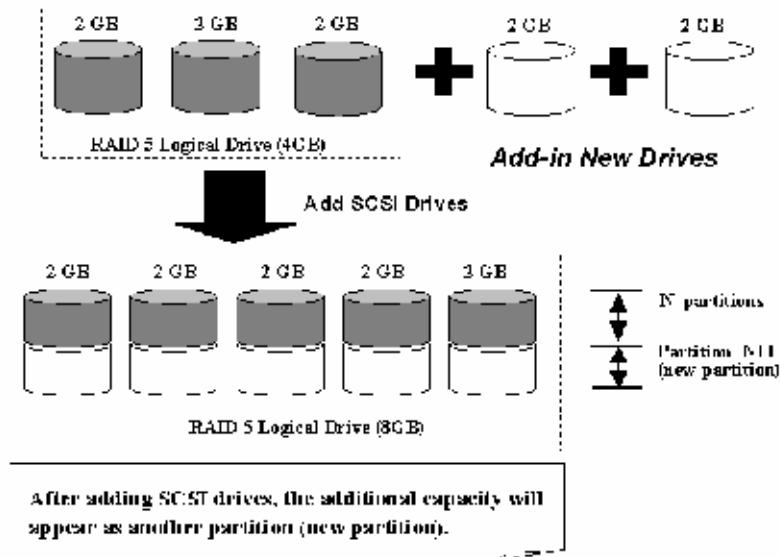
Expansion can be performed on logical drives or logical volumes under the following conditions:

- 1 There is an unused capacity in a logical unit
- 2 Capacity is increased by using member drives of larger capacity (please refer to section 10.1.3, "Mode 2 Expansion: Copy and Replace Drives with Drives of Larger Capacity", on page 141)

Data is recalculated and distributed to drive members or members of a logical volume. On the completion of the process, the added or the previously unused capacity will become a new partition. The new partition must be made available through host LUN mapping in order for a host adapter to recognize its presence.

## 10.1.2 Mode 1 Expansion: Adding a Drive to a Logical Drive

Use drives of the same capacity as that of the original drive members. Once completed, the added capacity will appear as another partition (new partition). Data is automatically re-striped across the new and old members during the add-drive process, please refer to [Figure 10–2](#).



**Figure 10–2 Expansion by Adding Drive**

RAID levels supported: RAID 0, 3, and 5.

The new partition must be mapped to a host LUN in order for the HBA (host-bus adapter) to recognize its presence.

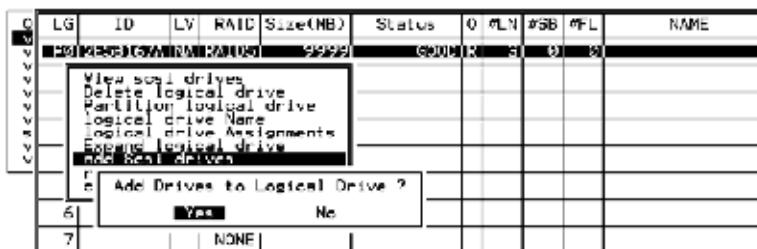
### 10.1.2.1 Adding New Drive to a Logical Drive

First select from the Main Menu, **View and Edit Logical Drive**, and select a logical drive to add a new drive to. The drive selected for adding should have a capacity no less than the original member drive. If possible, use drives of the same capacity because all drives in the array is treated as though they have the capacity of the smallest member drive in the logical array.

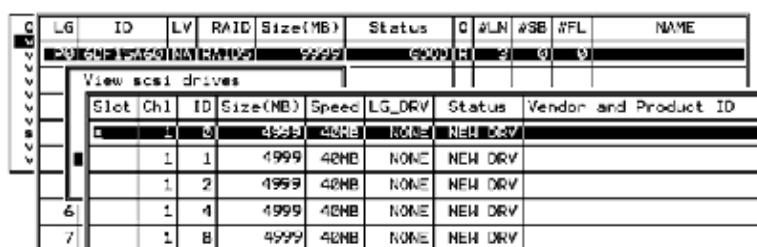
Cache Status: Clean											
Q	LG	ID	LV	RAID	Size(MB)	Status	O	JLN	ASB	WFL	NAME
✓	2	5555-5555-5555-5555	R1(05)	RAID5	1280	OK(0)	R	5	0	0	
✓	1			NONE							
✓	2			NONE							
✓	3			NONE							
✓	4			NONE							
✓	5			NONE							
✓	6			NONE							
✓	7			NONE							

Arrow Keys:Move Cursor |Enter:Select |Esc:Exit |Ctrl+L:Refresh Screen

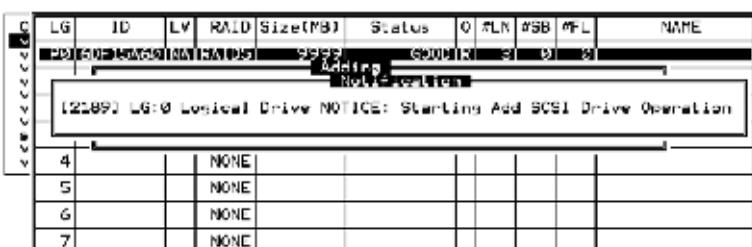
Press [ENTER] to select a logical drive and choose **add SCSI drives** from the submenu. Proceed with confirming the selection.



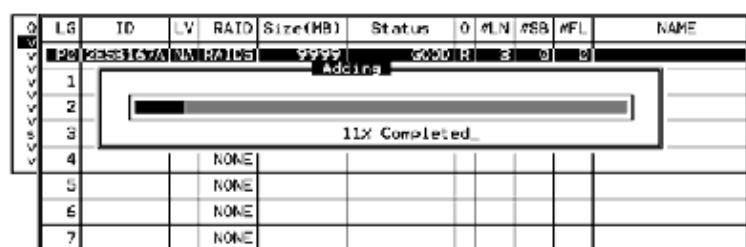
A list of available drives will appear. Select one or more drive(s) to add to the target logical drive by pressing [ENTER]. The selected drive will be indicated by an asterisk "\*" mark.



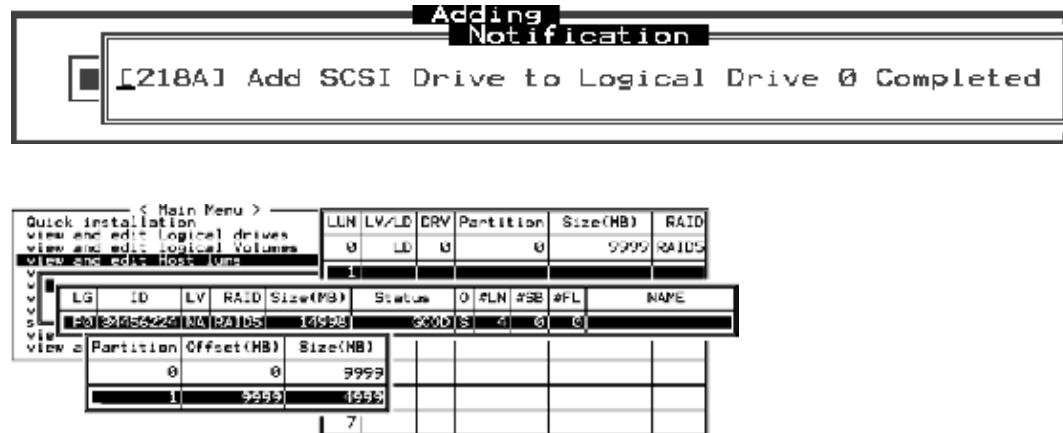
Press [ESC] to proceed and the notification will prompt.



Press [ESC] again to cancel the notification prompt, a status bar will indicate the percentage of progress.



Upon completion, there will appear a confirming notification. The capacity of the added drive will appear as an unused partition.



The added capacity will be included in the logical drive automatically, meaning that you do not have to perform **Expand Logical Drive** later. However, if the logical drive has already been mapped with a host LUN, you have to map the added capacity to another host ID/LUN to make use of it.

As shown above, in **View and Edit Host LUN**, the original capacity is 9999MB, its host LUN mapping remains unchanged and the added capacity appears as the second partition.

**Important** Expansion by adding more hard disk drives cannot be canceled once started. If a power failure occurs, the Expansion will be paused and the controller will NOT restart the expansion when the power comes back on. Resumption of the RAID expansion must be performed manually.

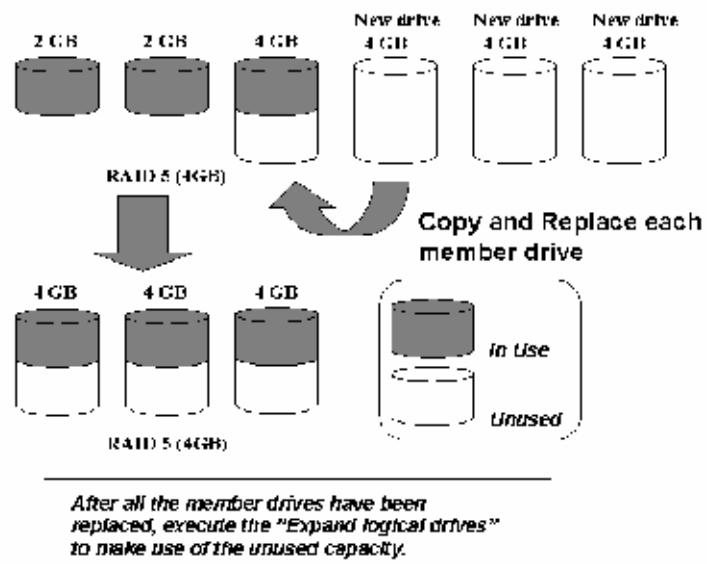
If a member drive of the logical drive fails during RAID expansion, the expansion will be paused. The expansion will resume automatically after logical drive rebuild is completed.

### 10.1.3 Mode 2 Expansion: Copy and Replace Drives with Drives of Larger Capacity

You may also expand your logical drives by copying and replacing all member drives with drives of higher capacity. Please refer to [Figure 10-3](#) for a better understanding. The existing data in the array is copied onto the new drives, and then the original members can be removed.

When all the member drives have been replaced, execute the **Expand Logical Drives** function to make use of the unused capacity.

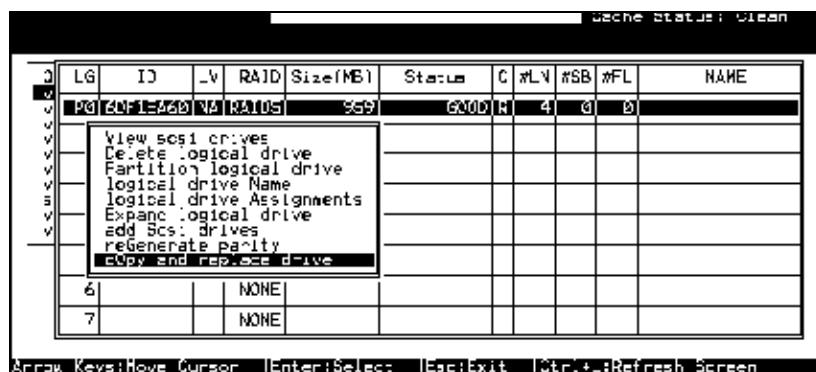
RAID levels supported: RAID 0, 3, and 5



**Figure 10–3** Expansion by Copy & Replace

### **10.1.3.1 Copy and Replace Procedure**

Select from Main Menu, **View and Edit Logical Drives**. Select a target logical drive, press **[ENTER]** and scroll down to choose **copy and replace drive**. Press **[ENTER]** to proceed.



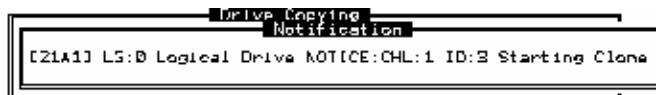
The member drives belonging to the selected logical drive will be listed. Select the member drive (the source drive) which you want to replace with a larger one.

LG	ID	LV	RAID	Size(MB)	Status	O	#LN	#SB	#FL	NAME
P0	60F15A60	NA	RAIDS	9999	GOOD	R	4	0	0	
<b>View SCSI drives</b>										
<b>Delete logical drive</b>										
<b>Partition logical drive</b>										
Slot	Ch1	ID	Size(MB)	Speed	LG_DRV	Status	Vendor and Product ID			
1	3	318	40MB	0	ON LINE					
1	5	319	40MB	0	ON-LINE					
1	6	319	40MB	0	ON-LINE					
1	8	319	40MB	0	ON-LINE					

Select one of the member drives as the **source drive** (status indicated as ON-LINE) by pressing **[ENTER]**, a table of available SCSI drives will prompt. Select a **new drive** to copy the capacity of the source drive. The channel number and ID number of both the **Source Drive** and the **Destination Drive** will be indicated in the confirming box.

LG	Slot	Ch1	ID	Size(MB)	Speed	LG_DRV	Status	Vendor and Product ID					
P0	1	3	9999	20P3	NONE	NEH DRV							
<b>Source Drive:</b>													
Channel-1 ID=0													
<b>Destination Drive:</b>													
Channel-1 ID=2													
<b>Copy and Replace Drive ?</b>													
Yes No													
		1	1	318	20MB	0	ON-LINE						
		1	2	648	20MB	0	ON-LINE						

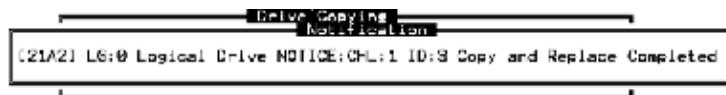
Choose **Yes** to confirm and proceed.



Press **[ESC]** to view the progress.

O	LG	ID	LV	RAID	Size(MB)	Status	O	#LN	#SB	#FL	NAME
P0	60F15A60	NA	RAIDS	9999	GOOD	R	4	0	0	0	
<b>Drive Copying</b>											
1											
2											
3											
4											
5											
6											
7											

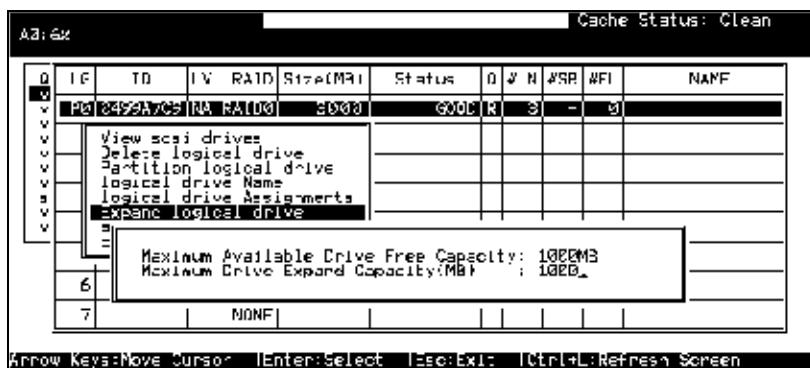
Completion of the Copy and Replace process will be indicated by a notification message. Follow the same method to copy and replace every member drive with drives of higher capacity. You may now perform **Expand Logical Drive** to make use of the capacity brought by the new drives and then map the additional capacity to a Host LUN.



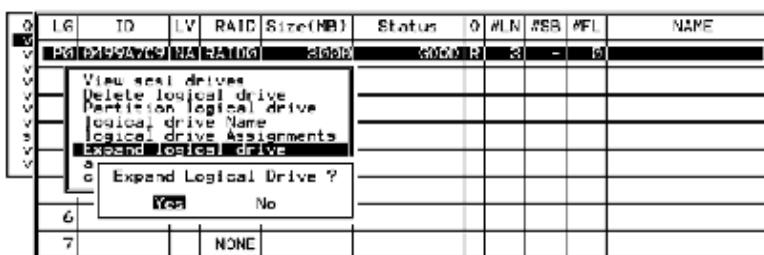
### 10.1.4 Expand Logical Drive

In the following example, the logical drive is originally composed of three member drives and each member drive has the capacity of 1 Gigabyte. **Copy and Replace** has been performed on the logical drive and each of its member drives has been replaced by a new drive with the capacity of 2 Gigabytes. The next step is to perform **Expand Logical Drive** to utilize the additional capacity brought by the new drives.

- 1 Select **View and Edit Logical Drives** from the Main Menu and select the logical drive with its members copied and replaced.
- 2 Select **Expand Logical Drive** in the submenu and press [**ENTER**] to proceed. A confirming box will appear.
- 3 Proceed by pressing [**ENTER**] or entering any value no larger than the **maximum drive expand capacity** and press [**ENTER**].



Choose **Yes** to confirm and proceed.



Upon completion, you will be prompted by the notification message.



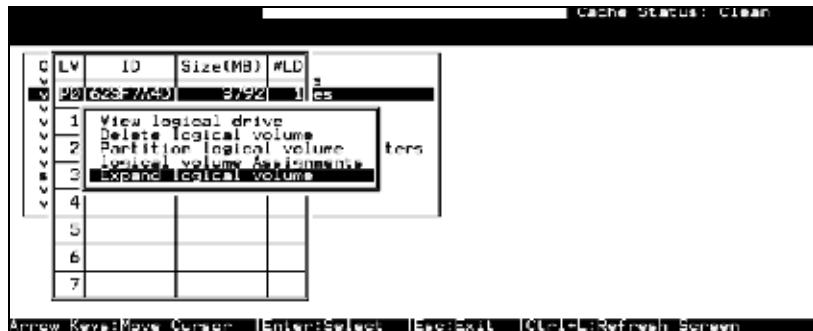
Press [ESC] to return to the previous menu screen.

The total capacity of logical drive has been expanded to 6 Gigabytes.

LG	ID	LV	RAID	Size(MB)	Status	C	#LM	#SB	#FL	NAME
0	P0	0	RAID0	6200	GOOD	H	8	-	0	
1		1	NONE							
2		2	NONE							
3		3	NONE							
4		4	NONE							
5		5	NONE							
6		6	NONE							
7		7	NONE							

### 10.1.5 Expand Logical Volume

To expand a logical volume, expand logical drive member(s) in the logical volume and then perform **Expand Logical Volume**."



When prompted by **Expand Logical Volume?**, Choose **Yes** to confirm and the process will be completed immediately.

### 10.1.6 Example: RAID Expansion in Windows 2000® Server

#### Limitations When Using Windows 2000

- 1 Applies only to the Windows NT Server or Windows 2000 Server Disk Management which includes the Extend Volume Set function; Windows NT Workstation does not support this feature. The volume set expansion formats the new area without affecting existing files on the original volume.
- 2 The system drive (boot drive) of a Windows NT/2000 system can not be expanded.

3 The drive that will be expanded should be using the NTFS file system.

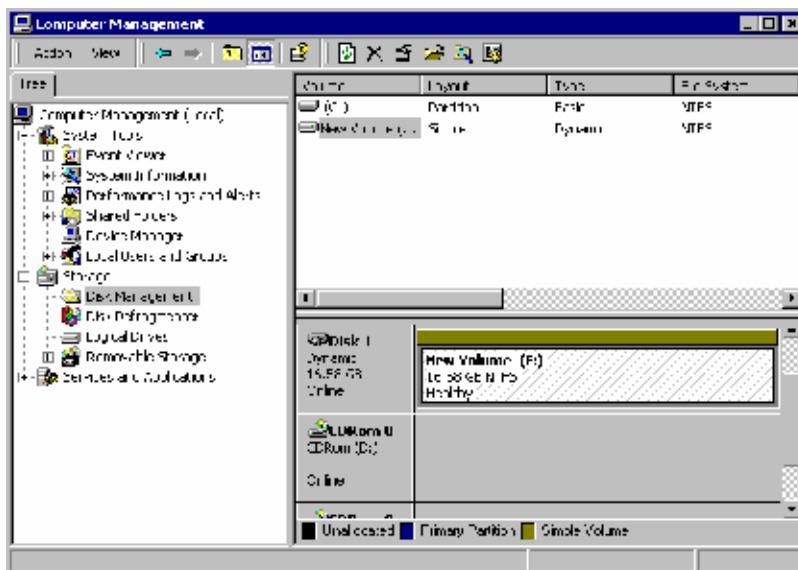
**Example:**

The following example demonstrates the expansion of a 16988MB RAID 5 logical drive. The Hyper terminal emulation software that comes with Windows Server is used to connect to the RAID controller via RS-232.

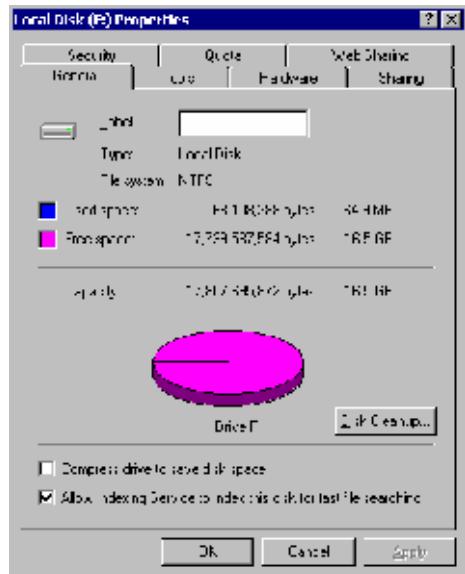
DG	ID	LU	RAID	Size(CMD)	Status	1	2	3	0	C	RAID	SPD	BPL	NAME
PG	2092884D	RAID5	RAID5	16988	GOOD									
1			NONE											
2			NONE											
3			NONE											
4			NONE											
5			NONE											
6			NONE											
7			NONE											

Arrow Key:Move Cursor Enter:Select Esc:Exit F1+F2:Refresh Screen

You can view information about this drive in the Windows 2000 Server's Computer Management -> Storage -> Disk Management.



Place the cursor on Disk 1, right-click your mouse, and select **Properties**. You will see that the total capacity for the Drive E: is about 16.5GB.



Follow the steps described in the previous section to **"add"** or **copy & replace** SCSI disk drives and perform Logical Drive Expansion.

Cache Status: Clean										
LG	ID	LV	RAID	Size(MB)	Status	1	2	3	0	NAME
P0	2009280830	NM	RAID05	16500	Adding	GOOD	0	0	0	R
1										
2										
3					99% Complained					
4			NAME							
5			NAME							
6			NAME							
7			NAME							

Arrow Keys:Move Cursor |Enter:Select |Esc:Exit |Ctrl+L:Refresh Screen

The 16.5GB logical drive has become a 25GB logical drive. Place the cursor on that logical drive, and then press **[ENTER]**.

Mon Jan 20 18:32:31 2003										Cache Status: Clean			
LG	ID	LV	RAID	Size(KB)	Status	1	2	3	4	MLN	MSB	MFL	NAME
PH	200280010	NO	RAID5	25882	GOOD	1	0	1	0	A	A	A	
1			NONE										
2			NONE										
3			NONE										
4			NONE										
5			NONE										
6			NONE										
7			NONE										

Menu Keys:Home Current: Partition Select PageUp PgDn Home End Refresh Screen

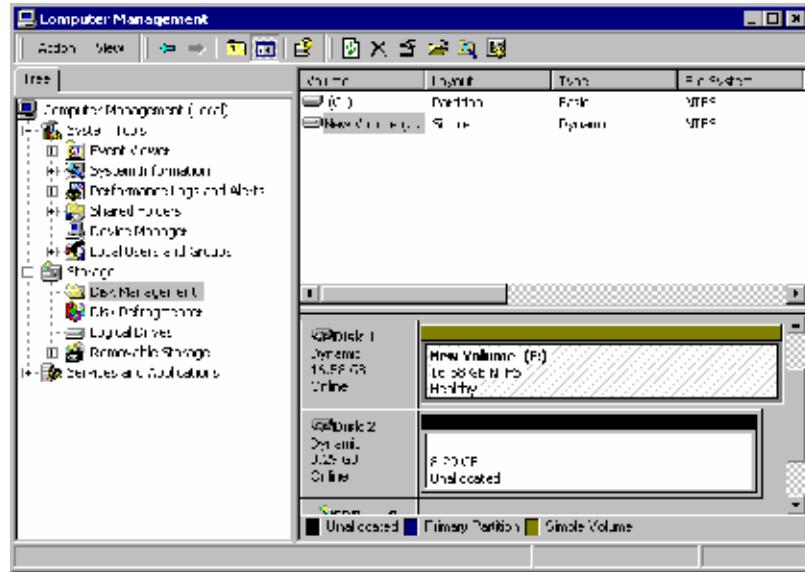
From the menu, select **Partition Logical Drive**. You will see that the 25GB logical drive is composed of a 17GB partition and an 8.4GB partition.

Mon Jan 20 18:33:39 2003									Cache Status: Clean			
LG	ID	LV	RAID	Size(KB)	Partition	Offset(KB)	Size(KB)	NAME				
PH	200280010	NO	RAID5	25882	0	0	16988					
1			NONE		1	16988	8494					
2			NONE		2							
3			NONE		3							
4			NONE		4							
5			NONE		5							
6			NONE		6							
7			NONE		7							

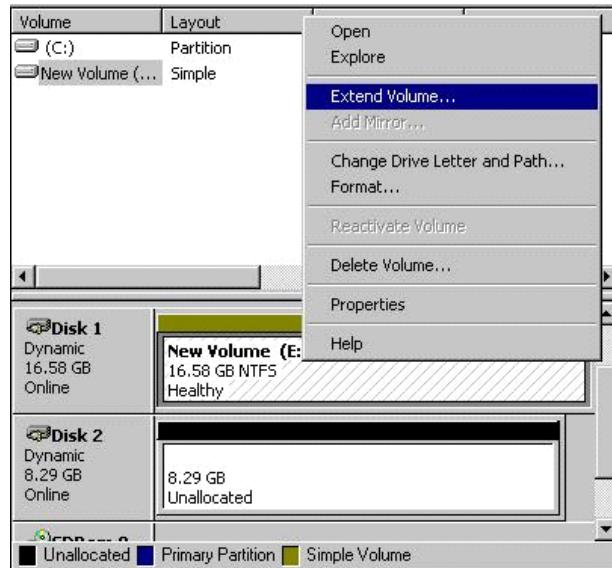
Menu Keys:Home Current: Partition Select PageUp PgDn Home End Refresh Screen

Follow the directions in [Chapter 6](#) and [Chapter 8](#) to map the new partition to a Host LUN. The new partition must be **mapped** to a host LUN in order for the HBA (host-bus adapter) to see it. Once you have mapped the partition, reboot your Windows server. The HBA should be able to detect an additional **disk** during the initialization process.

Return to Windows 2000 Server's Disk Management. There now exists a Disk 2 with 8.3GB of free space. You may use the **rescan disks** command to bring up the new drive.



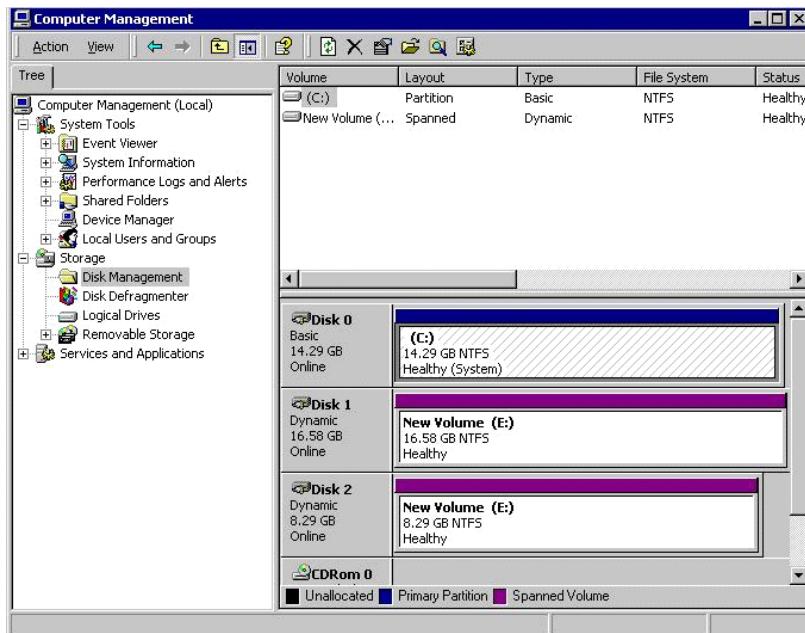
Select an existing volume (Disk1) and then right-click on the disk column. Select **Extend Volume** to proceed.



The Extend Volume Wizard should guide you through the rest of the process.

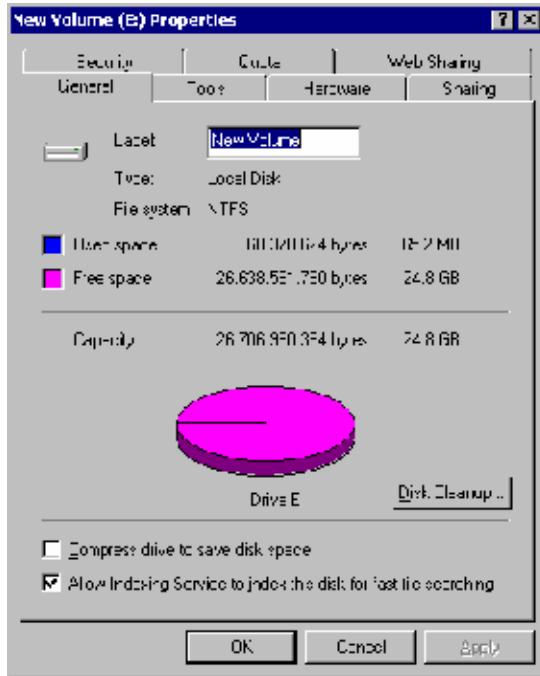


The screen will display that volume set of Drive E: has been extended into a spanned volume by the 8.3GB in Disk2.



Logical Drive E: is now composed of two partitions with a total volume of 2500MB. To see this, hold down on the <Ctrl> key and select both **Disk 1** and **Disk2**; then right-click your mouse and select **Properties**.

Drive E: now has a capacity of about 25GB.



## 10.2 Fault Prevention

With the maturity of technologies like SMART, drive failures can be predictable to a certain degree. Encountering drive bad block reassessments may be the most common one when a drive is about to fail. In addition to the SMART-related functions as will be discussed later in this section, a system administrator can also choose to manually perform **Clone Failing Drive** to a drive which is about to fail. System administrators can decide when to replace a drive showing symptoms of defects by a healthy drive. A system administrator may also replace any drive at will even when a source drive is healthy.

Usually, the **Clone Failing Drive** can be performed under the following conditions:

- 1 Replacing drives about to fail either detected by SMART or notified by controller.
- 2 Manually replacing and cloning drive data on any drive to a new drive.

### 10.2.1 Clone Failing Drive

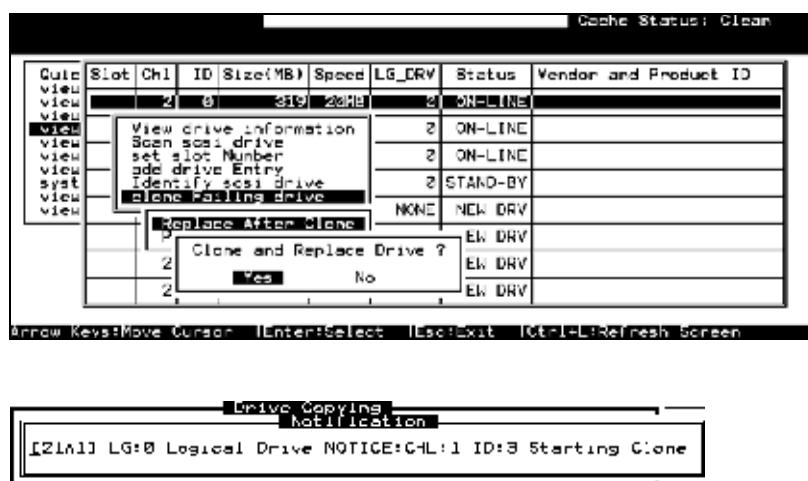
Unlike the similar functions combined with the SMART setting, the **Clone Failing Drive** is a manual function. There are two options for cloning a failing drive: **Replace After Clone** and **Perpetual Clone**.

#### 10.2.1.1 Replace After Clone

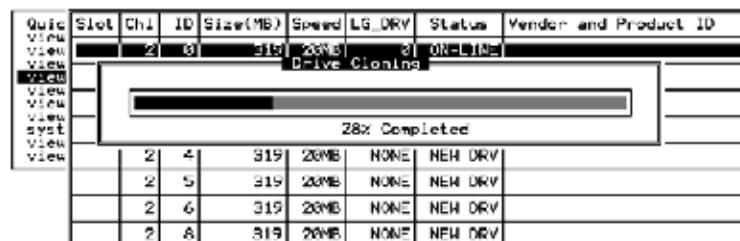
Data on the source drive, the drive with predicted error (or any selected member drive), will be cloned to a standby spare and replaced later by the spare. The status of the replaced drive, the original member drive with predicted error, will be redefined as a **used drive**. System administrators may replace the used drive with a new one, and then configure the new drive as a spare drive.

Locate the logical drive to which the specific member drive with predictable error belongs. Select the **clone failing drive** function.

Select **Replace After Clone**. The controller will automatically start the cloning process using the existing **stand-by** (dedicated/global spare drive) to clone the source drive (the target member drive with predicted error). If there is no standby drive (local/global spare drive), you need to add a new drive and configure it as a standby drive.

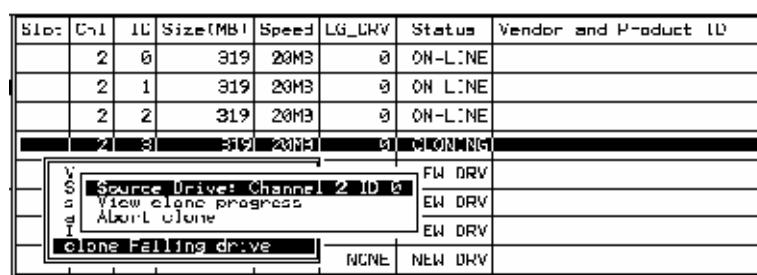


The cloning process will begin with a notification message. Press [ESC] to proceed.



The cloning process will be indicated by a status bar.

You may also quit the status bar by pressing [ESC] to return to the table of the connected drives. Select the drive indicated as **CLONING** by pressing [ENTER].



Select **clone Failing drive** again to view the current status. You may identify the source drive and choose to **view clone progress**, or **abort clone** if you happen to have selected the wrong drive.

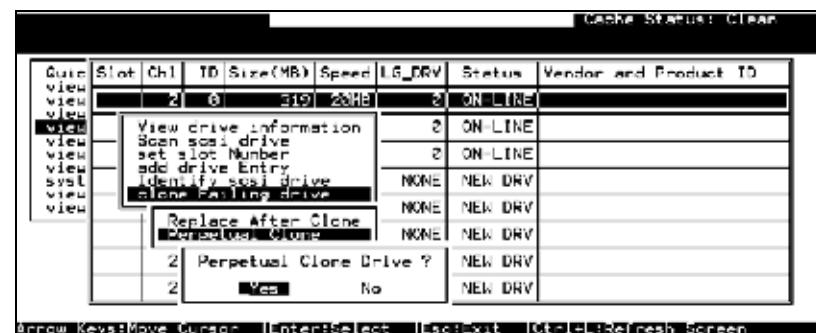
When the process is completed, users will be notified by the following message.



### 10.2.1.2 Perpetual Clone

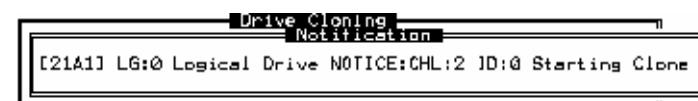
The standby spare drive will clone the source drive, member drive with predicted error or any selected drive, without substituting it. The status of the spare drive will be displayed as **clone drive** after the cloning process. The source drive will remain as a member of the logical drive.

In **View and Edit Drives**, locate the member drive with predicted error. Select **clone Failing drive**, and choose **Perpetual Clone**.

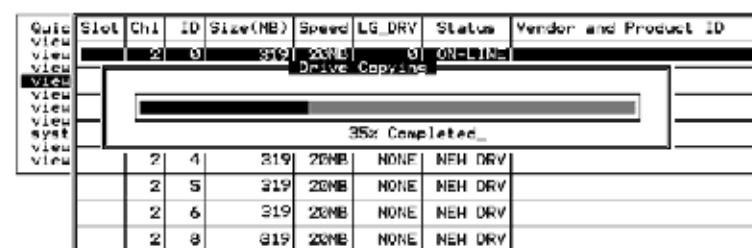


The controller will automatically start the cloning process by using the existing **stand-by** (Local/Global Spare Drive) to clone the source drive (the target member drive with predicted error).

The cloning process will begin with a notification message:



Press **[ESC]** to view the current progress:



You may also quit viewing the status bar by pressing [ESC] to return to the previous menu screen. Select the drive indicated as **CLONING** by pressing [ENTER]. Select **Clone Failing Drive** again to view the progress. You may identify the source drive and choose to **View clone progress** or **Abort clone** if you happen to have selected the wrong drive.

	Slect	Ch1	ID	Size(MB)	Speed	LG_DRV	Status	Vendor and Product ID
Quic view			2	2	319	20MB	0	ON-LINE
view			2	1	319	20MB	0	ON-LINE
view			2	2	319	20MB	0	ON-LINE
view			2	3	319	20MB	0	CLONE
sysy								
view								
view								

V

5 Source Drive: Optical 2.00 G

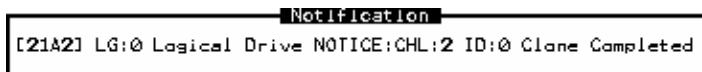
4 Replace original with clone

3 Delete clone

2 Clone falling drive

NONE NCH\_DRV

The cloning progress will be completed by a notification message as displayed below:



You may press [ESC] to clear the notification message to see the SCSI drives' status after the cloning process. The source drive (Channel 1 ID 5) remains as a member of logical drive "0," and the **stand-by** drive (Channel 1 ID 2, the dedicated Global Spare Drive) has become a **CLONE** drive.

Slot	Ch1	ID	Size(MB)	Spec	LG_DRV	Status	Vendor and Product ID
view	2	0	319	20MB	0	ON-LINE	
view	2	1	319	20MB	0	ON-LINE	
view	2	2	319	20MB	0	ON-LINE	
view	2	3	319	20MB	0	ON-LINE	
synal	2	4	319	20MB	NONE	NEH DRV	
view	2	5	319	20MB	NONE	NEH DRV	
view	2	6	319	20MB	NONE	NEH DRV	
view	2	8	319	20MB	NONE	NEH DRV	

## **10.2.2 SMART (Self-Monitoring, Analysis and Reporting Technology)**

This section provides a brief introduction to **SMART**, as one way to predict drive failure and implementations for preventing data loss caused by drive failure.

### **10.2.2.1 Introduction**

Self-Monitoring, Analysis and Reporting Technology (SMART) is an emerging technology that provides near-term failure prediction for disk drives. When SMART is enabled, the drive monitors predetermined drive attributes that are susceptible to degradation over time. If a failure is likely to occur, SMART makes a status report available so that the host can prompt the user to back up data on the failing drive. However, not all failures can be predicted. SMART predictability is limited to the attributes the drive can monitor which are selected by the device manufacturer based on the attribute's ability to contribute to the prediction of degrading or fault conditions.

Although attributes are drive specific, a variety of typical characteristics can be identified:

- head flying height
- data throughput performance
- spin-up time
- re-allocated sector count
- seek error rate
- seek time performance
- spin try recount
- drive calibration retry count

Drives with reliability prediction capability only communicate a reliability condition as either good or failing.

### 10.2.2.2 Implementations to SMART

There are four manual selections related to SMART function in firmware:

- **Disable:**

SMART function not activated

- **Detect Only**

SMART function enabled, controller will send command to enable all the drives' SMART function, if a drive predicts problem, controller will report the predicted problem in the form of an event log.

- **Perpetual Clone**

If the SMART function is enabled, the controller will send command to enable all drives' SMART function. If a drive predicts problem, controller will report in the form of an event log. Controller will clone the drive if there is a dedicated/Global Spare Drive available. ***The predict failure drive*** will not be taken off-line, and the clone drive will still behave as a standby drive.

If ***the predict failure drive*** fails, the clone drive will take over immediately. Under the circumstance that ***the predict failure drives*** is still working and another drive in the same logical drive should fail, the clone drive will perform as a standby spare drive and start to rebuild the failed drive immediately. This is to prevent a fatal drive error if yet another drive should fail.

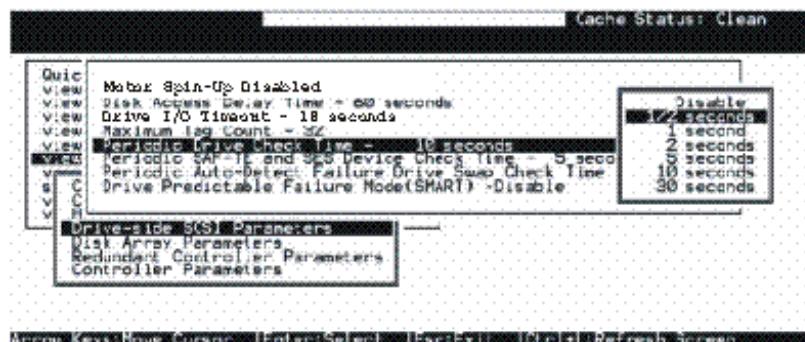
- **Clone + Replace**

Controller will enable all drives' SMART function. If a drive predicts problem, controller will report in the form of event log. Controller will then clone the drive with predictable failure to a standby spare drive and take ***the predict failure drive*** off-line as soon as the cloning process is completed.

### 10.2.2.3 Enabling the SMART Feature

Follow the procedure listed below to enable SMART on all drives.

- 1 First, enable the **Periodic Drive Check Time** function. In **\View and Edit Configuration Parameters\Drive-side SCSI Parameters\Periodic Drive Check Time**, choose a time interval.



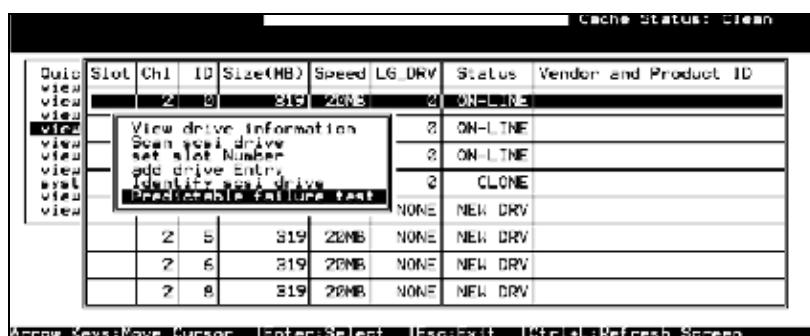
2 In **View and Edit Configuration Parameters\Drive-side Parameters\Drive Predictable Failure Mode <SMART>**, choose one from Detect Only, Detect, Perpetual Clone and Detect, Clone + Replace.



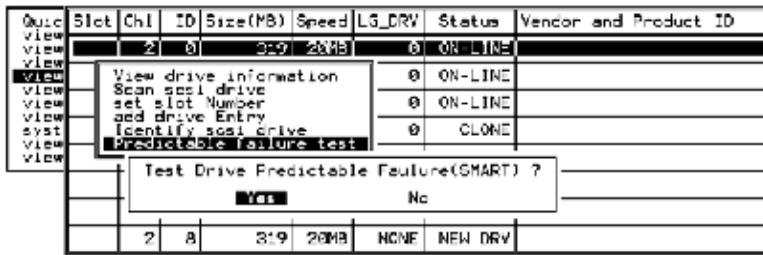
#### 10.2.2.4 Examining Whether Your Drives Support SMART

To see if your drive supports SMART, follow the steps below:

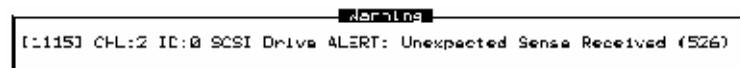
- 1 Enable **SMART** on the RAID controller.
- 2 In **View and Edit Drives**, choose one drive to test to. Press [ENTER] on the drive, a sub-menu will appear.
- 3 Notice that a new item **Predictable Failure Test** appears in the sub-menu. If the **SMART** feature is not enabled properly, this item will not appear in this sub-menu.



4 Choose **Predictable Failure Test**, the controller will force the drive to simulate the predictable drive error.



5 Press [ENTER], and after a while (the next time the controller performs **Periodic Drive Check**), the controller will detect the error simulated by the drive. An error message will be displayed: **[1142] SMART-CH:?:ID:?: Predictable Failure Detected (TEST)**. If this error message appears, it means the selected drive supports the SMART features. If this error message does not appear, it means that this drive does not support SMART



6 Otherwise, you may simply contact the drive manufacturer for information about whether the drive model and drive firmware revision support SMART

### 10.2.2.5 How to Utilize the SMART Functions on the RAID Controller

- 1 Enable **SMART** on the RAID controller.
- 2 Make sure that your drives do support SMART so that your system will work fitly.
- 3 The “Detect Only” Setting:

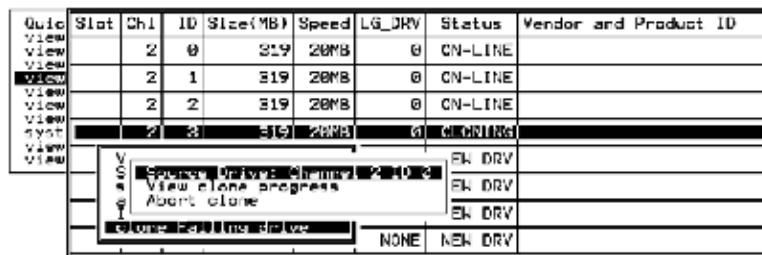
- In **View and Edit Configuration Parameters\Drive-side Parameters\Drive Predictable Failure Mode <SMART>**, choose **Detect Only**.



- Whenever a drive predicts symptoms of predictable drive failure, controller will issue an error message.

#### 4 The Detect, Perpetual Clone Setting:

- In **\View and Edit Configuration Parameters\Drive-side Parameters\Drive Predictable Failure Mode <SMART>**, choose **Detect, Perpetual Clone**.
- Assign at least one spare drive to the logical drive (either Local Spare Drive or Global Spare Drive).
- When a drive (logical drive member) detects the predictable drive failure, the controller will “clone” the drive with a spare drive. You may enter the **View and Edit Drive** menu and click on the spare drive (either a local or a global one). Choose from the menu items if you want to know about the status of the source drive, the cloning progress, or to abort cloning.



The screenshot shows a software interface for managing drives. At the top, there's a menu bar with options like 'File', 'Edit', 'View', 'Tools', 'Help', and 'About'. Below the menu is a table with columns: Slot, Chassis, ID, Size(MB), Speed, LG\_DRV, Status, and Vendor and Product ID. The table lists several drives, with the last one (Slot 2, ID 3) having its status set to 'CLONING'. A context menu is open over this row, showing options: 'Select', 'View clone progress', 'Abort clone', and 'Source failing drive'. The 'View clone progress' option is highlighted. At the bottom of the screen, there's a status bar with 'NONE' and 'NEW DRY'.

Slot	Chassis	ID	Size(MB)	Speed	LG_DRV	Status	Vendor and Product ID
1		0	319	20MB	0	ON-LINE	
2		1	319	20MB	0	ON-LINE	
2		2	319	20MB	0	ON-LINE	
2		3	319	20MB	0	CLONING	

**Note** With the precaution of untimely drive failure of yet another drive, when configured as **perpetual clone**, the spare drive will only stay mirrored to the source drive (the drive with signs of failure), but not replacing it until the source drive actually fails.

- When the spare drive is mirroring the source drive, any occurrence of drive failure (when there is no other spare drives) will force the spare drive to give up the mirrored data and resume its original role – it will become a spare drive again and start rebuilding the failed drive.

#### 5 The Detect, Clone+Replace Function:

- In **\View and Edit Configuration Parameters\Drive-side Parameters\Drive Predictable Failure Mode <SMART>**, choose **Detect, Clone+Replace**.
- Assign at least one spare drive to the logical drive. (Either Local Spare Drive or Global Spare Drive)
- When a drive (a logical drive member) detects the predictable drive failure, the controller will “clone” the drive with a spare drive. After the “clone” process is finished, it will replace the source drive (the drive which detects the predictable drive failure) immediately. The source drive will become a used drive and you may replace this drive with a new one.

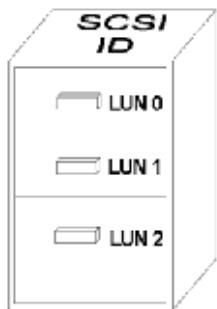
If you want to see the progress of cloning, press [ESC] to clear the notification message and see the status bar.

The source drive’s status will be re-defined as a **Used drive** and will be immediately replaced and pulled off-line. This drive should be replaced with a new one as soon as possible.

# 10.3 Host-side and Drive-side SCSI Parameters

## Foreword: FC Channel, ID and LUN

An FC channel (FC bus) can connect up to 126 devices (not including the controller itself). Each device has one unique SCSI ID. Two devices owning the same SCSI ID is not allowed.



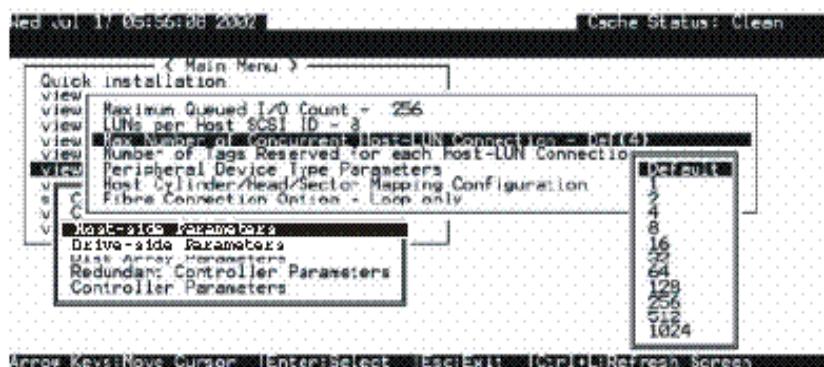
**Figure 10–4** SCSI ID LUNs

**Figure 10–4** is a very good example. If you are to file document into a cabinet, you must put the document into one of the drawers. From a SCSI point of view, a SCSI ID is like a cabinet, and the drawers are the LUNs. Each SCSI ID can have up to 32 LUNs (Logical Unit). Data can be stored into one of the LUNs of the SCSI ID. Most SCSI host adapters treat a LUN like another SCSI device.

## 10.3.1 Host-side SCSI Parameters

### *Maximum concurrent host LUN connection ("nexus" in SCSI):*

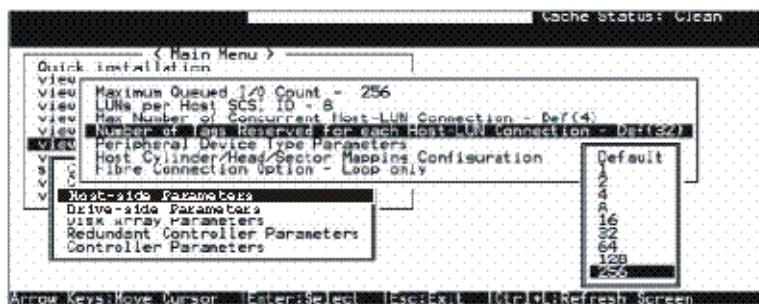
It is the arrangement of the controller internal resources for use with a number of the current host nexus. If there are four hosts (A, B, C, and D) and four host IDs/LUNs (ID 0, 1, 2 and 3) in this configuration, host A accesses ID 0 (one nexus), host B accesses ID 1 (one nexus), host C accesses ID 2 (one nexus) and host D accesses ID 3 (one nexus) - all queued in the cache - that is called 4 nexus. If there are I/Os in the cache with 4 different nexus, and another host I/O comes with a nexus different than the four in the cache (for example, host A access ID 3), controller will return "busy." Mind that it is "concurrent" nexus, if the cache is cleared up, it will accept four different nexus again. Many I/Os can be accessed via the same nexus.



From the Main Menu, select **View and Edit Configuration Parameters**, **Host-side Parameters**, then press [ENTER]. Choose **Max Number of Concurrent Host-LUN Connection**, then press [ENTER]. A list of available selections will appear. Move the cursor bar to an item, then press [ENTER]. Choose **Yes** in the dialog box that follows to confirm the setting. The default setting is 4.

### 10.3.1.1 Number of Tags Reserved for each Host-LUN Connection

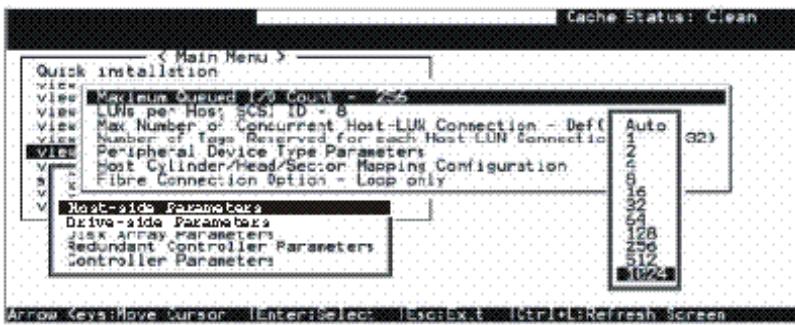
Each "nexus" has "32" (the default setting) tags reserved. When the host computer is sending 8 of I/O tags to the controller, and the controller is too busy to process all, the host might start to send less than 8 tags during every certain period of time since then. This setting ensures that the controller will accept at least 32 tags per nexus. The controller will be able to accept more than that as long as the controller internal resources allow - if the controller does not have enough internal resources, at least 32 tags can be accepted per nexus.



Choose **Host-side Parameters**, then press [ENTER]. Choose **Number of Tags Reserved for each Host-LUN Connection**, then press [ENTER]. A list of available selections will appear. Move the cursor bar to an item, then press [ENTER]. Choose **Yes** in the dialog box that follows to confirm the setting.

### 10.3.1.2 Maximum Queued I/O Count

This function allows you to configure the maximum number of I/O queue the controller can accept from the host computer.



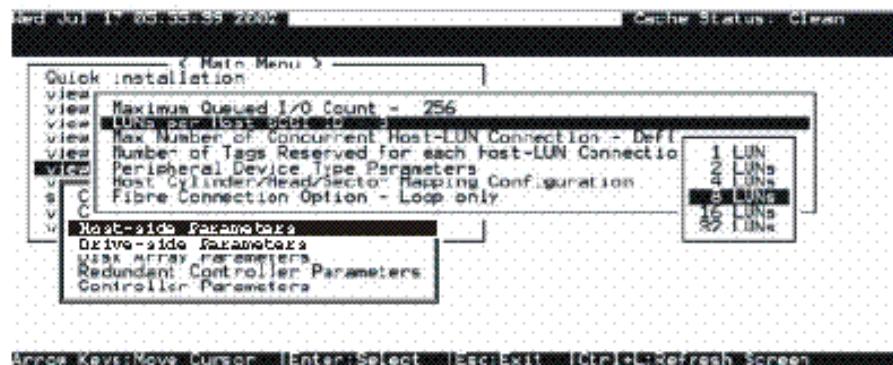
Choose **Host-side Parameters**, then press [ENTER]. Choose **Maximum Queued I/O Count**, then press [ENTER]. A list of available selections will appear. Move the cursor bar to an item, then press [ENTER]. Choose **Yes** in the dialog box that follows to confirm the setting.

This controller supports the following Host-side configurations:

- Maximum Queued I/O Count
- LUNs per Host SCSI ID

- Num of Host-LUN Connect
- Tag per Host-LUN Connect
- Peripheral Device Type Parameters,
- Cyl/Head/Sector Mapping Config
- Fibre connection option

### 10.3.1.3 LUNs per Host SCSI ID



Choose **LUNs per Host ID**, then press [**ENTER**]. A list of selections will appear. Move the cursor bar to an item, then press [**ENTER**]. Choose **Yes** in the dialog box that follows to confirm the setting.

### 10.3.1.4 LUN Applicability

If no logical drive has been created and mapped to a host LUN, and the RAID controller is the only device connecting to the host card, usually the operating system will not load the driver of the host FC adapter. If the driver is not loaded, the host computer will not be able to use the in-band SCSI utility to communicate with the RAID controller. This is often the case when users want to start configuring a RAID using management software from the host. It will be necessary to configure the **Peripheral Device Type** setting for the host to communicate with the controller. If the **LUN-0's only** is selected, only LUN-0 of the host ID will appear as a device with the user-defined peripheral device type. If **all undefined LUNs** is selected, each LUN in that host ID will appear as a device with the user-defined peripheral device type.

Different LUN applicability selections are available: **Device Type** selection, **Device Qualifier Support**, **Support Removable media**, **LUN-0's only** and **All undefined LUNs**. Please refer to the table of peripheral device settings for details concerning various operating systems.

### 10.3.1.5 Peripheral Device Type

For connection without a preset logical RAID unit to a host, the in-band SCSI protocol can be used for the host to "see" the RAID controller. Please refer to [Table 10-1](#). You will need to make adjustments in the following submenu: **Peripheral Device Type**, **Peripheral Device Qualifier**, **Device Support for Removable Media** and **LUN Application**.



### 10.3.1.6 In-band SCSI

#### **What is In-band SCSI?**

External devices require communication with the host computer for device monitoring and administration. Except for the regular RS-232, in-band SCSI can serve as an alternative means of management communication. The in-band SCSI technology translates the original commands into standard SCSI commands. These SCSI commands are then sent to and received by the controller using an FC cable.

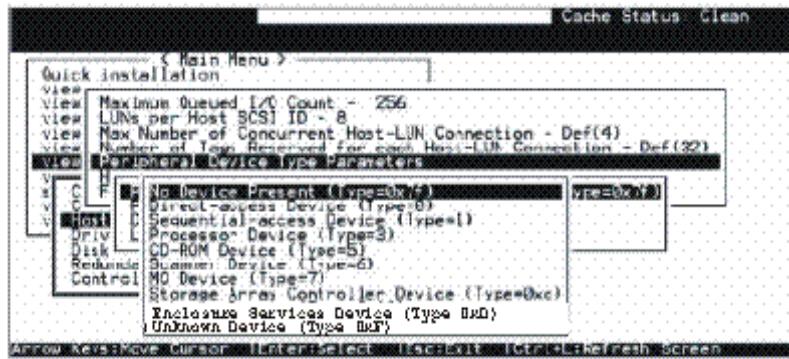
### 10.3.1.7 Peripheral Device Type Parameters for Various Operating Systems

A host can not “see” the controller *UNLESS* the following is configured:

- 1 a logical unit has been created
  - at least a logical unit is mapped to a host ID or LUN via the RS-232/front panel interface
- 2 the **in-band SCSI** connection with the host is established.
  - the RAID controller is configured to appear as a peripheral device on the channel bus connected to host

If users want to start configuring a RAID system from the host before any RAID configuration is made, the host will not be able to “see” the RAID controller. For instance, if users install the Java-based RAID manager on host computer, the in-band SCSI protocol should be applied to communicate between host and controller. In order for a host to “see” the controller, it will be necessary to define the controller as a peripheral device first.

Different host operating systems require different adjustments. Please refer to [Table 10–2](#) to find the proper settings for your host operating system. References to **Peripheral Device Qualifier** and **Device Support for Removable Media** are also included.

**Table 10–1** Peripheral Device Type Parameters

Operating System	Peripheral Device Type	Peripheral Device Qualifier	Device Support for Removable Media	LUN Applicability
Windows NT® 4.0	0x1f	connected	disabled	All Undefined LUNs
NetWare® 4.x/ Windows 2000	0x03	connected	disabled	All Undefined LUNs
SCO OpenServer 5.0x	0x7f	connected	either is okay	All Undefined LUNs
SCO UnixWare 2.1x, UnixWare 7	0x03	connected	either is okay	All Undefined LUNs
Solaris™ 2.5.x/2.6 (x86 and SPARC)	0x7f	connected	either is okay	All Undefined LUNs
Linux	0x03	connected	enabled	All Undefined LUNs

**Table 10–2** Peripheral Device Type Settings:

Device Type	Setting
No Device Present	0x7f
Direct-access Device	0
Sequential-access Device	1
Processor Type	3
CD-ROM Device	5
Scanner Device	6
MO Device	7
Storage Array Controller Device	0xC

**Table 10–2** Peripheral Device Type Settings:

Device Type	Setting
Enclosure Services Device	0xD
Unknown Device	0x1f

**10.3.1.8 Cylinder/Head/Sector Mapping:**

In the world of SCSI, the drive capacity is decided by the number of blocks. For some of the operating systems (Sun Solaris...etc.) the OS will read the capacity based on the cylinder/head/sector count of the drive. For Sun Solaris, the cylinder cannot exceed 65535, so user can choose *cylinder<65535*, the controller will automatically adjust the head/sector count, then the OS can read the correct drive capacity. Please refer to the related documents provided with your operating system.

Cylinder, Head, Sector counts are selectable from the menu. To avoid the difficulties with Sun Solaris configuration, the recommended values in the table below can be used.

**Table 10–3** Cylinder/Head/Sector Mapping under Sun Solaris

Capacity	Cylinder	Head	Sector
< 64 GB	?	64	32
64 - 128 GB	?	64	64
128 - 256 GB	?	127	64
256 - 512 GB	?	127	127
512 GB - 1 TB	?	255	127

Currently, Solaris does not support drive capacity larger than 1 terabyte.

**10.3.1.9 Configuring Sector Ranges/Head Ranges/Cylinder Ranges:****Figure 10–5** Select Sector Ranges

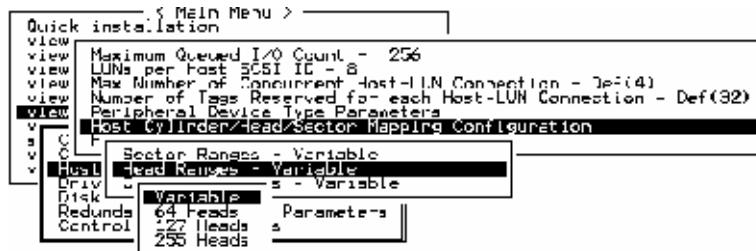


Figure 10-6 Select Head Ranges



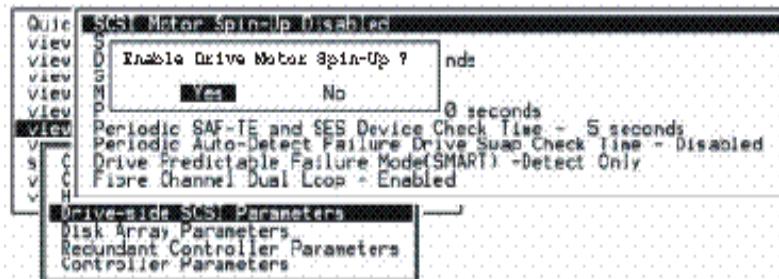
Figure 10-7 Select Cylinder Ranges

### 10.3.2 Drive-side Parameters



Choose **Drive-side Parameters**, then press [ENTER]. The Drive-side SCSI parameters menu will appear.

### 10.3.2.1 Motor Spin-up



The *motor spin-up* decides how the drives in a Disk Array are started. When the power supply is unable to provide sufficient current for all the hard drives and controllers that are powered-up at the same time, spinning-up the hard drives serially is one of the best ways of consuming lower Power-up current.

By default, all hard drives will start spinning up when powered-on. These hard drives can be configured so that all of them will not spin-up at the same time when powered-on. There are 2 methods for spinning-up the hard drive's motor:

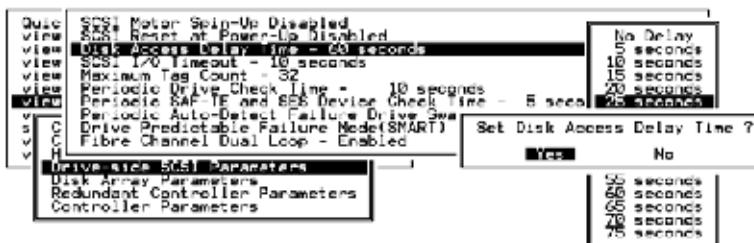
- Spin-up at Power-on,
- Spin-up serially at random sequence

The procedure for each brand/model of hard drive should vary.

**Important** If the drives are configured as “Delay Motor Spin-up” or “Motor Spin-up in Random Sequence,” some of these drives may not be ready at the moment when the controller accesses them when powered up. Increase the disk access delay time so that the controller will wait a longer time for the drives to be ready.

### 10.3.2.2 Disk Access Delay Time

Sets the delay time before the controller tries to access the hard drives after Power-on. The default is 15 seconds.



Choose **Disk Access Delay Time**, then press [ENTER]. A list of selections will appear. Move the cursor bar on a selection, then press [ENTER]. Choose **Yes** in the dialog box that follows to confirm the setting.

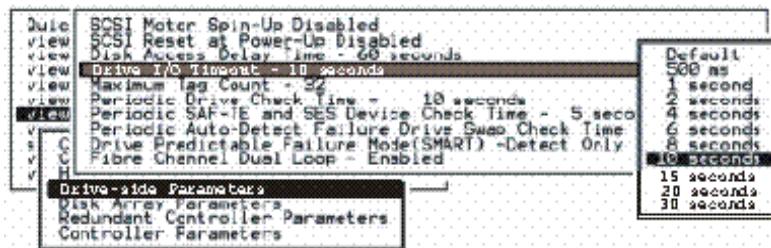
### 10.3.2.3 Drive I/O Timeout

The **Drive I/O Timeout** is the time interval for the controller to wait for a drive to respond. If the controller attempts to read data from or write data to a drive but the drive does not respond within the SCSI I/O timeout value, the drive will be considered as a failed drive.

When the drive itself detects a media error while reading from the drive platter, it usually retries the previous reading or re-calibrates the head. When the drive encounters a bad block on the media, it reassigned the bad block onto a spare block. However, it takes time to perform the above actions. The time to perform these operations can vary between different brands and models of drives.

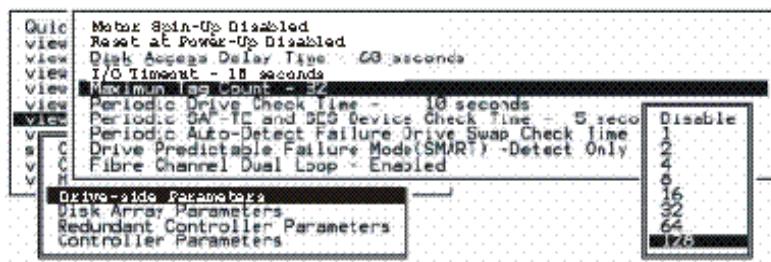
During SCSI bus arbitration, a device with higher priority can utilize the bus first. A device with lower priority will sometimes receive a drive I/O timeout when devices of higher priority devices keep utilizing the bus.

The default setting for **drive I/O Timeout** is 7 seconds. It is highly recommended not to change this setting. Setting the timeout to a lower value will cause the controller to judge a drive as failed while a drive is still retrying. Setting the timeout to a greater value will cause the controller to keep waiting for a drive, and it may sometimes cause a host timeout.



Choose **Drive I/O Timeout –Default (7 seconds)**, then press [ENTER]. A list of selections will appear. Move the cursor bar on a selection, then press [ENTER]. Choose **Yes** in the dialog box that follows to confirm the setting.

#### 10.3.2.4 Maximum Tag Count (Tag Command Queuing)

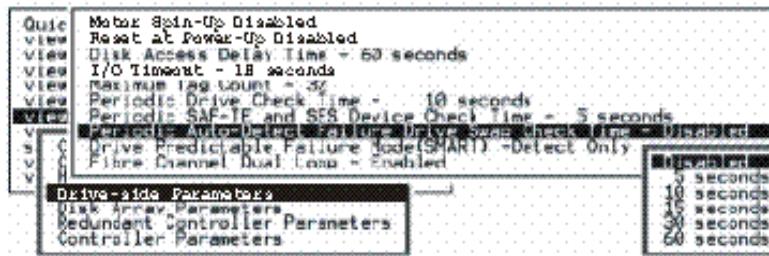


The controller supports tag command queuing with an adjustable maximum tag count from 1 to 128. The default setting is **Enabled** with a maximum tag count of 32. This setting can be changed or tag command queuing can be disabled. Choose **Maximum Tag Count**, then press [ENTER]. A list of available tag count numbers will appear. Move the cursor bar to a number, then press [ENTER]. Choose Yes in the dialog box that follows to confirm the setting.

**Important** Every time you change this setting, you must reset the controller for the changes to take effect.

Disabling Tag Command Queuing will disable the Write-Back Cache built in the hard drive.

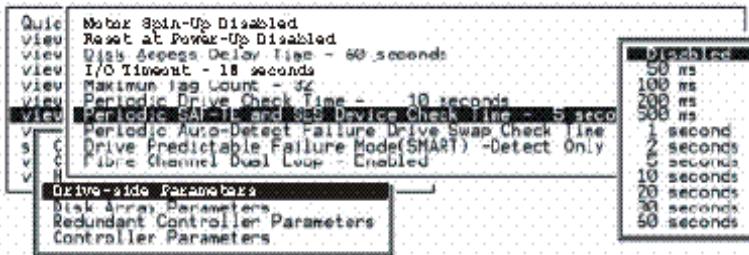
### 10.3.2.5 Detection of Drive Hot Swap Followed by Auto Rebuild



Choose **Periodic Auto-Detect Failure Drive Swap Check Time**; then press [**ENTER**]. Move the cursor to the desired interval; then press [**ENTER**]. Choose **Yes** in the dialog box that follows to confirm the setting.

The controller scans drive buses at this interval to check if a failed drive has been replaced. If a failed drive is replaced, the controller will proceed with the rebuild process.

### 10.3.2.6 SES Enclosure Monitoring

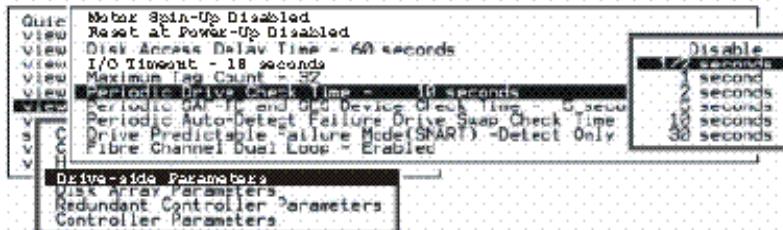


There are remote devices within your RAID enclosure being monitored via SES. Use this function to decide at what interval the controller will check the status of these devices. Choose **Periodic SES Device Check Time**; then press [**ENTER**]. Move the cursor to the desired interval; then press [**ENTER**]. Choose **Yes** in the dialog box that follows to confirm the setting.

### 10.3.2.7 Periodic Drive Check Time

The **Periodic Drive Check Time** is an interval for the controller to check all of the drives that were on the SCSI bus at controller startup (a list of all the drives that were detected can be seen under **View and Edit Drives**).

The default value is **Disabled**, meaning that if a drive is removed from the bus, the controller will not be able to know – so long as no host accesses that drive. Changing the check time to any other value allows the controller to check (at the selected time interval) all of the drives that are listed under **View and Edit Drives**. If any drive is then removed, the controller will be able to know – even if no host accesses that drive.

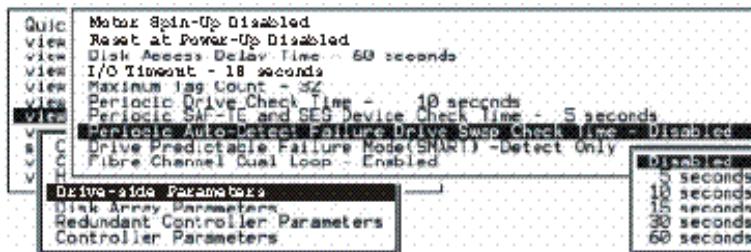


### 10.3.2.8 Idle Drive Failure Detection

#### Periodic Auto-Detect Failure Drive Swap Check Time

The **Drive-Swap Check Time** is the interval at which the controller checks to see whether a failed drive has been swapped. When a logical drive's member drive fails, the controller will detect the failed drive (at the selected time interval). Once the failed drive has been swapped with a drive that has adequate capacity to rebuild the logical drive, the rebuild will begin automatically.

The default setting is **Disabled**, meaning that the controller will not Auto-Detect the swap of a failed drive. To enable this feature, select a time interval.

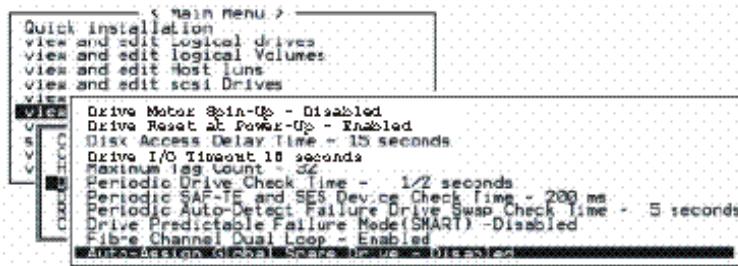


Choose **Periodic Drive Check Time**; then press [ENTER]. Move the cursor to the desired interval; then press [ENTER]. Choose **Yes** in the dialog box that follows to confirm the setting.

**Important** By choosing a time value to enable the "Periodic Drive Check Time," the controller will poll all of the connected drives in the controller's drive channels at the assigned interval. Drive removal will be detected even if a host does not attempt to access data on the drive.

If the "Periodic Drive Check Time" is set to "Disabled" (the default setting is "Disabled"), the controller will not be able to detect any drive removal that occurs after the controller has been powered on. The controller will only be able to detect drive removal when a host attempts to access the data on the drive.

### 10.3.2.9 Auto-Assign Global Spare Drive



The **Auto-Assign** function automatically use “New” or “Used” drives that are not included in any logical configurations as global spares. In the event of multiple drive failure, having more hot-spares can reduce the chance of failing more than one drive in an array.

Note that if a drive has a capacity smaller or apparently larger than the members of configured arrays, the controller may avoid using it as a global spare.

## 10.4 Monitoring and Safety Mechanisms

### 10.4.1 View Peripheral Device Status

Select **View and edit Peripheral Devices** on the main menu and press **[ENTER]**. Choose **View Peripheral Device Status**, then press **[ENTER]** again. The device list displays:

Below is a list of peripheral devices (enclosure modules) monitored by the RAID controller unit. Monitoring of device status depends on enclosure implementation and is accessed through different interfaces, e.g., SAF-TE, S.E.S., or I2C serial bus.

- 1 Enclosure Descriptor
- 2 Help Text
- 3 Power Supply
- 4 Device Type
- 5 Cooling Element
- 6 Temperature Sensors
- 7 Audible Alarm
- 8 Enclosure Services Controller Electronics
- 9 Display



Select the device interface then select individual module to check its status.



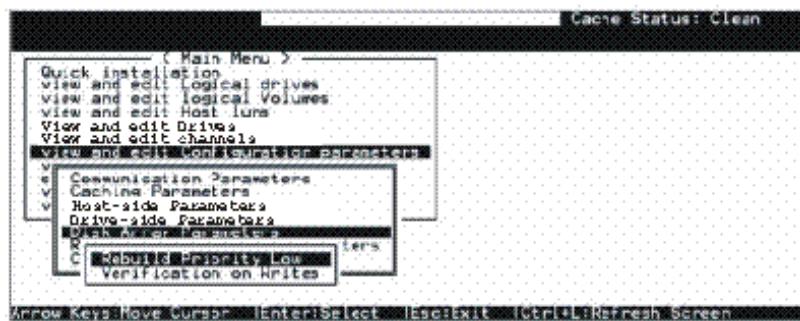
## 10.4.2 Controller Auto-Shutdown - Event Trigger Operations



Select **View and edit Peripheral Devices** on the main menu and press **[ENTER]**. Choose **Set Peripheral Device Entry and Event Trigger Option** by pressing **[ENTER]**. The auto-shutdown option displays.

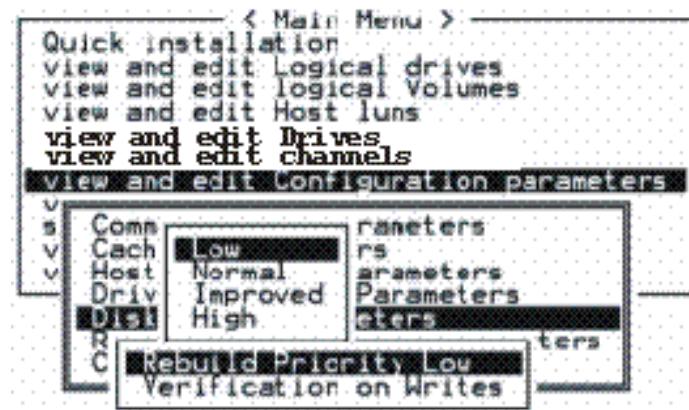
Select a configurable time span between the detection of exceeded temperature and the controller's commencing an automatic shutdown.

# 10.5 Disk Array Parameters



Select **View and edit Configuration parameters** on the Main Menu and press [ENTER]. Choose **Disk Array Parameters**, then press [ENTER] again. The Disk Array Parameters menu will appear.

## 10.5.1 Rebuild Priority



Choose **Rebuild Priority**, then press [ENTER]. A list of the priority selections (Low, Normal, Improved, or High) will appear. Move the cursor bar to a selection, then press [ENTER].

## 10.5.2 Verification on Writes

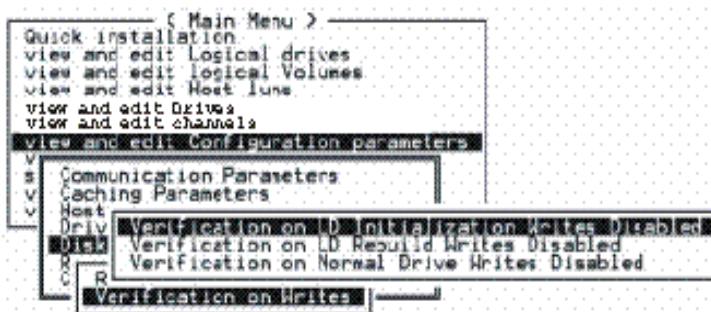
Errors may occur when a hard drive writes data. In order to avoid the write error, the controller can force hard drives to verify written data. There are three selectable methods:

- Verification on LD Initialization Writes  
Performs Verify-after-Write while initializing the logical drive.
- Verification on LD Rebuild Writes  
Performs Verify-after-Write during the rebuilding process.

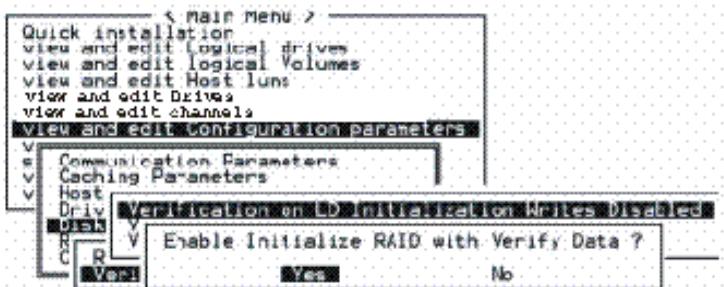
- Verification on LD Normal Drive Writes  
Performs Verify-after-Write during normal I/O requests.

Each method can be enabled or disabled individually. Hard drives will perform Verify-after-Write according to the selected method.

To decide under what condition the Verification on Writes will work, press [ENTER] on the **Verification on Writes** in the **Disk Array Parameters** menu. The items for selection will appear on screen.



Move the cursor bar to the desired item, then press [ENTER].

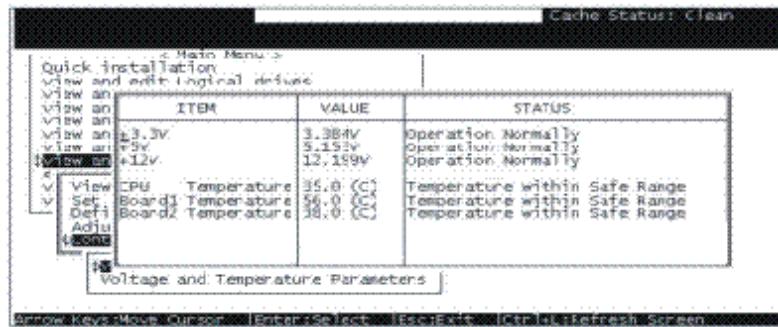


Choose **Yes** in the confirm box to enable or disable the function. Follow the same procedure to enable or disable each method.

**Important** The “verification on Normal Drive Writes” method will affect the “write” performance during normal use.

## 10.6 Controller Self-Monitoring

Open your PC Terminal Emulation screen. Enter the main menu and select **View and Edit Peripheral Devices**. Use the arrow keys to scroll down and select **Controller Peripheral Device Configuration**, **View Peripheral Device Status**, and then press [ENTER].



## 10.6.1 Changing Monitoring Thresholds

Open your PC Terminal Emulation utility. Enter the main menu and select **View and Edit Peripheral devices**. Use the arrow keys to scroll down and select **Controller Peripheral Device Configuration**, **Voltage and Temperature Parameters**, and confirm by pressing [**ENTER**].

Note that it is not recommended to change the threshold values unless you need to coordinate the RAID controller's values with that of your RAID enclosure. If a value exceeding the safety range is entered, an error message will prompt and the new parameter will be ignored.

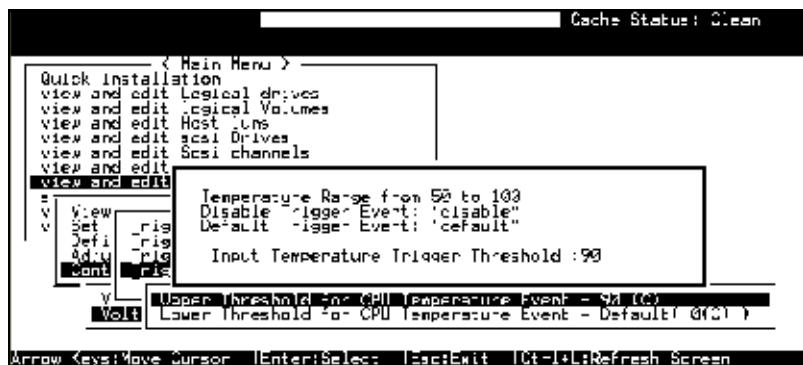
Under specific circumstances, for example, the controller operates in a system enclosure where the upper limit on ambient temperature is relatively high or low, adjusting the default thresholds can coordinate the controller status monitoring with that of the system enclosure.



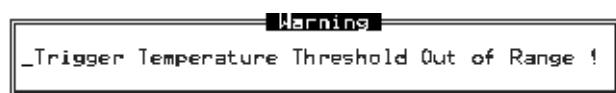
Scroll down and select an item to configure.



Select an item, for instance, **Trigger Thresholds for CPU Temperature Events**. Press [**ENTER**] and a list of selections will appear. You can change the upper or lower threshold values. Press [**ENTER**] to confirm.



A configuration window will prompt. Enter any value within the safety range. Value exceeding the safety range will be rejected by controller firmware.



Follow the same method to modify other threshold parameters.



# Chapter 11

# Redundant Controller

## 11.1 Operation Theory

The proceeding discussions will focus on the theories and the firmware configuration of a redundant controller system.

For interfaces' increasing demands on signal quality, setting redundant controllers using the cabling method may not all work well. Users who are familiar with the practice of redundant controller configuration, please jump to section [11.3 on page 189](#)

### 11.1.1 Setup Flowchart

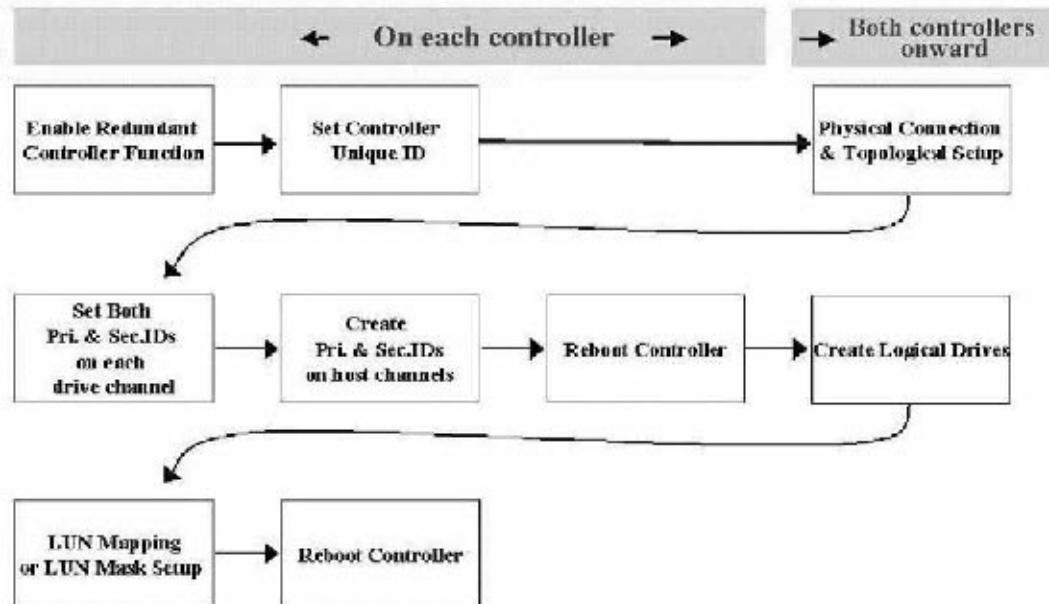
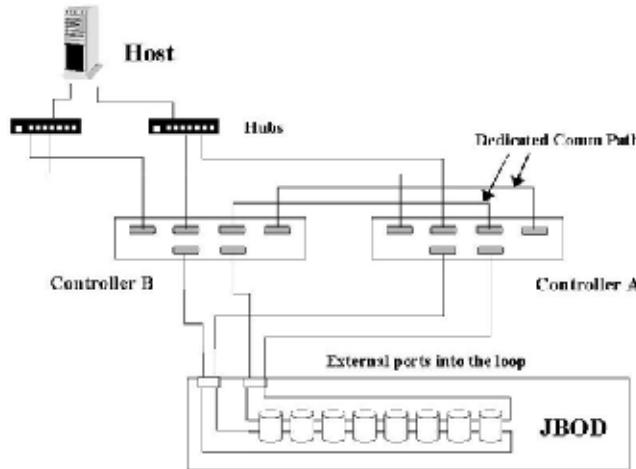


Figure 11–1 Redundant Controller Configuration Flowchart

## 11.1.2 Considerations with Physical Connection

### 11.1.2.1 Fibre Controller

The connection between controllers is flexible with the Fibre-based controllers. Integrators have many choices with the hardware link between controllers.



**Figure 11–2** Redundant Controller

The basic configuration rules are:

- 1 All channels should be connected to both controllers as shown in [Figure 11–2](#).
- 2 To reduce the chance of downtime, more than one hub or switch can be used to connect to host computer(s) for path redundancy. Drive-side dual loop is supported. Host-side dual loop requires the support of host management software.
- 3 For the Fibre-to-Fibre controllers or RAID systems, there are two options with the communications loops between controllers:
  - **Dedicated Communications Loops – “Dedicated RCC”**

The first option is choosing one or two Fibre loops as the dedicated communications paths. Two for communications is recommended for the path redundancy it provides.

Using two channels for the communications offers a greater throughput and hence a better performance.

- **Communications over Drive Loops – “Drive + RCC”**

Configure all drive loops into the **Drive + RCC** mode to let them share the communications traffic. The controllers can automatically distribute the communications traffic across all drive loops.

Workflow is balanced among loops. Using the **Drive + RCC** mode allows more channels to be used for drive connection. With a 6-channel controller, for instance, there can be as many as two

channels for host and four channels for drives (Drive + RCC). All channels can be used for IO traffic while the system is still benefited from controller communications.

### 11.1.3 Grouping Hard Drives and LUN Mapping

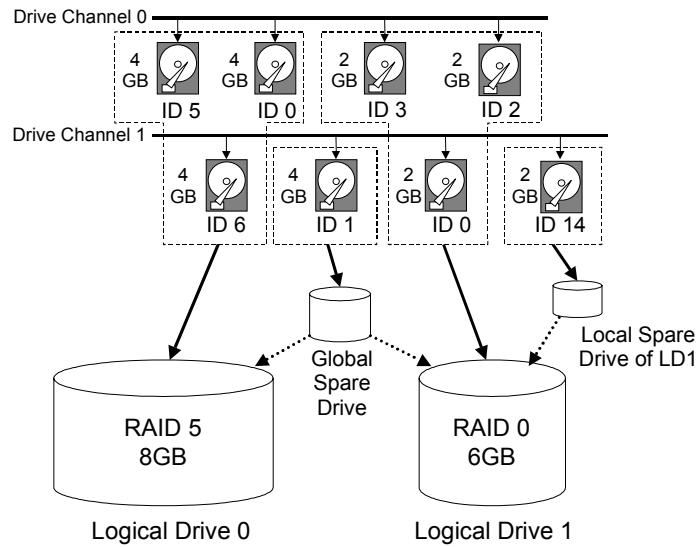
There are tunable settings that need to be considered when configuring the redundant controller system:

- 1 How many logical drives, logical volumes, or logical partitions and in what sizes?
- 2 System drive mapping (primary/secondary ID); how many storage volumes, in what sizes, will appear to which host port? and managed by which controller?
- 3 Will those storage volumes be accessed in a multi-host or multi-path configuration? as shared storage volumes?
- 4 Fault Tolerance: Configure the controllers so that they can Failover and Failback in a way transparent to host. Please refer to section [11.1.4, "Fault Tolerance", on page 182](#)

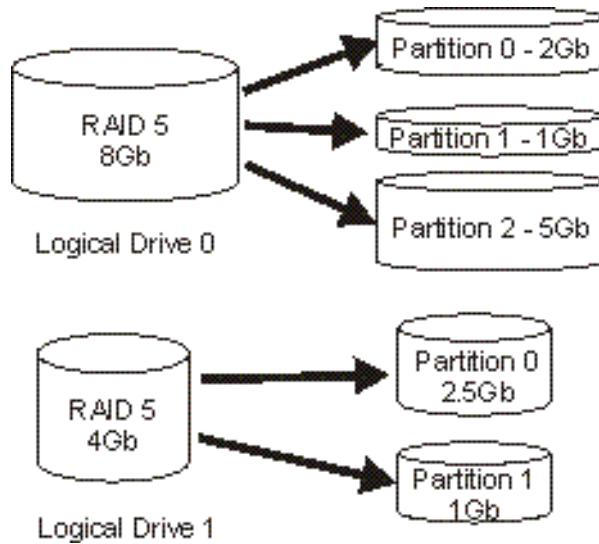
#### 11.1.3.1 Logical Drive, Logical Volume, and Partitioning

Listed below are the things you should know about before configuring a logical drive for a redundant controller system:/

- All configuration options are accessed through the Primary controller. In redundant mode, two controllers behave as one, and there is no need to repeat the configuration on another controller.
- Disk drive and array configuration processes are the same no matter using single or redundant controllers.
- Using logical configurations of drives as base units, system workload can be distributed to different controllers. Logical units can be manually assigned to different controllers to facilitate the active-active configuration.
- There is no limitation on drive allocations. The members of a logical drive do not have to come from the same drive channel. Grouping drives from different drive channels helps reduce the chance of downtime by channel bus failure.
- Each logical drive can be configured in a different RAID level and several logical drives can be striped across to compose a larger logical volume.
- Each of the logical units (logical drives, logical volumes, or one of their partitions) can be made available on host ports through host LUN mapping. Each of these associated host ID/LUNs appears as a virtual hard drive.

**Figure 11–3** Grouping Hard Drives

- As shown in [Figure 11–3](#), choosing members to compose an array can be flexible. You may divide a logical drive or logical volume into several partitions as diagrammed below, or use the entire logical drive as a single partition, with or without the support of one or several spare drives.

**Figure 11–4** Partitioning of Logical Units

- Each logical unit can be mapped to a host ID (Primary or Secondary ID) or the LUN numbers under host ID.

### 11.1.3.2 System Drive Mapping:

#### Primary and Secondary IDs

- **Host Channel**

When controllers are successfully combined, the array capacity is available through host port IDs, and these IDs are available as **Primary** or **Secondary** IDs.

- **Drive Channel:**

Since all channels are strung between two controllers, each channel is connected to two chip processors, and each processor must occupy one channel ID. In redundant mode, both a Primary and a Secondary ID must be present on all drive channels.

- **Primary-Secondary Relationship**

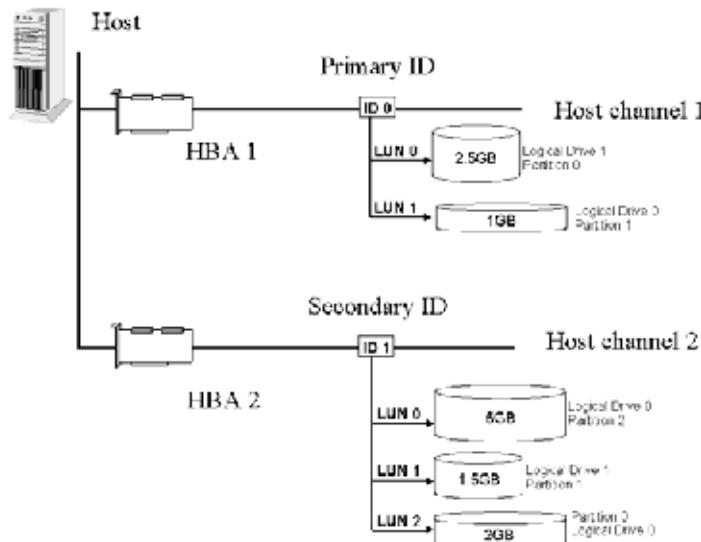
The Primary-Secondary relationship between the controllers is automatically determined by firmware. For some subsystem models, the relationship is determined by the controller slot. Refer to your hardware manual for details.

- **Create IDs**

You may have to create Primary and Secondary IDs separately on the host and drive channels if these IDs are not available. The configuration procedure will be discussed in section [11.3, "Configuration", on page 189](#)

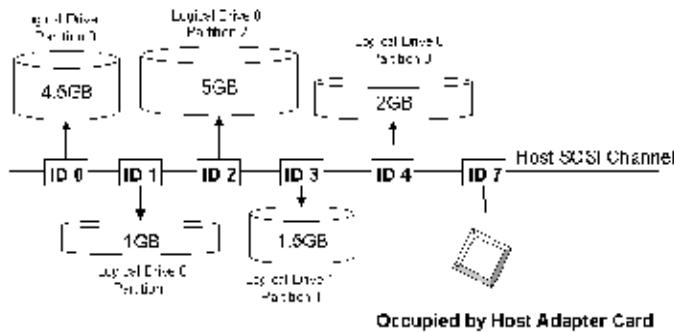
#### Mapping

- A logical unit mapped to a Primary ID will be managed by the Primary controller, and that mapped to a Secondary ID by the Secondary controller.
- Each SCSI ID (or an LUN under ID) will act as one virtual storage volume to the host computer.



**Figure 11–5** Mapping System Drives (Mapping LUNs)

- The diagram above displays a single host computer with two HBA cards allowing the connection of dual I/O paths. A host port ID is present on each host port and can be designated as the Primary ID or Secondary ID. Users may then map any logical configuration of drives to these LUNs. Workload can then be divided and managed by different controllers.



**Figure 11–6** Mapping System Drives (IDs)

- Some operating systems do not read multiple LUNs under single ID. As diagrammed above, you may have the host channel to present several IDs and map logical configurations to these IDs. Each of these IDs is identified as Primary or Secondary. As a rule for most operation systems, each configuration unit will be mapped to LUN0 under each ID.

**Important** A limitation is imposed on the 1Gbit Fibre channel, which supports single target ID per host port. Two host channels will be necessary for an active-active configuration. Each host channel presents one active ID (Primary or Secondary). If one controller should fail, the standby ID (chip) on the counterpart controller will be conducted to continue host's I/O requests.

- Note that standby IDs will not be seen by users. Firmware will activate the standby ID once it discovers the controller on which the active ID resides has failed.
- Multiple Target IDs are supported on the 2Gbit Fibre controllers, meaning an active-active configuration can be set with single host port.

## 11.1.4 Fault Tolerance

### ***What Is a Redundant Controller Configuration?***

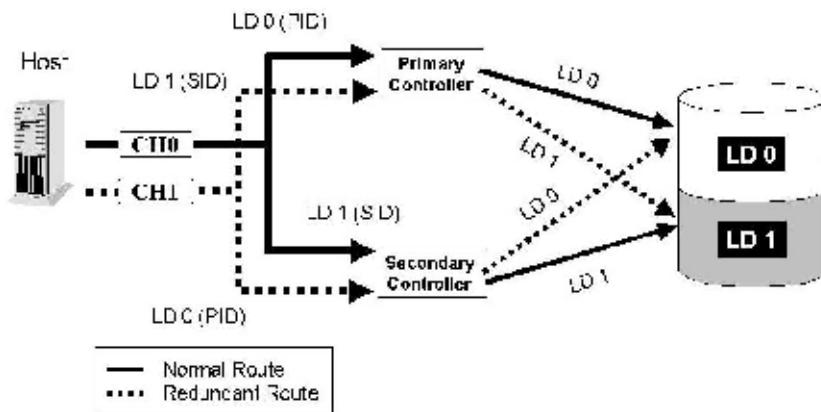
Hardware failures can occur. A simple parity error may sometimes cause a RAID system to completely hang up. Having two controllers working together will guarantee that at least one controller will survive the catastrophes and keep the system working. This is the logic behind having the redundant controllers – to minimize the chance of down time for a storage subsystem.

A redundant controller system uses two controllers to manage the storage arrays. It requires two controllers to work together and both must be working normally. During normal operation, each controller serves its I/O requests. If one controller should fail, the existing controller will temporarily take over for the failed controller until it is replaced. The Failover and Failback processes should be totally transparent to host and require only minimum efforts to restore the original configuration.

### How does Failover and Failback Work?

#### 1 Channel Bus

Figure 11–7 illustrates the redundant controller operation:



**Figure 11–7** Redundant Controller Channel Bus

The host computer is connected to both the Primary and the Secondary controllers. Each controller has two of its Fibre channels assigned as the host channels, with the other Fibre channels assigned to drive connections.

There are two logical drives. Logical drive 0 is assigned to the Primary controller (mapped to the Primary ID), and logical drive 1 assigned to the Secondary controller (mapped to the Secondary ID). Should one controller fail, the existing controller will manage the logical drive once belonged to the failed controller via the previously assigned ID (the standby ID).

The ID mapping is synchronized between the controllers. In fact, all the configuration settings can only be done through the Primary controller. See the table below:

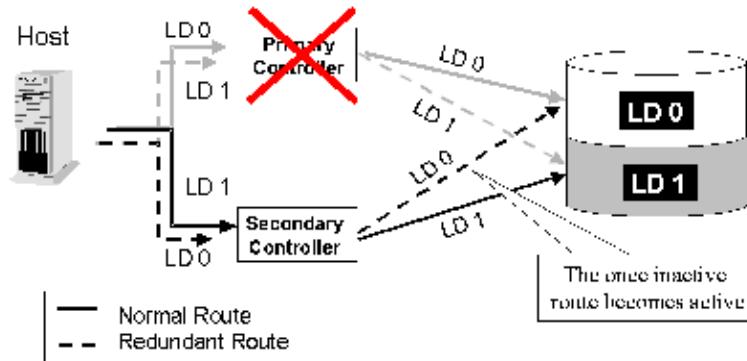
**Table 11–1** ID Mapping Status

Channel	ID	Status	Target Chip
0	0 (Primary ID)	Active	Pri. Controller channel 0
	1 (Secondary ID)	Standby	Sec. Controller channel 0
1	1 (Secondary ID)	Active	Sec. Controller channel 1
	0 (Primary ID)	Standby	Pri. Controller channel 1

In the event of controller failure (say, the Primary controller fails), the once inactive ID (chip) will become active:

**Table 11–2** ID Mapping Status (Controller Failed)

Channel	ID	Status	Target Chip
0	0 (Primary ID)		Failed!
	1 (Secondary ID)	Standby- Becomes Active!	Sec. Controller channel 0
1	1 (Secondary ID)	Active	Sec. Controller channel 1
	0 (Primary ID)		Failed!



**Figure 11–8** Controller Failover

For every channel that is actively serving I/Os, there is another on the alternate controller that stays idle and will inherit the task should its counterpart fail.

An exception to this is that active IDs may co-exist on single or different host channels. As long as I/O bandwidth is not of the concern, then standby chips are not necessary.

## 2 Controller Failover and Failback

In an unlikely event of controller failure, the existing controller will acknowledge the situation and disconnect with the failed controller. The existing controller will then behave as both controllers and serve all the host I/O requests.

System failover is transparent to the host. System vendors should be contacted for an immediate replacement of the failed unit.

### Replacing a Failed Unit

**Firmware Synchronization:** The replacement controller should have the same amount of memory and the same version of firmware installed. However, it is inevitable a replacement controller is usually running later revisions of firmware. To solve this problem, Firmware Synchronization is supported since firmware version 3.21. When the replacement controller is combined, the existing controller will downgrade the replacement's firmware so that both controllers will be running the same version of firmware.

Your system vendor should be able to provide an appropriate replacement controller.

**Rolling Firmware Upgrade:** When upgrading firmware in a redundant controller system, the Primary controller receives the new firmware. When appropriate time is found to reset both controllers, the Secondary controller's firmware is upgraded.

If host access is stopped and then firmware is upgraded, the controllers will flash new firmware and after controller reset, both controllers' firmware will be upgraded.

**Note** Rolling firmware upgrade is not supported with controllers running firmware 3.27 and is to be upgraded to firmware 3.31.

**Auto-Failback:** Once the failed controller is removed and a replacement controller is installed, the existing controller will acknowledge the situation. The existing controller will automatically combine with the replacement controller.

When the initialization process is completed, the replacement controller will always inherit the status of the Secondary controller. Then both controllers will be restored to the configuration that was preserved before controller failure. If the existing controller fails to re-establish this connection, you can also choose to "de-assert" the replacement controller through the existing controller so that both will serve the original drive mapping. If the controllers are reset they will be restored to their original role (primary or secondary) that was preserved before controller failure.

### 3 Active-to-Active Configuration:

Active-to-active configuration conducts all system resources to performance. Storage volumes can be equally assigned to both controllers and thus both are actively serving I/Os. This allows a flexible assignment of different logical units. Workload can then be manually distributed between controllers.

### 4 Traffic Distribution and Failover Process

Figure 11–9 illustrates a four-channel configuration using channel 0 as the communications path.

Channel 1 serves as the host interface and multiple IDs are created to facilitate active-active operation. Each controller occupies either a Primary ID or a Secondary ID on drive channels. One logical unit is assigned to the Primary controller and the other to the Secondary controller.

In the event when one controller fails, the existing controller will inherit IDs from the failed controller and continue I/Os.

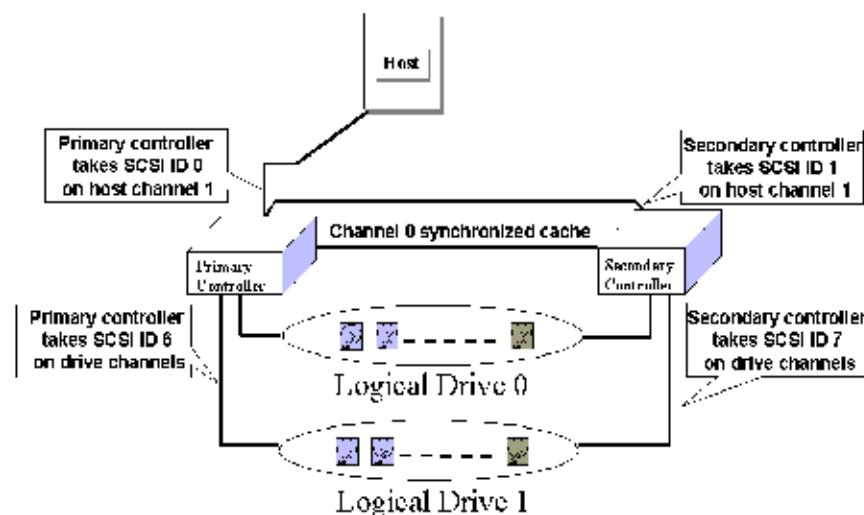


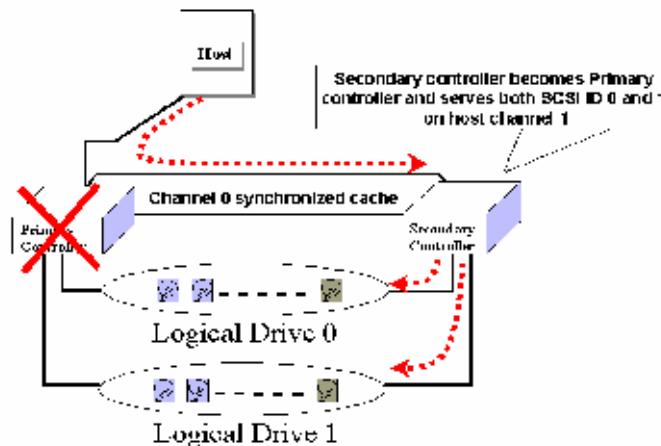
Figure 11–9 Traffic Distribution

	Logical Drive 0	Logical Drive 1
Host LUN Mapping	ID0 / LUN* (PID)	ID1 / LUN* (SID)
Logical Drive Assignment	Primary	Secondary
Drive Channel	2	3

Users can assign a logical unit either to the Primary or to the Secondary controller. Once the assignment is done, logical unit(s) assigned to the Primary controller can only be mapped to the Primary IDs on host channel; Logical unit(s) assigned to the Secondary controller can only be mapped to the Secondary IDs on host channel.

The channel ID (Primary/Secondary) assignment for a SCSI controller should look like this:

	Primary Controller ID	Secondary Controller ID
Host Chl SCSI ID	PID = 0	SID = 1
Drive Chl SCSI ID	7 (or 8 for the dual redundant chassis)	6 suggested (or 9 for the dual redundant chassis)



**Figure 11–10** Controller Failover

## 5 Controller Failure

Controller failure is managed by the surviving controller. The surviving controller disables and disconnects from its counterpart while gaining access to all signal paths. The existing controller then proceeds with the ensuing event notifications and take-over process. The existing controller is always the Primary controller regardless of its original status and any replacement combined afterwards will assume the role of the Secondary.

### Symptoms

- The surviving controller displays a “controller failure” message
- The surviving controller sounds alarm
- The **ATTEN** LED flashing on the surviving controller
- The v controller sends event messages notifying controller failure

### Connection

The channels of the two controllers that are connected together must be the same. For example, if controller A uses channel 2 to connect a group of drives, controller B must also use channel 2 to connect to the same group of drives.

## 11.2 Preparing Controllers

### 11.2.1 Requirements

To set up the redundant controller function, you must perform some basic steps. These steps start from cabling to firmware settings.

#### 11.2.1.1 Cabling Requirements

##### Communication Channels

Controller Communications (Cache Synchronization) Paths:

- **Controller:** KASHI
- **RCC cable:** Fibre Channel SFP

Using one or two of the I/O channels for controller communications is necessary especially when write-back caching is preferred. If controllers are running in write-back mode, a battery module is recommended for each controller.

##### Out-of-Band Configuration

- RS-232 cable (for Terminal Interface Operation) connection.
- Ethernet connection: If management through Ethernet is preferred, connect the Ethernet interface from both controllers to ports on a hub. In the event of controller failure, the IP address assigned to one controller will be inherited by the surviving controller. The Ethernet port connection will be continued.

##### Host and Drive Connection

- All channels must be connected between controllers

#### 11.2.1.2 Controller Settings

##### 1 Enable Redundant Controller

**Main Menu -> View and Edit Peripheral Devices -> Set Peripheral Device Entry -> Redundant Controller->Primary-> Disable Redundant Controller Function?**

##### 2 Controller Unique Identifier

Set unique identifier to each controller. **View & Edit Configuration Parameters ->Controller Unique Identifier ->Controller Unique Identifier.** Enter a hex number between 0 and FFFF (firmware 3.25 and above) for each controller.

### 3 Create Primary and Secondary IDs on Drive Channels

**View and Edit Channels -> Choose a Drive Channel -> Primary/Secondary Controller ID.**

### 4 Create Primary and Secondary IDs on Host Channels:

**View and Edit Channels -> Choose a host channel -> View and Edit SCSI ID -> Choose a SCSI ID -> Add/Delete Channel SCSI ID -> Primary/Secondary Controller** -> Add SCSI ID from the list. Reset the controller for the configuration to take effect.

### 5 Create Logical Configurations of Drives and assign each of them either to the Primary or the Secondary Controller:

**View and Edit Logical Drives** -> Select a RAID level -> Select member drives -> Logical Drive Assignments -> Create Logical Drive.

### 6 Map Each Logical Configuration of Drives to the Primary/ Secondary ID on host channel(s)

**View and Edit Host LUN** -> Choose a host channel-ID-controller combination -> Choose Logical Drive/Logical Volume/Physical Drive -> Map to Host LUN (Create Host LUN Entry).

**Note** The redundant controller function can be enabled via the terminal emulation program. Section [11.3](#) describes the procedures for using the terminal emulation.

## 11.2.2 Limitations

- Both controllers must be exactly the same. Namely, they must operate with the same firmware version and the same size of memory. If battery backup is preferred, both should be installed with a battery module.
- The takeover process should take less than two seconds to complete.
- In redundant mode, each controller takes an ID on each channel bus.
- Connection through Fibre hubs or switches is necessary for joining host (Fibre) interfaces between controllers.
- The controller defaults for ID settings are listed below:

Host interface	Host channel (Primary/Secondary)	Drive channel (Primary/Secondary)
Fibre	112 / 113...	119 / 120

## 11.2.3 Configurable Parameters

### 11.2.3.1 Primary or Secondary

If necessary, users can specify a particular controller as Primary or Secondary. By setting each controller to the **Autocfg** mode, the controllers will decide between themselves which is the Primary and which is the Secondary.

The controller firmware recognizes the two controllers used in a redundant configuration as Primary or Secondary. Two controllers behave as one Primary controller.

Once the redundant configuration takes effect, user's configurations and settings can only be done on the Primary controller. The Secondary controller then synchronizes with the configuration of the Primary controller, making the configurations of two controllers exactly the same.

The two controllers continuously monitor each other. When a controller detects that the other controller is not responding, the working controller will immediately take over and disable the failed controller.

However, it is not predictable which one of the controllers should fail. It is necessary to connect all other interfaces to both controllers so that a surviving controller can readily continue all the services provided for the RAID system.

#### **11.2.3.2 Active-to-Active Configuration**

Users can freely assign any logical configuration of drives to both or either of the controllers, then map the logical configurations to the host channel IDs/LUNs. I/O requests from host computer will then be directed to the Primary or the Secondary controller accordingly. The total drive capacity can be divided and equally serviced by both controllers.

The active-to-active configuration engages all system resources to performance. Users may also assign all logical configurations to one controller and let the other act as a standby.

#### **11.2.3.3 Active-to-Standby Configuration**

By assigning all the logical configurations of drives to one controller, the other controller will stay idle and becomes active only when its counterpart fails.

#### **11.2.3.4 Cache Synchronization**

The Write-Back caching significantly enhances controller performance. However, if one controller fails in the redundant controller configuration, data cached in its memory will be lost and data inconsistency might occur when the existing controller attempts to complete the writes.

Data inconsistency can be avoided using one or several of the I/O channels as the communications path between the controllers. The cached data is always synchronized in each other's memory. Each controller saves an exact replica of the cache content on its counterpart. In the event of controller or power failure, the unfinished writes will be completed by the existing controller.

#### **11.2.3.5 Battery Support**

Unfinished writes will be cached in memory in write-back mode. If power to the system is discontinued, data stored in the cache memory will be lost. Battery modules can support cache memory for a period of several days allowing the controller to keep the cached data. When two controllers are operating in write-back mode, it is recommended to install a battery module to each controller.

## **11.3 Configuration**

Listed below are steps necessary for configuring a redundant controller system:

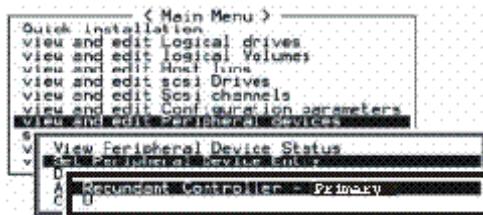
- 1 Configure, separately, each controller in the **Autoconfig** mode. When two controllers are powered on later, firmware will determine which is the Primary controller.

- 2 After the controller negotiation is completed, the communications between controllers should be established.
- 3 Create both a **Primary ID** and a **Secondary ID** on every drive channel.
- 4 Reset controller for the configuration to take effect.
- 5 Create Logical drives/logical volumes and assign each logical unit to the Primary or to the Secondary controller.
- 6 Proceed with Host LUN mapping. After mapping each logical unit to a Primary or Secondary ID/LUN on the host channel(s), the redundant controller configuration is complete.

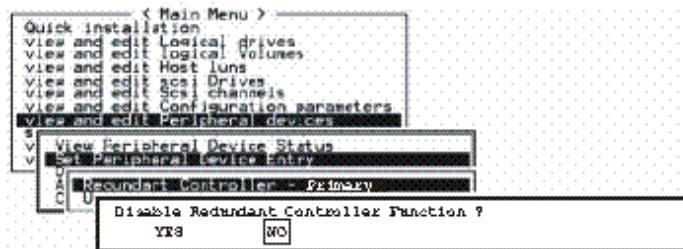
## 11.3.1 Via Terminal Emulation

### 11.3.1.1 Redundant Configuration Using Manual Setting

- 1 Power on controller 1. Make sure controller 2 is powered-off.
- 2 Enter the Main Menu. Use the arrow keys to navigate through the menus. Choose **View and Edit Peripheral Devices**, then press **[ENTER]**.
- 3 Choose **Set Peripheral Device Entry**, then press **[ENTER]**.
- 4 Choose **Redundant Controller - Primary**, and then press **[ENTER]**.



- 5 Power off controller 1, then power on controller 2. Set controller 2 to **Secondary** as described above.



- 6 Power off controller 2.
- 7 Power on drives, both controllers, and host computer(s) for the settings to take effect.

The Primary and Secondary controllers synchronize each other's configurations at frequent intervals through the established communications path(s). Write-back cache will be disabled if no sync. cache path exists.

\* Select **View and Edit Channels** from the **Main Menu**, the communications path will be displayed as **RCCOM** (Redundant Controller Communications).

< Main Menu >									
view and edit logical drives									
view and edit logical Volumes									
<b>RCCOM</b>									
Ch1	Mode	PID	SID	DefSynClk	DefWid	S	Term	Cur-SynClk	CurWid
0(D)	RCCOM								
1	Drive	8	9	40.0MHz	Wide	L	On		
2	Drive	8	9	40.0MHz	Wide	S	On		
3	Drive	8	9	40.0MHz	Wide	L	On		
4	Host	112	NA	1 GHz	Serial	F	NA		
5	Host	NA	113	1 GHz	Serial	F	NA		

### 11.3.1.2 Creating Primary and Secondary ID

Enter **View and Edit Channels**. Press [ENTER] and select the host or drive channel on which you wish to create Primary/Secondary ID.

Drive Channel									
Ch1	Mode	PID	STD	DefSynClk	DefWid	S	Term	CurSynClk	CurWid
0	Host	0	NA	40.0MHz	Wide	L	On	Async	Narrow
1	Drive	7	NA	40.0MHz	Wide	S	On	20.0MHz	Wide
channel Mode									
2	Primary controller scsi id				Wide	L	On	Async	Narrow
3	Secondary controller scsi id				Wide	L	On	Async	Narrow
4	view chip information				Wide	L	On	Async	Narrow
5	Data Rate Issue LIP				Wide	L	On	Async	Narrow
6	Serial F NA				Serial	F	NA		
7	Drive	119	NA	1 GHz	Serial	F	NA		

Host Channel									
Ch1	Mode	PID	SID	DefSynClk	DefWid	S	Term	CurSvrClk	CurWid
0	Host	0	NA	40.0MHz	Wide	L	On	Async	Narrow
channel Mode									
1	view and edit scsi id				Wide	S	On	20.0MHz	Wide
2	View Channel Host							Async	Narrow
3	View Device Port				0 0 (Primary Controller)			Async	Narrow
4	Data Rate				Add Channel SCSI ID			Async	Narrow
5	Issue LIP				0	Primary controller		Async	Narrow
6	View chip inFor				Secondary Controller			Async	Narrow
7	Drive	7							
8	Drive	119	NA	1 GHz	Serial	F	NA		
9	Drive	119	NA	1 GHz	Serial	F	NA		

The configuration change will only take effect after controller reset.

### 11.3.1.3 Assigning Logical Drives to the Secondary Controller

A logical drive can be assigned to the Primary or Secondary controller. By default, logical drives will be automatically assigned to the Primary controller. It can be assigned to the Secondary controller if the host computer is also connected to the Secondary controller.

Access **View and Edit Logical Drives** from Main Menu. Create a logical drive by selecting members and then a selection box will appear on the screen. Move cursor bar to **Logical Drive Assignments** and press [ENTER] if you want to assign logical drive to the Secondary controller.

LG	ID	LV	RAID	Size(MB)	Status	O	MLH	MSB	MFL	NAME
LG	1F10E0040	NA	RAIDS	9998	GOOD	S	3	1	0	
<b>Logical Drive Assignment</b>										
Maximum Drive Capacity : 945MB										
Assign Secondary Drives										
Logical Drive Assignment										
4 Redundant Controller Logical Drive Assign to Secondary Controller ?										
5					Yes					No
6										
7										

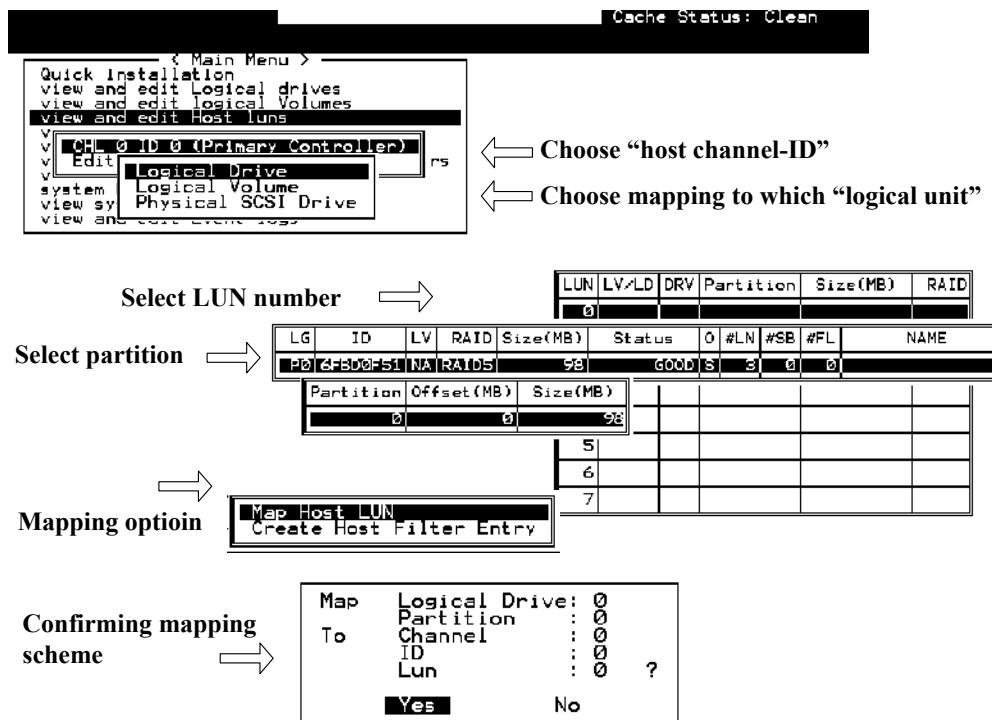
Logical drive assignment can also be changed after a logical drive is created. Create a logical drive or choose an existing logical drive, then press [ENTER] to see the logical drive menu. Choose **Logical Drive Assignments**, then press [ENTER]. Choose Yes and press [ENTER] to confirm reassignment to the Secondary Controller.

LG	ID	LV	RAID	Size(MB)	Status	O	MLH	MSB	MFL	NAME
LG	1F10E0040	NA	RAIDS	9998	GOOD	S	3	1	0	
<b>Logical Drive Assignment</b>										
View scsi drives										
Delete logical drive										
Partition logical drive										
Logical drive Name										
<b>Logical Drive Assignment</b>										
Redundant Controller Logical Drive Assign to Secondary Controller ?										
5					Yes					No
6										
7										

The reassignment is evident from the **View and Edit Logical Drives** screen. **S0** indicates that the logical drive is logical drive 0 assigned to the Secondary Controller.

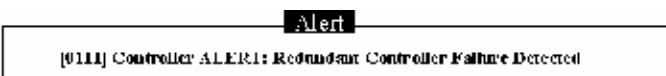
LG	ID	LV	RAID	Size(MB)	Status	O	MLH	MSB	MFL	NAME
LG	1F10E0040	NA	RAIDS	99	GOOD	S	3	1	0	
P1	4DB655C2	NA	RAIDS	99	GOOD	S	3	0	0	
2										
3										
4										
5										
6										
7										

### 11.3.1.4 Mapping a Logical Drive/Logical Volume to the Host LUNs



### 11.3.1.5 Terminal Interface View of Controller Failure

*What will happen when one of the controllers fails?*



After a controller takes over, it will act as both controllers. If it was the Primary controller that failed, the Secondary controller becomes the Primary controller. If the failed controller is replaced by a new one later, the new controller will assume the role of the Secondary controller.

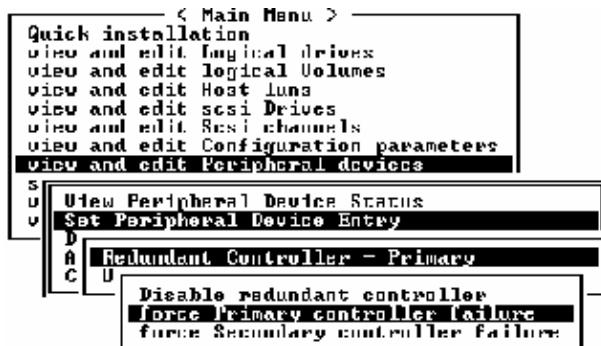
**Note** Some operating systems (SCO, UnixWare, and OpenServer, for example) will not attempt to retry accessing the hard disk drives while the controller is taking over.

### 11.3.2 When and How Is the Failed Controller Replaced?

Remove the failed controller after the take-over of the "working" controller has been completed.

When the new controller is connected, the existing controller will automatically start initializing the replacement controller.

### 11.3.2.1 Forcing Controller Failover for Testing



This function is reserved for de-bugging.

Testing the failover functionality can be performed using the following methods.

**1 Pulling out one of the controllers to simulate controller failure**

Pull out either the primary or the secondary controller

An error message will display immediately with sounded alarm. The existing controller takes over the workload within a second. Clear all errors by pressing the **ESC** key. You may now install the controller once removed after all activities have been taken over by the existing controller. It may take a while for the controllers to finish re-initialization and assuming their load.

**2 Failover by "Forcing controller failure"**

Select **View and Edit Peripheral Devices**, **Set Peripheral Device Entry**, and **Redundant Controller Primary/Secondary**.

Select **Force Primary/ Secondary Controller Failure**. You may now pull out the controller you had just disabled. I/Os should be continued by the existing controller. Continue the aforementioned procedure to complete the test.

**Warning** **This function should only be performed for testing the redundant controller functionality before any critical data is committed to drives. Although the controller is designed to be hot-swappable, unpredictable failures may occur during the process, i.e. improper handling of PCB boards while replacing the controller.**

### 11.3.2.2 RCC Status (Redundant Controller Communications Channel)



The item is display only, showing the current communications route.

### 11.3.2.3 Secondary Controller RS-232

This is an option reserved for debug purposes. When enabled, you can access the secondary controller through its serial port. When combined into a redundant controller system, only status display is available through the terminal session with a secondary controller. No configuration change can be done through a secondary controller.

### 11.3.2.4 Remote Redundant Controller



This function enables two partner controllers to be connected by FC links over an extended distance; e.g., between two campus buildings. This is an advanced option reserved for system integrators. For more details, please contact Infortrend Technical Support.

### 11.3.2.5 Cache Synchronization on Write-Through



If your redundant controller system is not operating with Write-back caching, you may disable the synchronized cache communications. Your system can be spared of the efforts mirroring and transferring data between partner controllers. This tremendously increases array performance in the redundant controller configuration.

## Chapter 12

# Record of Settings

In addition to saving the configuration data in NVRAM to disk, keeping a hard copy of the controller configuration is also recommended. This will speed the recreation of the RAID in the event of a disaster.

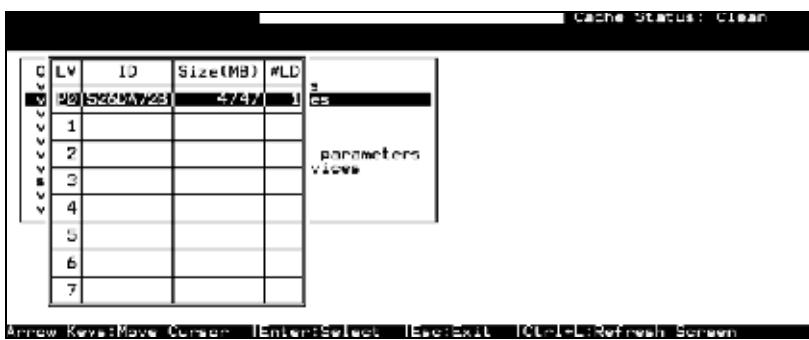
The following tables are provided as a model for recording the configuration data.

As a general rule, the configuration data in the NVRAM should be saved to disk or as a file whenever a configuration change is made (see section [8.14 on page 119](#)).

# 12.1 View and Edit Logical Drives

Cache Status: Clean											
C	LG	ID	LV	RAID	Size(MB)	Status	D	ALN	MSB	VFL	NAME
v	001	204857600	0	RAID0	147	GOOD	S	4	1	0	
v	1			NONE							
v	2			NONE							
v	3			NONE							
v	4			NONE							
v	5			NONE							
v	6			NONE							
v	7			NONE							

## 12.2 View and Edit Logical Volumes



## 12.3 View and Edit Host LUNs



Host Channel	Pri./Sec. Controller	SCSI ID	LUN	Logical Drive/ Logical Volume	Partition	Size

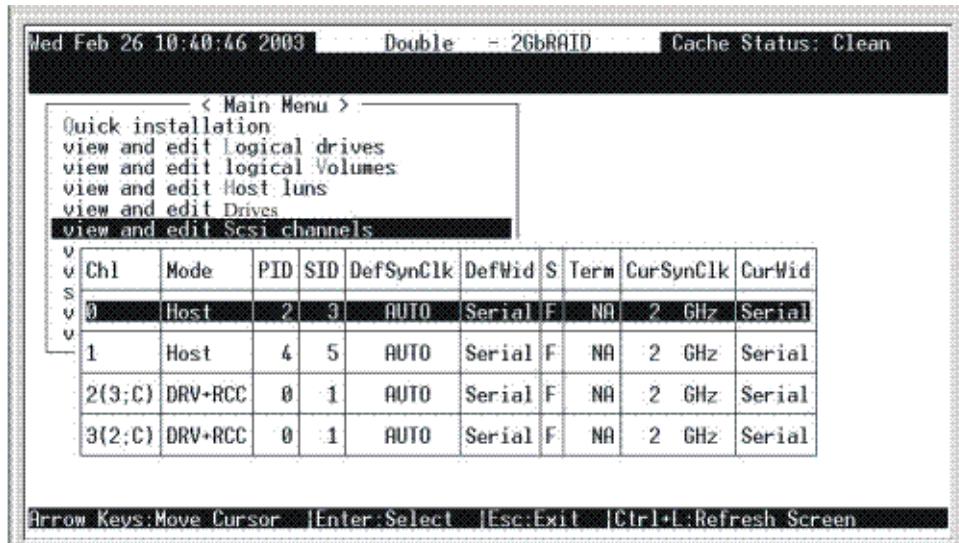
Host-ID/WWN	Name List



## 12.4 View and Edit Drives

Cache Status: Clear							
Quic view view view view view view view view view view view view view	Slot	Ch#	ID	Size(MB)	Speed	LG DRV	Status
		1	0	9999	20MB	0	ON-LINE
		1	1	9999	20MB	0	ON-LINE
		1	2	9999	20MB	0	ON-LINE
		1	3	9999	20MB	0	ON-LINE
		1	4	9999	20MB	0	STAND-BY
		1	5	9999	20MB	NONE	FRMT DRV
		1	6	9999	20MB	NONE	USED DRV
		1	8	9999	20MB	NONE	FRMT DRV

## 12.5 View and Edit Channels



## 12.6 View and Edit Configuration Parameters



**Table 12-1** RS-232 Port Configuration Parameters: COM 1 (RS-232 Port)

Baud Rate	[ ] 2400 [ ] 4800 [ ] 9600 [ ] 19200 [ ] 38400
Data Routing	[ ] Direct to Port [ ] Through Network
Terminal Emulation	[ ] Enabled [ ] Disabled

**Table 12-2** RS-232 Port Configuration Parameters: COM 2 (Redundant Controller Port)

Baud Rate	[ ] 2400 [ ] 4800 [ ] 9600 [ ] 19200 [ ] 38400
Data Routing	[ ] Direct to Port [ ] Through Network
Terminal Emulation	[ ] Enabled [ ] Disabled

**Table 12-3** Caching Parameters

Write-back Cache	[ ] Enabled [ ] Disabled
Optimization for	[ ] Random I/O [ ] Sequential I/O

**Table 12-4** Host Side SCSI Parameters

Maximum Queued I/O Count	[ ] Auto [ ] _____
LUNs per Host SCSI ID	[ ] 1 LUN [ ] 2 LUNs [ ] 4 LUNs [ ] 8 LUNs
Number of Tags Reserved for each Host-LUN connection	_____
Peripheral Device Type Parameters	Peripheral Device Type - Device Qualifier - Removable media - LUN applicability

**Table 12–4** Host Side SCSI Parameters

<b>Maximum Queued I/O Count</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Auto <input type="checkbox"/> _____
Host Cylinder/Head/Sector Mapping configuration	Cyanide -r Head - Sector -
Fibre Connection Options	_____

**Table 12–5** Drive Side Parameters

Drive Motor Spin-up	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled <input type="checkbox"/> Disabled
Disk Access Delay Time	<input type="checkbox"/> No Delay _____ Seconds
SCSI I/O Timeout	<input type="checkbox"/> Default _____
Maximum Tag Count	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled _____
Periodic Drive Check Time	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled _____
Periodic SAF-TE and SES Device Check Time	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled _____
Periodic Auto-Detect Failure Drive Swap Check Time	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled _____
Drive Predictable Failure Mode	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled <input type="checkbox"/> Detect only <input type="checkbox"/> Detect and Perpetual Clone <input type="checkbox"/> Detect and Clone + Replace
Fibre Channel Dual Loop	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled <input type="checkbox"/> Disabled

**Table 12–6** Disk Array Parameters

Rebuild Priority	<input type="checkbox"/> Low <input type="checkbox"/> Normal <input type="checkbox"/> Improved <input type="checkbox"/> High
Verifications on Writes	
Verifications on LD Initialization Writes	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled <input type="checkbox"/> Disabled
Verifications on LD Rebuild Writes	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled <input type="checkbox"/> Disabled
Verifications on Normal Drive Writes	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled <input type="checkbox"/> Disabled

**Table 12–7** Redundant Controller Parameters

Redundant Controller Communication Channel	_____
--------------------------------------------	-------

**Table 12–8** Controller Parameters

Controller Name	<input type="checkbox"/> Not Set _____
Password Validation Timeout	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled <input type="checkbox"/> 1 minute <input type="checkbox"/> 2 minutes <input type="checkbox"/> 5 minutes <input type="checkbox"/> Always Check
Controller Unique Identifier	_____
SDRAM ECC	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled <input type="checkbox"/> Disabled

## 12.7 View and Edit Peripheral Devices



**Table 12–9** Set Peripheral Device Entry

Redundant Controller	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled
Power Supply Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled
Fan Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled
Temperature Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled
UPS Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled

**Table 12–10** Define Peripheral Device Active Signal

Power Supply Fail Signal	<input type="checkbox"/> Active High	<input type="checkbox"/> Active Low
Fan Fail Signal	<input type="checkbox"/> Active High	<input type="checkbox"/> Active Low
Temperature Alert Signal	<input type="checkbox"/> Active High	<input type="checkbox"/> Active Low
UPS Power Fail Signal	<input type="checkbox"/> Active High	<input type="checkbox"/> Active Low
Drive Failure Outputs	<input type="checkbox"/> Active High	<input type="checkbox"/> Active Low

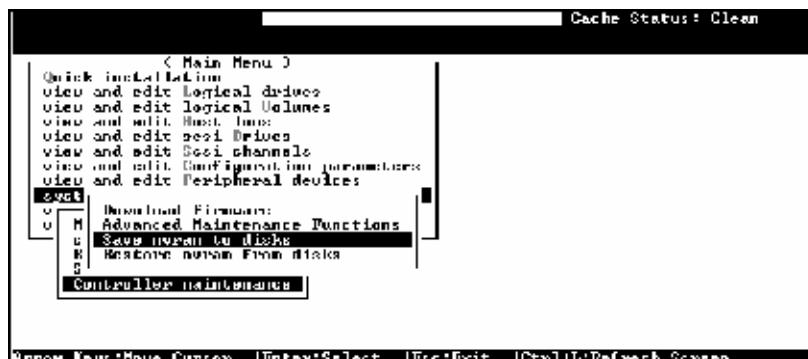
**Table 12–11** View System Information

Total Cache Size	<input type="checkbox"/> EDO DRAM	<input type="checkbox"/> Normal DRAM _____ MB
Firmware Version		
Bootrecord Version		
Serial Number		
Battery Backup	<input type="checkbox"/> On	<input type="checkbox"/> Off

**Table 12–12** Event Threshold Parameters

Thresholds for +3.3V	Upper _____	Lower _____
Thresholds for +5V	Upper _____	Lower _____
Thresholds for +12V	Upper _____	Lower _____
Thresholds for CPU temperature	Upper _____	Lower _____
Thresholds for Board Temperature	Upper _____	Lower _____

## 12.8 Save NVRAM to Disk, Restore from Disk



Update Firmware	Date	Save NVRAM to Disk or File	Date/Location	Restore NVRAM from Disk	Date

## 12.9 RAID Security: Password



**Table 12-13** RAID Security

Controller Name	Password (_____)
-----------------	------------------

## Chapter 13

# Troubleshooting and Problem Solving

## 13.1 Overview

The Galaxy 16m Enclosure includes a processor and associated monitoring and control logic to enable it to diagnose problems within the enclosure's power, cooling and drive systems.

The Enclosure Services Processor is housed along with the Ops Panel in the rear of the enclosure.

The sensors for power and cooling conditions are housed within the Power Supply/Cooling modules. There is independent monitoring for each unit.

If a fault is indicated on the Ops Panel, please refer to [Table 13–2](#).

### 13.1.1 Emulation Limitations

Each Controller presents each PATA/SATA disk drive as a single ported FC device. However unlike real FC-AL device certain data such as emulated WWN is not available on Power On, so the emulated devices will not present on the FC loop and participate in FC loop initialization until the drive has spun up. Please note that your RAID Head/Host system needs to be aware of this extra spin up time during Power On situations, whether they be planned or not planned (e.g. as the result of an unexpected power interrupt). Where some features, such as mode pages are not directly supported these will be emulated by the device, but changing these mode pages may not cause a change in the drive's behavior. Where an equivalent function exists, e.g. SMART data, the ATA SMART data will be presented to the Host through the FC SCSI command set.

### 13.1.2 Initial Start-up Problems

#### 13.1.2.1 Faulty Cords

First check that you have wired up the subsystem correctly. Then, if:

- cords are missing or damaged
- plugs are incorrect
- cords are too short

Call your supplier for a replacement.

### 13.1.2.2 Alarm Sounds On Power Up

Please refer to Section [13.3](#).

### 13.1.2.3 Green “Signal Good” LED on Controller Not Lit

Check that the Rx and Tx cables have not been reversed during installation.

### 13.1.2.4 Computer Doesn’t Recognize the Galaxy 16m Subsystem

- 1 Check that the FC-AL interface cables from the Galaxy 16m enclosure to the host computer, or RAID controller, are fitted correctly.
- 2 Check the Enclosure ID settings on your Galaxy 16m subsystem and on your system host.
- 3 Check that the LEDs on all installed drive carrier modules are illuminated Green. Note that the drive LEDs will not be lit during drive spinup.
- 4 Check that all drive carrier modules have been correctly installed.
- 5 Check that there is a valid FC\_AL signal present at the I/O connector (see section [2.5.1](#).) If there is no signal present check that the cable has not been reversed during installation.
- 6 Check that the Controller I/O module setup as follows:
  - Check that the Controller I/O module has been correctly installed and all external links and cables are securely fitted.
  - Check the maximum cable length has not been exceeded.

## 13.2 LEDs

Green LEDs are always used for good or positive indication, flashing Green/Amber if non-critical conditions exist. Amber LEDs indicate there is a critical fault present within the module.

### 13.2.1 Power Supply/Cooling Module

The Power Supply Cooling LEDs are shown in [Table 13-1](#).

- Under Normal conditions the LEDs should all be illuminated constant GREEN
- If a problem is detected the color of the relevant LED will change to AMBER.

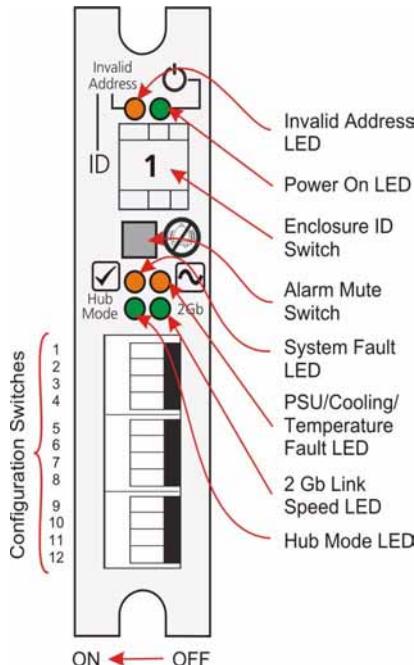
**Table 13–1** PSU LEDs

AC PSU			-48V DC PSU		
 Power AC Fan Power Good Fail Fault Fault			 Power DC Fan Power Good Fail Fault Fault		
PSU Good	Green		PSU Good	Green	
AC input Fail	Amber		Battery Fail	Amber	
Fan Fault	Amber		Fan Fault	Amber	
DC Output Fail	Amber		DC Output Fail	Amber	

### 13.2.2 Ops Panel

The Ops Panel displays the aggregated status of all the modules. The Ops Panel LEDs are shown in [Figure 13–1](#) and defined in [Table 13–2](#). For details on how to remove and replace a module see [Section 13.8](#).

**Note** The Ops Panel is supplied as an integral part of the Enclosure core product and is not user replaceable.

**Figure 13–1** Ops Panel

**Table 13–2 Ops Panel LED States**

LED	Definition	Color	Normal Status	Fault Status
<b>Power On</b>	Enclosure Powered On	Green	On	Off
<b>System Fault</b>	System/ESI Fault	Amber	Off	On
<b>PSU Fault</b>	PSU Fault/ Cooling Temperature Fault	Amber	Off	On
<b>2Gb Link Speed</b>	Indicates link speed	Green	On = 2Gb Off = 1Gb	- -
<b>Hub Mode</b>	Indicates H0 -H0 and H1 - H1 Hubbed	Green	On	Off
<b>Invalid Address</b>	Not Used		-	-

**Table 13–3 Ops Panel LED Functionality**

Status	BBU LED	Controller Fault LED	Ops Panel System Fault LED
<b>Battery LED Functions</b>			
Power ON Fully Charged	OFF	OFF	OFF
Power ON and Charging BBU	Flashing	OFF	OFF
BBU Voltage Below 2.5V	ON	ON	ON
Temperature Out of Range	ON	OFF	OFF
BBU Missing or Faulty	ON	ON	ON
<b>Cache LED Functions</b>			
Power ON Cache Empty	OFF	OFF	OFF
Power ON Cache Dirty	ON	OFF	OFF
Power ON Multi Bit ECC Errors	ON	ON	ON

## 13.3 Audible Alarm

The Ops Panel also includes an Audible Alarm which indicates when a fault state is present. The following conditions will activate the Audible Alarm:

- Drive Fault
- Fan Fault
- Voltage out of range
- Over temperature
- Thermal overrun
- System fault

### 13.3.1 Audible Alarm Mute

When the Audible Alarm sounds, it may be muted by pressing the Alarm Mute push-button. Automatic muting will take place after two minutes if the mute switch is not manually operated. The Alarm Mute push-button is located above the indicators on the Ops Panel (see [Figure 13–1](#)).

When the alarm is muted it will continue to sound with short intermittent bleeps to indicate that a problem still exists. It will be silenced when all problems are cleared. (See also Thermal Shutdown states, Section [13.4.5](#)).

#### LED Test Mode

The Alarm Mute push-button can also be used to test the LEDs on the Ops Panel. When the Mute push-button is held, all LEDs will be illuminated if there are no faults present.

## 13.4 Troubleshooting

The following sections describe common problems, with possible solutions, which can occur with your Galaxy 16m system

### 13.4.1 System Faults

Symptom	Cause	Action
<p><b>1</b> The SYSTEM LED will illuminate AMBER on the Controller</p> <p><b>2</b> Audible Alarm sound</p>	<p>The ESI processor has detected an internal fault (e.g. failure of an internal communications path)</p>	<p><b>1</b> Check for other AMBER LED indications on the Power Supply/Cooling modules. If there is a PSU error present there may be a communications problem with that Power Supply/Cooling module. Remove and then re-fit the module, if the problem persists then change the module.</p> <p><b>2</b> Check for other AMBER LED indications on the drive carriers. If none are evident then there may either be an ESI processor problem or a Backplane problem.</p> <p><b>3</b> Ops Panel module faulty, please contact your supplier. (see <a href="#">13.8.2</a>).</p>

**Note** See also Section [13.4.5](#).

## 13.4.2 Power Supply/Cooling Faults

Symptom	Cause	Action
<p><b>1</b> Ops Panel FAULT LED AMBER</p> <p><b>2</b> An AMBER LED on one or more Power Supply/Cooling Modules.</p> <p><b>3</b> Audible Alarm Sounding.</p>	<p><b>1</b> Any power fault.</p> <p><b>2</b> A fan failure.</p> <p><b>3</b> A thermal condition which could cause PSU overheating.</p>	<p><b>1</b> Check Power On/Off Switch on rear of Power Supply/Cooling module is switched ON.</p> <p><b>2</b> Check AC connection to Power Supply/Cooling module is live.</p> <p><b>3</b> Disconnect the Power Supply/Cooling module from AC power and remove the module from the system. Re-install: if problem persists, replace Power Supply/Cooling Module.</p> <p><b>4</b> Reduce the ambient temperature.</p>

## 13.4.3 Thermal Control

The Galaxy 16m Enclosure uses extensive thermal monitoring and takes a number of actions to ensure component temperatures are kept low and also to minimize acoustic noise. Air flow is from front to rear of the enclosure.

Symptom	Cause	Action
<p>If the ambient air is cool (below 25 °C) and the fans are observed to increase in speed then some restriction on airflow may be causing additional internal temperature rise.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This is not a fault condition.</p>	<p>The first stage in the thermal control process is for the fans to automatically increase in speed when a thermal threshold is reached. This may be caused by higher ambient temperatures in the local environment and may be perfectly normal.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This threshold changes according to the number of drives and power supplies fitted.</p>	<p><b>1</b> Check the installation for any airflow restrictions at either the front or rear of the enclosure. A minimum gap of 25mm at the front and 50mm at the rear is recommended.</p> <p><b>2</b> Check for restrictions due to dust build-up; clean as appropriate.</p> <p><b>3</b> Check for excessive re-circulation of heated air from rear to the front, use in a fully enclosed rack installation is not recommended.</p> <p><b>4</b> Check that all Blank modules are in place.</p> <p><b>5</b> Reduce the ambient temperature.</p>

### 13.4.4 Thermal Alarm

Symptom	Cause	Action
<p><b>1</b> Ops Panel FAULT LED AMBER.</p> <p><b>2</b> An AMBER LED on one or more Power Supply/Cooling Modules.</p> <p><b>3</b> Audible Alarm Sounding.</p> <p><b>4</b> Air temperature exiting PSU above 55°C.</p>	If the internal temperature measured in the airflow through the enclosure exceeds a pre-set threshold a thermal alarm will sound.	<p><b>1</b> Check local ambient environment temperature is below the upper 40°C specification.</p> <p><b>2</b> Check the installation for any airflow restrictions at either the front or rear of the enclosure. A minimum gap of 25mm at the front and 50mm at the rear is recommended.</p> <p><b>3</b> Check for restrictions due to dust build-up, clean as appropriate.</p> <p><b>4</b> Check for excessive re-circulation of heated air from rear to the front, use in a fully enclosed rack installation is not recommended.</p> <p><b>5</b> If possible shutdown the enclosure and investigate the problem before continuing.</p>

### 13.4.5 Thermal Shutdown

The enclosure system will shut down when a critical temperature threshold is exceeded in order to prevent permanent damage to the disk drives.

Symptom	Cause	Action
<p><b>1</b> ALL AMBER LEDs on the Ops Panel and on ALL drive bays illuminated flash.</p> <p><b>2</b> Audible Alarm sounds almost continuously and cannot be muted.</p>	<p>At a higher threshold than the Thermal Alarm (this should already have been activated) the Enclosure is programmed to shutdown in order to protect itself and the disk drives from damage.</p> <p>OR - All fans have failed.</p> <p>OR - Only 1 fan operating and the internal temperature is 40° C or above.</p>	<p><b>1</b> Check for airflow restrictions.</p> <p><b>2</b> Check Power Supply/Cooling module faults.</p> <p><b>3</b> Check for excessive local temperatures.</p>

**Important: The Enclosure will SHUTDOWN 10 seconds after the above Symptoms are observed. This will leave the following indications active.**

<p><b>1</b> FAULT LED illuminated AMBER</p> <p><b>2</b> Enclosure powered off</p>	<p><b>1</b> Clear the source of the overheating</p> <p><b>2</b> Leave for a period to cool down.</p> <p><b>3</b> Remove AC power from the enclosure for at least 30 seconds to reset the shutdown condition</p> <p><b>4</b> Re-start enclosure using normal operating procedure</p> <p><b>5</b> Check for re-occurring cooling faults (especially fan failure).</p>
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## 13.5 Drive Carrier Module Faults

Disk drive status is monitored by a Green LED and an Amber LED mounted on the front of each Drive Carrier Module, providing the following indications:

**Table 13–4** LED Functions

State	Green	Amber
No drive fitted	Off	Off
Drive Power ON	On	Off
Drive Activity	On/Blink off	Off
Drive Fault	On	On

*Drive activity - LED may be off for a length of time during power up.*

### 13.5.1 Dummy Carrier Modules

Dummy Carrier modules must be fitted to all unused drive bays to maintain a balanced air flow.

### 13.5.2 Auto Start Failure

Unless otherwise selected at installation time, all drives in the enclosure should automatically start their motors after power is applied. If this has not occurred there is a power problem (An alarm and power fault indication would normally be active).

**Note** The SYSTEM LED will flash Green/Amber.

## 13.6 Dealing with Hardware Faults

Ensure that you have obtained a replacement module of the same type *before* removing any faulty module.

**Warning** **If the Galaxy 16m subsystem is powered up and you remove any module, replace it immediately. If the subsystem is used with modules or module blanks missing for more than a few minutes, the Enclosure can overheat, causing power failure and data loss. Such use will invalidate the warranty.**

- Replace a faulty drive with a drive of the same type and equal or greater capacity.
- All drive bays must be fitted with a Drive Carrier module or a dummy carrier module in order to maintain a balanced air flow.
- All the supplied plug-in power supply units, electronics modules and blank modules must be in place for the air to flow correctly around the cabinet.

## 13.7 Continuous Operation During Replacement

Depending on how the subsystem is set up, if a disk unit fails, it can normally be replaced without interrupting the use of the system.

In addition, each enclosure contains two Power Supply/Cooling modules, either of which can maintain power and cooling to the subsystem while the other is replaced.

## 13.8 Replacing a Module

**Warning** **Whenever replacing a module NEVER leave an EMPTY bay in the rear of the enclosure, obtain a replacement before removing the problem part.**

Please refer to [Chapter 2 , "Getting Started"](#) for information on the initial installation of the plug-in modules in the Galaxy 16m enclosure.

**Warning** Observe all conventional ESD precautions when handling Galaxy 16m modules and components. Avoid contact with Backplane components and module connectors, etc.

## 13.8.1 Power Supply/Cooling Modules

**Warning** Do not remove covers from the Power Supply/Cooling (PSU) module. Danger of electric shock inside. Return the PSU to your supplier for repair.

### 13.8.1.1 Removing an AC Power Supply/Cooling Module

**Warning** Do not remove the faulty Power Supply/Cooling module unless you have a replacement unit of the correct type ready for insertion.

If a power supply unit or its fan is faulty, you must replace the whole Power Supply/Cooling module.

As there should always be two power supply units installed, you can continue working while replacing the faulty module.

- 1 Make sure you identify the faulty Power Supply/Cooling module correctly, from the two modules installed.
- 2 Switch off and disconnect the power supply cord.
- 3 Squeeze the two latches on the PSU handle together ([Figure 13–2](#)) and open the handle to cam the PSU out of the enclosure ([Figure 13–3](#)).
- 4 Grip the handle and withdraw the PSU ([Figure 13–4](#)).

### 13.8.1.2 Inserting the Module

- 1 Check for damage, especially to the rear connector on the PSU.

**Caution** Handle the module carefully and avoid damaging the connector pins. Do not install the module if any pins appear to be bent.

- 2 With the PSU handle ([Figure 13–3](#)) in the open position, slide the module into the enclosure.

**Important** install the Power Supply/Cooling module in the right hand bay (Rear Bay 1) of the enclosure in an “upside down\* orientation.

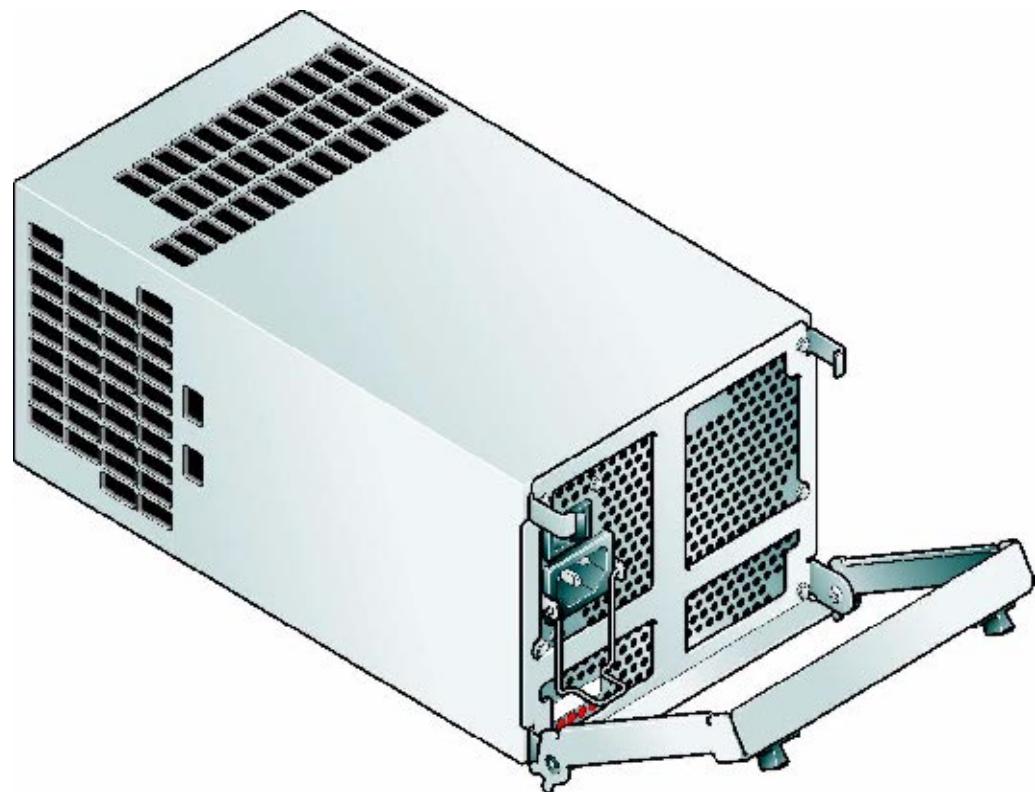
- 3 Cam the module home by manually closing the PSU handle (see [Figure 13–4](#)). A click should be heard as the handle latches engage (see [Figure 13–2](#)).

- 4 Connect the power supply cord to the power source and switch the power supply ON.

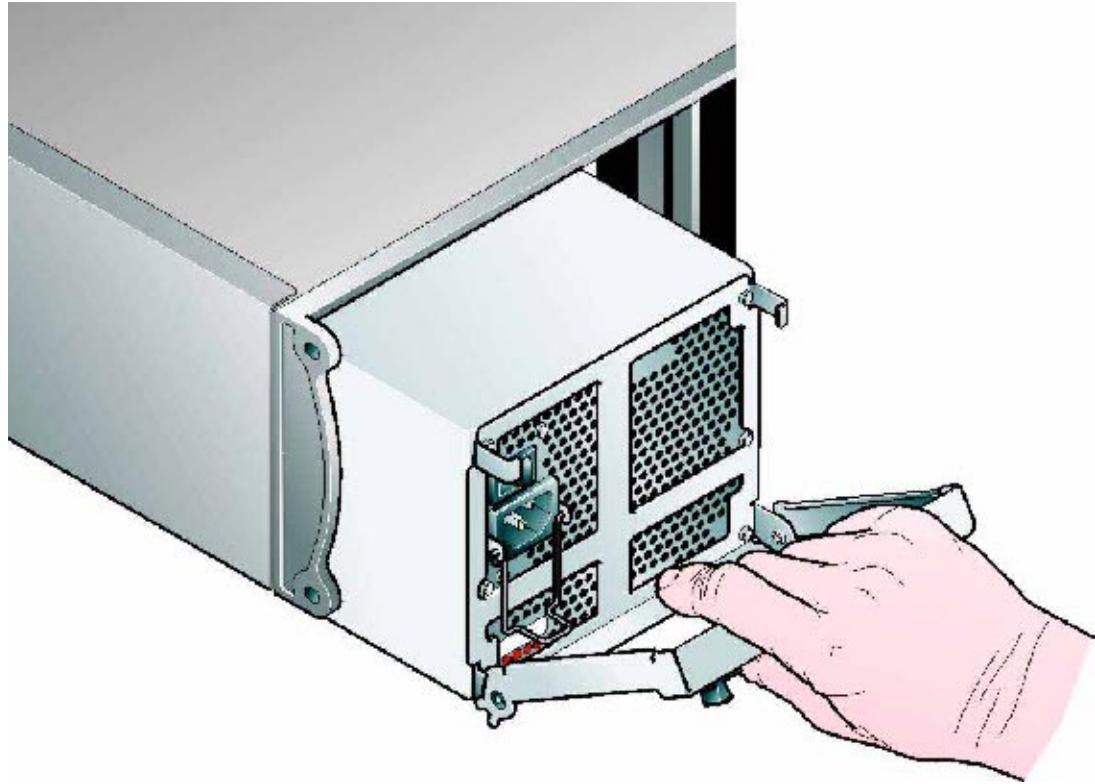
**Note** The alarm will sound until the new Power Supply/Cooling module is operating correctly.



**Figure 13–2** Removing/Inserting an AC Power Supply/Cooling Module (1)



**Figure 13–3** Removing/Inserting an AC Power Supply/Cooling Module (2)



**Figure 13-4** Removing/Inserting an AC Power Supply/Cooling Module (3)

### 13.8.1.3 Removing/ a -48V DC Power Supply/Cooling Module

**Warning** Do not remove the faulty Power Supply/Cooling (PSU) module unless you have a replacement unit of the correct type ready for insertion.

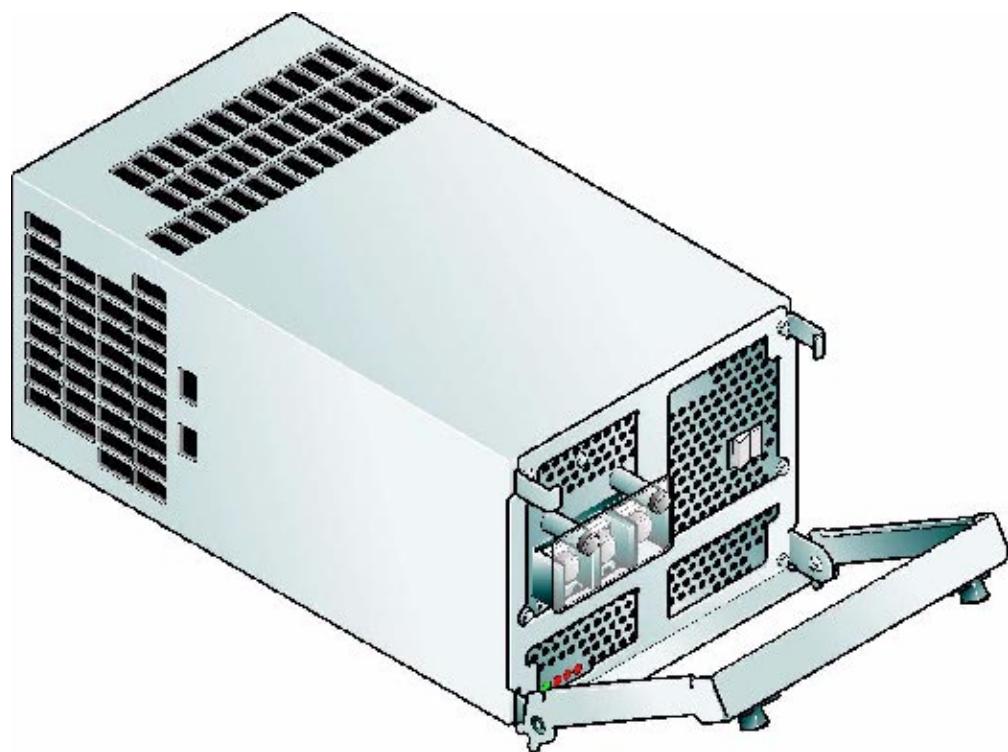
#### Safety Requirements

**Warning** Please refer to [2.4.3.1, "-48V DC PSU Safety Requirements", on page 28](#) before proceeding with the following Removal procedures.

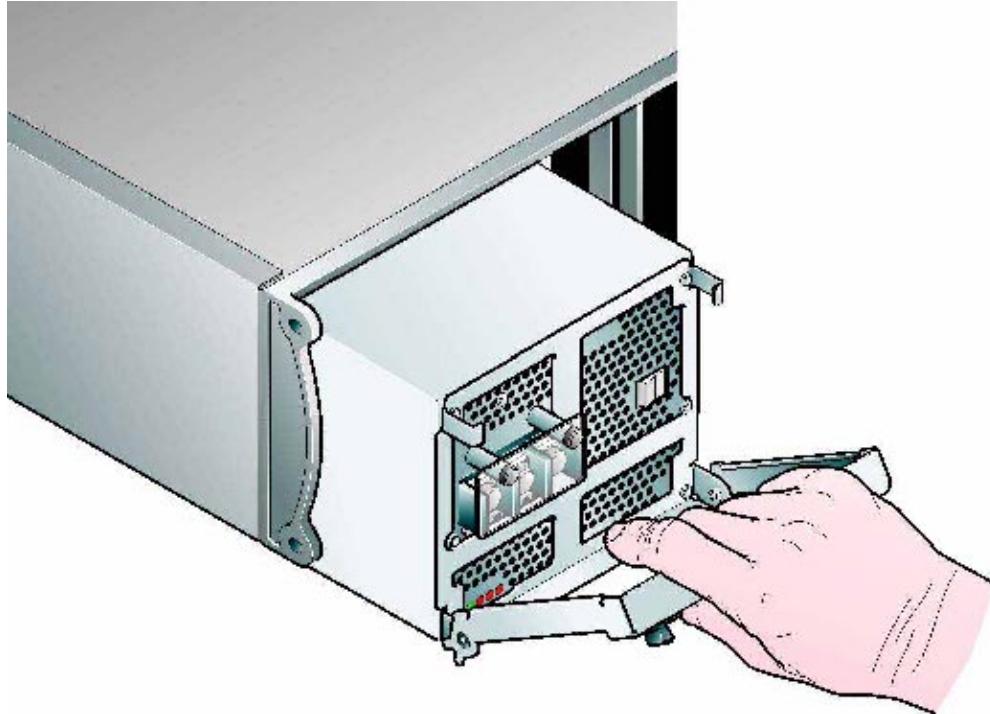
- 1 Switch off power at the PSU switch.
- 2 Remove all supply power by turning off the supply at the disconnect device located near to the equipment.
- 3 Remove the terminal block cover.
- 4 Disconnect the wires.
- 5 Replace the terminal block cover.
- 6 Squeeze the two latches on the PSU handle together and open the handle (see [Figure 13-5](#)) to cam the Power Supply/Cooling module out of the enclosure.
- 7 Grip the handle and withdraw the module.(see [Figure 13-7](#)).



**Figure 13–5** Removing/Inserting a -48V DC Power Supply/Cooling Module (1)



**Figure 13–6** Removing/Inserting a -48V DC Power Supply/Cooling Module (2)



**Figure 13-7** Removing/Inserting a -48V DC Power Supply/Cooling Module (3)

#### 13.8.1.4 Installing a -48V DC Power Supply/Cooling Module

**Warning** Installation of this PSU module should only be performed by qualified personnel.

##### Safety Requirements

**Warning** Please refer to **2.4.3.1, "-48V DC PSU Safety Requirements"**, on page **28** before proceeding with the following Installation procedures.

- 1 Check for damage, especially to the rear connector on the Power Supply/Cooling module.

**Caution** Handle the module carefully and avoid damaging the connector pins. Do not install the module if any pins appear to be bent.

- 2 With the PSU handle (**Figure 13-6**) in the open position, slide the module into the enclosure.

**Important** install the Power Supply/Cooling module in the right hand bay (Rear Bay 1) of the enclosure in an "upside down\*" orientation.

- 3 Cam the module home by manually closing the PSU handle (see **Figure 13-7**). A click should be heard as the handle latches engage (see **Figure 13-50**).

- 4 Remove all supply power by turning off the supply at the disconnect device located near to the equipment.

- 5 Remove the terminal block cover.

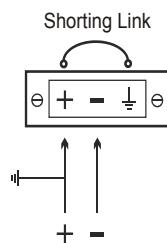
- 6 Connect the wires in accordance with the Wiring Instructions in section **13.8.1.5**.

- 7 Replace the terminal block cover.
- 8 Turn the supply power back on.
- 9 Switch on power at the PSU switch.

### 13.8.1.5 Wiring Instructions for -48V DC PSU

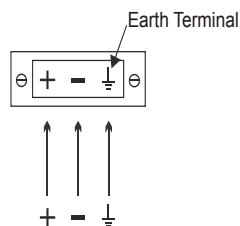
**Warning** The +48V and -48V terminals are not connected to chassis earth.

- 1 For installations with +48V earthed a shorting link must be added (see [Figure 13–8](#)).



**Figure 13–8** Shorting Link

- 2 For installations with a separate earth, connect the earth cable to the earth terminal (see [Figure 13–9](#))



**Figure 13–9** Separate Earth

### 13.8.2 Ops Panel

The Ops Panel is an integral part of the enclosure chassis assembly and is not field replaceable.

### 13.8.3 Controller I/O Module

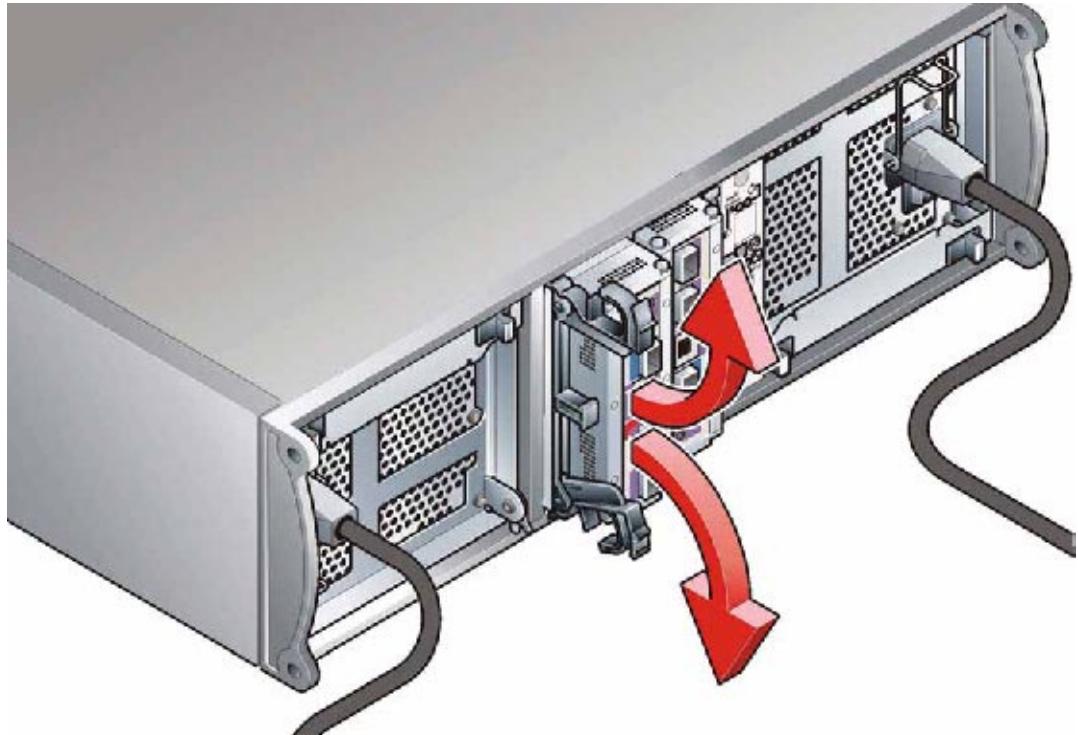
Please refer to section [2.7, "Controller I/O Module Installation", on page 33](#) for full information on installing the Controller I/O module.

#### 13.8.3.1 Removing the Module

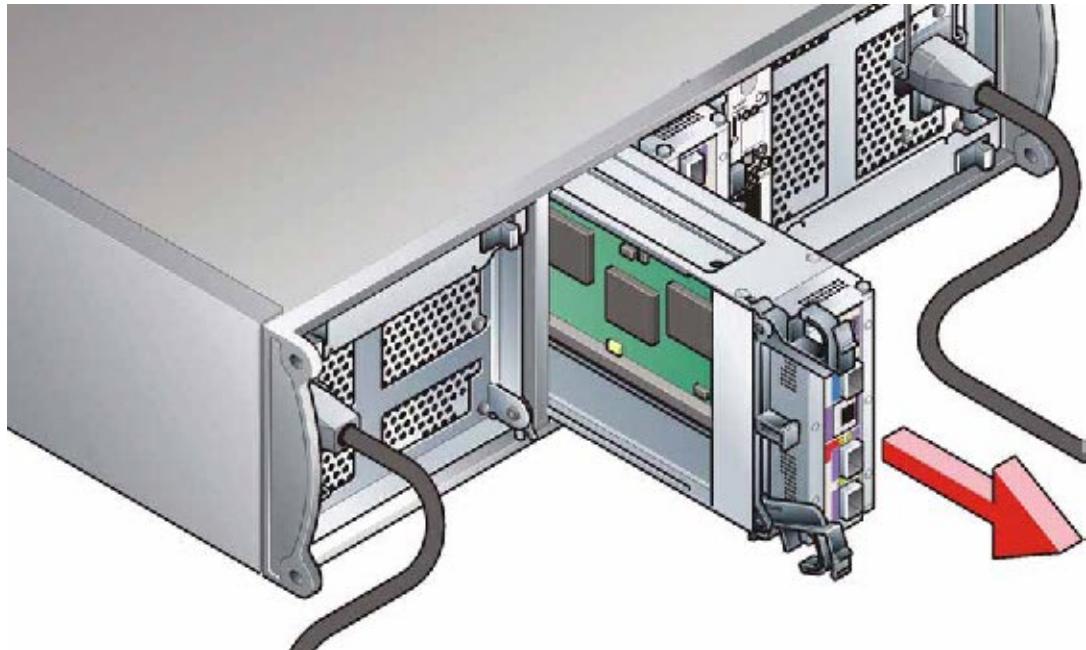
**Warning** Do not remove this module unless a replacement can be immediately added. The system must not be run without all units in place.

- 1 Using two hands, grasp each latch between the thumb and forefinger of each hand. Squeeze thumb and forefinger together to release the latch. Pull the latches forward to cam the module out of the enclosure ([Figure 13–12](#)).

- 2 Grip the latch handles and withdraw the module (Figure 13–10).



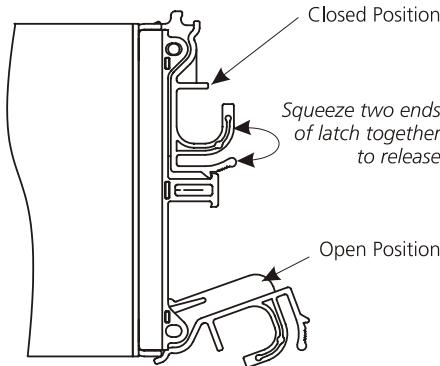
**Figure 13–10** Removing a Controller I/O Module (1)



**Figure 13–11** Removing a Controller I/O Module (2)

### 13.8.3.2 Inserting the Module

- 1 With the latch in the open position, slide the Controller I/O module into the enclosure until the latch engages automatically.
- 2 Cam the module home by manually closing the latches (see [Figure 13–12](#)).
- 3 A click should be heard as the latch engages.



**Figure 13–12** Controller I/O Module Latch Operation

### 13.8.4 Battery Replacement

#### Battery Safety

- The battery should only be replaced by a trained technician.
- The battery should be disposed of in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and National regulations.

**Warning** **Risk of explosion if battery assembly is replaced by an incorrect type. The battery assembly must only be replaced with a battery assembly of the following type, which contains current limiting and temperature sensing devices:**

- Battery Assembly SM  
Feature Code: Galaxy 16m-Batt

**Caution** *If this equipment is used in a manner not specified by the manufacturer, the protection provided by the equipment may be impaired.*

#### ESD Precautions

It is recommended that you fit and check a suitable anti-static wrist or ankle strap and observe all conventional ESD precautions when handling plug-in modules and components. Avoid contact with backplane components and module connectors, etc.

#### Data Security

**Caution** *This procedure will remove all data from the cache.*

#### Tools Required

None

### Removal/Replacement Procedure

- 1 Unplug the battery flying lead from the RAID controller.

**Caution** You may need to apply some force to remove this connector.

- 2 Withdraw the battery tray from the controller module to allow easier access to the battery assembly.
- 3 Release the battery assembly by squeezing the two latches (shown in Figure 13–13) with thumb and forefinger and slide the assembly out of the LRC module.
- 4 Fit the new battery assembly by squeezing the two latches and sliding it into the LRC module.
- 5 Release the two latches and reconnect the battery flying lead to the RAID controller.
- 6 Slide the battery tray back into position in the controller module.
- 7 Dispose of the battery in accordance with National safety regulations.

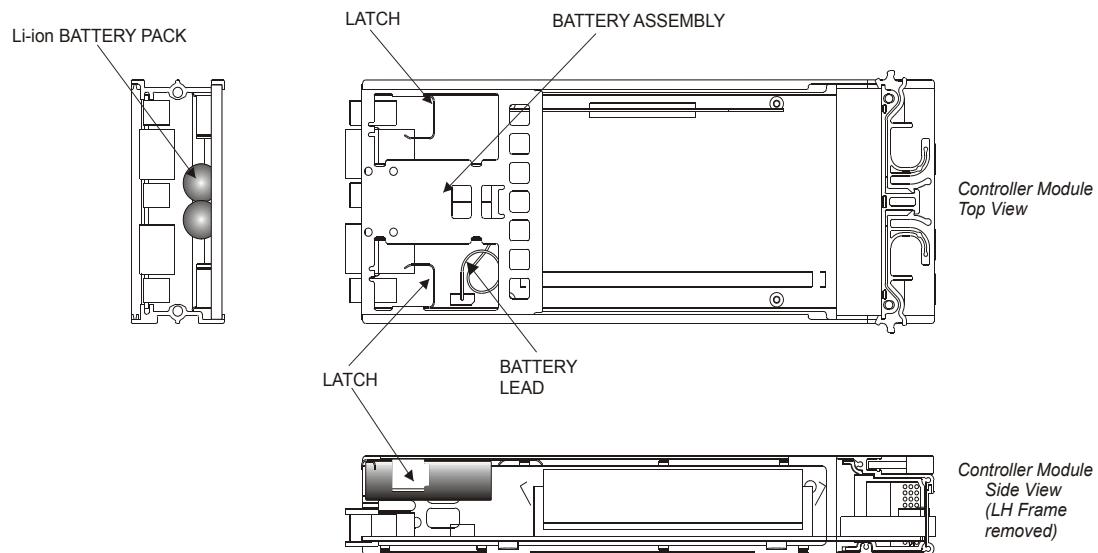


Figure 13–13 Controller Module - Battery Assembly Location

## 13.8.5 Drive Carrier Module

Please see section 2.10, "Drive Carrier Installation", on page 37 for information on the initial installation of the plug-in modules in the Galaxy 16m enclosure.

**Warning** Observe all conventional ESD precautions when handling Galaxy 16m modules and components. Avoid contact with backplane components and module connectors, etc.

### 13.8.5.1 Removal and Replacement

**Caution** *Drive spin down*

*Damage can occur to a drive if it is removed while still spinning, we recommend that you perform All steps of the following procedure to ensure that the drive has stopped prior to removal:*

- 1 Release the carrier handle, by pressing the latch in the handle towards the right

**Note** The anti-tamper lock must be off.

- 2 Gently withdraw the Drive Carrier Module approximately 1 inch (25mm) and wait 30 seconds.

- 3 Withdraw the module from the drive bay and fit a replacement module in accordance with the instructions in Section 2.10, "Drive Carrier Installation".

## 13.9 Spare Parts and Ancillary Items

The following replaceable parts are available for the Galaxy 16m subsystem:

- Chassis (including Backplane and Ops Panel)
- AC Power Supply/Cooling Module
- -48V DC Power Supply/Cooling Module
- Drive Carrier Module
- Controller I/O Module (*optical or copper connection option*)
- Blank (I/O) Module
- External FC-AL Interface Cables
- Cables:
  - LC - LC optical cables
  - LC - SC optical cable
  - SFP - SFP copper patch cable (1 M length)
  - HSSDC2 - HSSDC1
  - HSSDC2 - DB9
  - HSSDC2 - HSSDC2
  - RS232 cable
  - LAN cable
- SFP module, optical
- SFP module, copper
- Battery, Li-ion
- 19 inch rack mounting rail kit
- Dummy Carrier Module
- Bifurcated power cords
- (Country specific) power cords
- Keys for Drive Carrier modules.
- All documentation



# Appendix A

# System Functions:

# Upgrading Firmware

## A.1 Upgrading Firmware

The RAID controller's firmware resides in flash memory that can be updated through the COM port, LAN port, or via In-band SCSI. New releases of the firmware are available from your supplier.

## A.2 New Features Supported with Firmware 3.21

### A.2.1 Background RS-232 Firmware Download

Host I/Os will not be interrupted during the download process. After the download process is completed, user should find a chance to reset the controller for the new firmware to take effect.

### A.2.2 Redundant Controller Rolling Firmware Upgrade

When download is performed on a dual-controller system, firmware is flashed onto both controllers without interrupting host I/Os. After the download process is completed, the Primary controller will reset and let the Secondary take over the service temporarily. When the Primary comes back on-line, the Secondary will hand over the workload and then reset itself for the new firmware to take effect. The rolling upgrade is automatically performed by controller firmware and user's intervention is not necessary.

### A.2.3 Redundant Controller Firmware Sync-version

A controller used to replace a failed unit in a dual-controller system is often running a newer release of firmware version. To solve the contention, firmware running on the replacement controller will be downgraded to that running on the surviving controller.

**Important** Allow the downloading process to finish. Do not reset or turn off the computer or the controller while it is downloading the file. Doing so may result in an unrecoverable error that requires the service of the manufacturer.

**While the firmware is new, the boot record that comes with it may be the same version as the one in the controller. If this is the case, there is no need to upgrade the Boot Record Binary.**

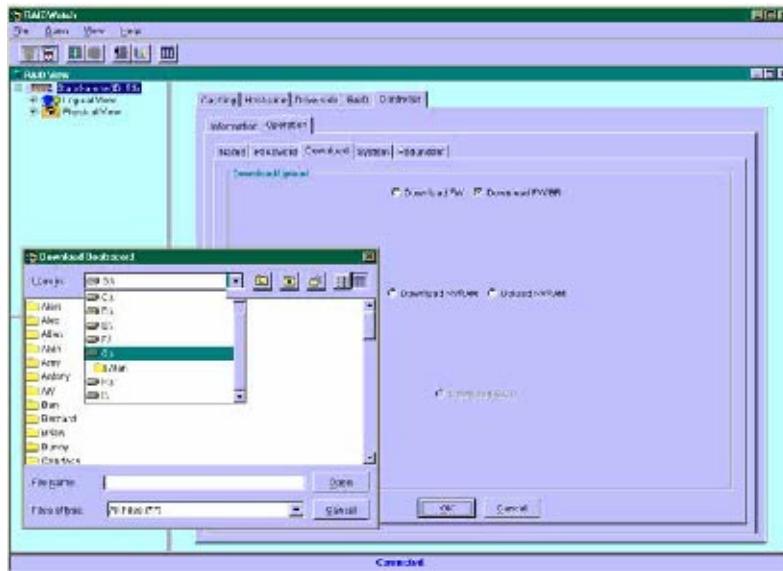
**Note** Controller serial port COM 2 can not be used to download firmware.

## A.3 Upgrading Firmware Using In-band SCSI + RAIDWatch Manager

### A.3.1 Establish the In-band SCSI Connection in RAIDWatch Manager

Please refer to RAIDWatch User's Manual for details on establishing the In-band SCSI connection for RAIDWatch Manager.

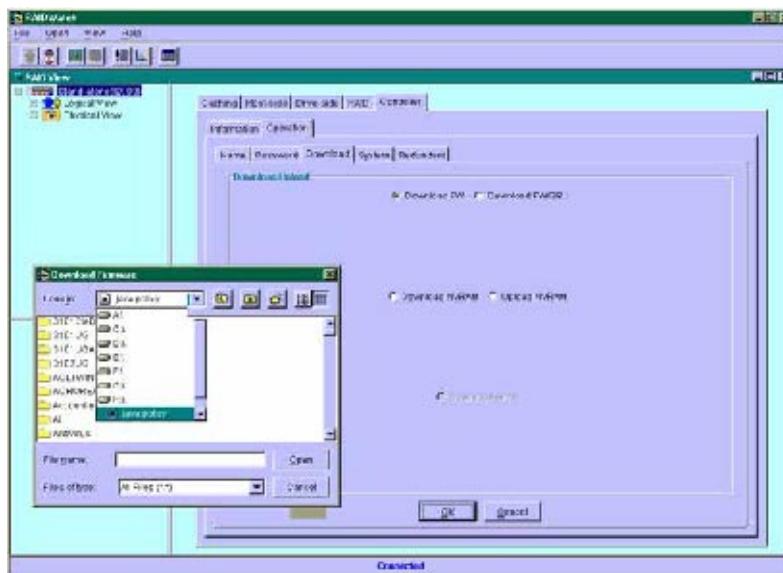
### A.3.2 Upgrade both Boot Record and Firmware Binaries



- 1 Connect to the RAID system locally or from a remote host using RAIDWatch Manager. While connected to the RAID system, there will be icon(s) with IP address specified on the left of the menu screen. Select by double-clicking the icon of the RAID system which firmware is to be upgraded. Select the controller icon and then select the **RAID system-to-host bus** (usually appears as In-band SCSI). Double-click the RAID-to-host-bus to connect to the desired controller. Choose the “RAID view” icon on the controller panel or the RAID view icon on the control bar. The RAID view window will appear. Choose **Controller > Download->** and click among the selections **Download FW/BR** (Firmware and Boot Record).
- 2 Provide the boot record binary filename, the RAIDWatch Manager will start to download the boot record binary to the controller.

- 3 After the boot record download is completed, provide the firmware filename to the RAIDWatch Manager. It will start to download the firmware to the controller.
- 4 Shutdown the system which is accessing the RAID, then reset the controller in order to use the new downloaded firmware. ***With firmware release 3.21 and above***, host I/Os will not be interrupted by the download process. Users may find a chance to stop host I/O and reset the controller for new firmware to take effect.

### A.3.3 Upgrade the Firmware Binary Only



- 1 Connect to the RAID system locally or from a remote host using RAIDWatch Manager. While connected to the RAID system, there will be icon(s) with IP address specified on the left of the menu screen. Select by double-clicking the icon of the RAID system which firmware is to be upgraded. Select the controller icon and then select the **RAID system-to-host bus** (usually appears as In-band SCSI or PCI bus...). Double-click the RAID-to-host-bus to connect to the desired controller. Choose the **RAID view** icon on the controller panel. The RAID view window will appear. Choose **Controller > Download ->** and click among the selections **Download FW (Firmware)**. If both boot record and firmware are desired to upgrade, choose **Download Firmware**.
- 2 Provide the firmware filename to the RAIDWatch Manager. It will start to download the firmware to the controller.
- 3 Shutdown the system which is accessing the RAID, then reset the controller in order to use the new downloaded firmware.

## A.4 Upgrading Firmware Using RS-232 Terminal Emulation

The firmware can be downloaded to the RAID controller by using an ANSI/VT-100 compatible terminal emulation program. Whichever terminal emulation program is used must support the ZMODEM file transfer protocol. The following example uses the Hypercritical in Windows NT®. Other terminal emulation programs (e.g., Telix and PROCOMM Plus) can perform the firmware upgrade as well.

### A.4.1 Establishing the Connection for the RS-232 Terminal Emulation

Please refer to [6.1.1, "Starting RS232 Terminal Emulation"](#), on page [71](#) and also your hardware manual for details on establishing the connection.

### A.4.2 Upgrading both Boot Record and Firmware Binaries



- 1 From the Main Menu, scroll down to **System Functions**
- 2 Go to **Controller Maintenance**
- 3 Choose **Advanced Maintenance**
- 4 Select **Download Boot Record and Firmware**.
- 5 Set ZMODEM as the file transfer protocol of your terminal emulation software.
- 6 Send the Boot Record Binary to the controller. In HyperTerminal, go to the **Transfer** menu and choose **Send file**. If you are not using Hyper Terminal, choose **Upload** or **Send** (depending on the software).
- 7 After the Boot Record has been downloaded, send the Firmware Binary to the controller. In HyperTerminal, go to the **Transfer** menu and choose **Send file**. If you are not using Hyper Terminal, choose **Upload** or **Send** (depending on the software).
- 8 When the firmware completes downloading, the controller will automatically reset itself.

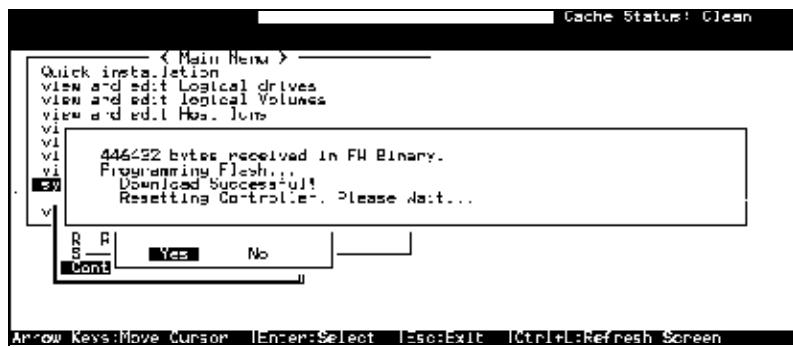
### A.4.3 Upgrading the Firmware Binary Only



- 1 From the Main Menu, scroll down to **System Functions**
- 2 Go to **Controller Maintenance**
- 3 Choose **Download Firmware**
- 4 Set ZMODEM as the file transfer protocol of your terminal emulation software.
- 5 Send the Firmware Binary to the controller. In Hyper Terminal, select **Send file**. If you are not using HyperTerminal, choose **Upload** or **Send** (depending on the software).



- 6 When the firmware completes downloading, the controller will automatically reset itself.





# Appendix B

# Event Messages

The controller events can be categorized as follows:

- **Alert:** Errors that need to attend to immediately
- **Warning:** Errors
- **Notification:** Command processed message sent from Firmware

The controller records all system events from power on, it can record up to 1,000 events. To power off or to reset the controller will cause an automatic deletion of all the recorded event logs.

RAIDWatch manager' sub-module, Event Monitor, can be used to record events on multiple controllers especially when controller reset or power-off is an expected action. The Event Monitor runs independently on a host computer and can store up to 1000 events (per controller unit) regardless of the controller's current status. The software program is Java-based and is usually bundled with RAIDWatch manager. Associated details can be found in the RAIDWatch user's manual.

Descriptions below may contain abbreviations. Abbreviations and Capitalized characters are preserved for coherency with the event messages shown on the terminal.

## B.1 Event Index

### B.1.1 Controller Event

#### *Alert:*

[0104] Controller ALERT: DRAM Parity Error Detected

[0105] Controller <primary/secondary> SDRAM ECC <multi-bits/single-bit> Error Detected

[0110] CHL:\_ FATAL ERROR (\_)

[0111] Controller ALERT: Redundant Controller Failure Detected

[0111] Controller NOTICE: Redundant Controller Firmware Updated

[0114] Controller ALERT: Power Supply Unstable or NVRAM Failed

***Warning:***

[0107] Memory Not Sufficient to Fully Support Current Config.

***Notification:***

[0181] Controller Initialization Completed

[0187] Memory is Now Sufficient to Fully Support Current Config.

[0189] NVRAM Factory Defaults Restored

[0189] NVRAM Restore from Disk is Completed

[0189] NVRAM Restore from File is Completed

## B.1.2 Drive SCSI Channel/Drive Error

***Drive:***

***Warning:***

[1101] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Target ALERT: Unexpected Select Timeout

[1102] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Target ALERT: Gross Phase/Signal Error Detected

[1103] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Target ALERT: Unexpected Disconnect Encountered

[1104] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Drive ALERT: Negotiation Error Detected

[1105] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Target ALERT: Timeout Waiting for I/O to Complete

[1106] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Target ALERT: SCSI Parity/CRC Error Detected

[1107] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Drive ALERT: Data Overrun/Underrun Detected

[1108] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Target ALERT: Invalid Status/Sense Data Received (\_)

[110f] CHL:\_ LIP(\_ \_) Detected

[110f] CHL:\_ SCSI Drive Channel Notification: SCSI Bus Reset Issued

[110f] CHL:\_ SCSI Drive Channel ALERT: SCSI Bus Reset Issued

[1111] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Target ALERT: Unexpected Drive Not Ready

[1112] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Drive ALERT: Drive HW Error (\_)  
[1113] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Drive ALERT: Bad Block Encountered - \_ (\_)  
[1114] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Target ALERT: Unit Attention Received  
[1115] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Drive ALERT: Unexpected Sense Received (\_)  
[1116] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Drive ALERT: Block Reassignment Failed - \_ (\_)  
[1117] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Drive ALERT: Block Successfully Reassigned - \_ (\_)  
[1118] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Drive ALERT: Aborted Command (\_)  
[1142] SMART-CH:\_ ID:\_ Predictable Failure Detected (TEST)  
[1142] SMART-CH:\_ ID:\_ Predictable Failure Detected  
[1142] SMART-CH:\_ ID:\_ Predictable Failure Detected-Starting Clone  
[1142] SMART-CH:\_ ID:\_ Predictable Failure Detected-Clone Failed  
[11c1] CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Drive NOTICE: Scan SCSI Drive Successful

***Channel:******Warning:***

[113f] CHL:\_ ALERT: Redundant Loop Connection Error Detected on ID:\_  
[113f] CHL:\_ SCSI Drive Channel ALERT: SCSI Channel Failure  
[113f] CHL:\_ ALERT: Fibre Channel Loop Failure Detected  
[113f] CHL:\_ ALERT: Redundant Loop for Chl:\_ Failure Detected  
[113f] CHL:\_ ALERT: Redundant Path for Chl:\_ ID:\_ Expected but Not Found  
[113f] CHL:\_ ID:\_ ALERT: Redundant Path for Chl:\_ ID:\_ Failure Detected

***Notification:***

[113f] CHL:\_ NOTICE: Fibre Channel Loop Connection Restored  
[113f] CHL:\_ ID:\_ NOTICE: Redundant Path for Chl:\_ ID:\_ Restored

## B.1.3 Logical Drive Event

### **Alert:**

- [2101] LG: <NA/Logical Drive Index> Logical Drive ALERT: CHL:\_ ID:\_ SCSI Drive Failure
- [2103] LG:\_ Logical Drive ALERT: Rebuild Failed
- [2106] LG:\_ Logical Drive ALERT: Add SCSI Drive Operation Failed

### **Warning:**

- [2102] LG:\_ Logical Drive ALERT: Initialization Failed
- [2104] LG:\_ Logical Drive ALERT: Parity Regeneration Failed
- [2105] LG:\_ Logical Drive ALERT: Expansion Failed
- [2111] LG:\_ Logical Drive ALERT: CHL:\_ ID:\_ Clone Failed

### **Notification:**

- [2181] LG:\_ Logical Drive NOTICE: Starting Initialization
- [2182] Initialization of Logical Drive \_ Completed
- [2183] LG:\_ Logical Drive NOTICE: Starting Rebuild
- [2184] Rebuild of Logical Drive \_ Completed
- [2185] LG:\_ Logical Drive NOTICE: Starting Parity Regeneration
- [2186] Parity Regeneration of Logical Drive \_ Completed
- [2187] LG:\_ Logical Drive NOTICE: Starting Expansion
- [2188] Expansion of Logical Drive \_ Completed
- [2189] LG:\_ Logical Drive NOTICE: Starting Add SCSI Drive Operation
- [218a] Add SCSI Drive to Logical Drive \_ Completed
- [218b] LG:\_ Logical Drive NOTICE: Add SCSI Drive Operation Paused
- [218c] LG:\_ Logical Drive NOTICE: Continue Add SCSI Drive Operation
- [21a1] LG:\_ Logical Drive NOTICE: CHL:\_ ID:\_ Starting Clone"
- [21a2] LG:\_ Logical Drive NOTICE: CHL:\_ ID:\_ Clone Completed"

## B.1.4 General Target Events

***Controller on-board:***

[3f23] Peripheral Device ALERT: CPU Temperature <high/low threshold> Temperature Detected (\_.\_C)

[3f23] Peripheral Device ALERT: Board1 Temperature <high/low threshold> Temperature Detected (\_.\_C)

[3f23] Peripheral Device ALERT: Board2 Temperature <high/low threshold> Temperature Detected (\_.\_C)

[3f22] Peripheral Device ALERT: Controller FAN \_ Not Present or Failure Detected

[3f22] Peripheral Device ALERT: Controller FAN \_ <high/low threshold> Speed Detected (\_RPM)

[3f21] Peripheral Device ALERT: +3.3V <upper/lower threshold> Voltage Detected (\_)

[3f21] Peripheral Device ALERT: +5V <upper/lower threshold> Voltage Detected (\_)

[3f21] Peripheral Device ALERT: +12V <upper/lower threshold> Voltage Detected (\_)

***SES Devices:***

[3f21] SES (C\_!\_) Power Supply \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Supported>!

[3f21] SES (C\_!\_) Power Supply \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Installed>!

[3f21] SES (C\_!\_) Power Supply \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Unknown Status>!

[3f21] SES (C\_!\_) Power Supply \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Available>!

[3f22] SES (C\_!\_) Cooling element \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Supported>!

[3f22] SES (C\_!\_) Cooling element \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not installed>!

[3f22] SES (C\_!\_) Cooling element \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Unknown Status>!

[3f22] SES (C\_!\_) Cooling element \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Available>!

[3f23] SES (C\_!\_) Temperature Sensor \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Supported>!

[3f23] SES (C\_!\_) Temperature Sensor \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not installed>!

[3f23] SES (C\_!\_) Temperature Sensor \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Unknown Status>!

[3f23] SES (C\_!\_) Temperature Sensor \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Available>!

[3f24] SES (C\_!\_) UPS \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Supported>!

[3f24] SES (C\_!\_) UPS \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not installed>!

[3f24] SES (C\_I\_) UPS \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Unknown Status>!  
[3f24] SES (C\_I\_) UPS \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Available>!  
[3f21] SES (C\_I\_) Voltage sensor \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Supported>!  
[3f21] SES (C\_I\_) Voltage sensor \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not installed>!  
[3f21] SES (C\_I\_) Voltage sensor \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Unknown Status>!  
[3f21] SES (C\_I\_) Voltage sensor \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Available>!  
[3f21] SES (C\_I\_) Current sensor \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Supported>!  
[3f21] SES (C\_I\_) Current sensor \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not installed>!  
[3f21] SES (C\_I\_) Current sensor \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Unknown Status>!  
[3f21] SES (C\_I\_) Current sensor \_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Available>!

***General Peripheral Device:***

[3f21] Peripheral Device ALERT: Power Supply Failure Detected  
[3f22] Cooling Fan Not Installed  
[3f22] Cooling Fan Failure Detected  
[3f24] Elevated Temperature Alert  
[3f24] UPS Power Failure Detected

***Notification:***

***SES Devices:***

[3f21] SES (C\_I\_) Power Supply \_: Power Supply Failure Detected  
[3f22] SES (C\_I\_) Cooling element \_: Cooling Fan Not Installed  
[3f22] SES (C\_I\_) Cooling element \_: Cooling Fan Failure Detected  
[3f23] SES (C\_I\_) Temperature Sensor \_: Elevated Temperature Alert  
[3f24] SES (C\_I\_) UPS \_: UPS Power Failure Detected

***General Peripheral Device:***

[3f21] Peripheral Device ALERT: Power Supply Failure Detected  
[3f22] Cooling Fan Not Installed

[3f22] Cooling Fan Failure Detected

[3f24] Elevated Temperature Alert

[3f24] UPS Power Failure Detected

## B.2 Controller Event

*Alert:*

Terminal	[0104] Controller ALERT: DRAM Parity Error Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	A DRAM parity error encountered.		
What to Do[ ]	Contact your RAID system supplier and replace with new module(s) if necessary.		
Terminal	[0105] Controller <primary/secondary> SDRAM ECC <multi-bits/single-bit> Error Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	A DRAM ECC detected error encountered.		
What to Do[ ]	Contact your RAID system supplier and replace with new module(s) if necessary.[ ]		
Terminal	[0110] CHL:_ FATAL ERROR (_)		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	One channel has failed.		
What to Do[ ]	Check if cable connectors are firmly seated and SCSI buses are properly terminated. With Fibre channels, disconnection may happen on the host side, hub or switch, etc. In redundant mode, the counterpart controller will take over and you may ask your system provider to remove the controller with a failed channel for a repair.		
Terminal	[0111] Controller ALERT: Redundant Controller Failure Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	One of the RAID controllers has failed.		
What to Do[ ]	Contact your RAID system supplier for a replacement controller.		

Terminal	[0111] Controller NOTICE: Redundant Controller Firmware Updated		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	RAID controllers have finished shifting I/Os, resetting, and have come online with new version of firmware.		
What to Do[ ]			

Terminal	[0114] Controller ALERT: Power Supply Unstable or NVRAM Failed		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	The output voltage drops below preset thresholds or NVRAM component failure.		
What to Do[ ]			

***Warning:***

Terminal	[0107] Memory Not Sufficient to Fully Support Current Config.		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	The installed size of memory does not support current configuration. Try increase memory size.		
What to Do[ ]			

***Notification:***

Terminal	[0181] Controller Initialization Completed		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Controller initialization completed		
What to Do[ ]			

Terminal	[0187] Memory is Now Sufficient to Fully Support Current Config.		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Memory size has been expanded.		
What to Do[ ]			

Terminal	[0189] NVRAM Factory Defaults Restored		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Firmware settings have been restored to factory defaults. Options for restoring defaults are not available to users and are only reserved for qualified engineers.		
What to Do[ ]			

Terminal	[0189] NVRAM Restore from Disk is Completed		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Firmware configuration data previously saved to disk is restored.		
What to Do[ ]			

Terminal	[0189] NVRAM Restore from File is Completed		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Firmware configuration data previously saved as a file is restored.		
What to Do[ ]			

## B.3 Drive SCSI Channel/Drive Error

### *Drive*

#### *Warning:*

Terminal	[1101] CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Target ALERT: Unexpected Select Timeout		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Drive SCSI target select timeout. The specified hard drive cannot be selected by the controller. Whether the drive has been removed, or the cabling/termination/canister is out of order.		
What to Do[ ]	Check drive-side SCSI cable/termination and drive canister connections.		

Terminal	[1102] CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Target ALERT: Gross Phase/Signal Error Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Drive-side SCSI phase/signal abnormality detected.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

Terminal	[1103] CHL:_ I:_ SCSI Target ALERT: Unexpected Disconnect Encountered		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Drive-side SCSI target unexpected disconnect detected.		
What to Do[ ]	Check cabling/termination and canister connections.		

Terminal	[1104] CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Drive ALERT: Negotiation Error Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Drive-side SCSI target sync/wide negotiation abnormality detected.		
What to Do[ ]			
Terminal	[1105] CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Target ALERT: Timeout Waiting for I/O to Complete		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Drive-side SCSI target I/O timeout. Possible drive-side cabling/termination and canister connection abnormal or drive malfunctioning.		
What to Do[ ]	Check drive-side cabling/termination/canister connections and hard drive.		
Terminal	[1106] CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Target ALERT: SCSI Parity/CRC Error Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Drive-side SCSI channel parity or CRC error detected to the specified hard drive.		
What to Do[ ]	Check drive-side cable/termination or drive canister connection.		
Terminal	[1107] CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Target ALERT: Data Overrun/Underrun Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Drive-side SCSI target data overrun or underrun detected.		
What to Do[ ]	Check drive-side cabling/termination/canister connections and hard drive.		
Terminal	[1108] CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Target ALERT: Invalid Status/Sense Data Received (Sensately Sensualized)		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Drive-side SCSI invalid status/sense data received from target		
What to Do[ ]	Check cabling/termination/canister connections.		
Terminal	[110F] CHL:_ LIP(__) Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Fibre Loop LIP issued.		
What to Do[ ]	Press [ESC] to clear the error message.		

Terminal	[110f] CHL:_ SCSI Drive Channel Notification: SCSI Bus Reset Issued		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	SCSI bus reset issued		
What to Do[ ]			
Terminal	[1111] CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Drive ALERT: CHL:_ ID:_ Clone Failed		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Drive installed does not respond with "Ready"		
What to Do[ ]	Check hard drive and drive-side cabling/termination/canister connections.		
Terminal	[1112] CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Drive ALERT: Drive HW Error (Sensately Sense_code)		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Drive-Side SCSI drive unrecoverable hardware error reported		
What to Do[ ]	Replace hard drive and the rebuild may begin with a hot-spare or a replacement drive		
Terminal	[1113] CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Drive ALERT: Bad Block Encountered - Block_number (Sense_key Sense_code)		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Hard drive unrecoverable media error reported. A bad block is encountered in the specified hard drive. The RAID controller will ask the hard drive to retry.		
What to Do[ ]	Press [ESC] to clear the message.		
Terminal	[1114] CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Target ALERT: Unit Attention Received (Sense_key Sense_code)		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Drive-side SCSI target unit attention received.		
What to Do[ ]	Check hard drive and drive-side cabling/termination/canister connections.		

Terminal	[1115] CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Drive ALERT: Unexpected Sense Received (Sense_key Sense_code)		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Drive-side SCSI drive unexpected sense data received.		
What to Do[ ]	Checking drive-side cabling/termination/drive canister connections. This might result from a bad signal quality or poor connection, etc.		
Terminal	[1116] CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Drive ALERT: Block Reassignment Failed - Block_number (Sense_key Sense_code)		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Drive-side block reassignment failed. Drive will be considered failed.		
What to Do[ ]	Press [ESC] to clear this error message.		
Terminal	[1117] CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Drive ALERT: Block Successfully Reassigned - Block_number (Sense_key Sense_code)		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Bad blocks have been reassigned successfully		
What to Do[ ]	Press [ESC] to clear this message.		
Terminal	[1118] CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Drive ALERT: Aborted Command (Sense_key Sense_code)		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	SCSI drive aborted command reported		
What to Do[ ]	Press [ESC] to clear the error message.		
Terminal	[1142] SMART-CH:_ ID:_ Predictable Failure Detected (TEST)		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	This message appears when simulating the SMART detect function. This message shows that your drives support SMART functions.		
What to Do[ ]	Press [ESC] to clear the error message.		
Terminal	[1142] SMART-CH:_ ID:_ Predictable Failure Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	SMART-related errors detected. This message will only be displayed when SMART detect is enabled.		
What to Do[ ]			

Terminal	[1142] SMART-CH:_ ID:_ Predictable Failure Detected-Starting Clone		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	SMART errors detected, a spare is conducted to rebuild and to replace the faulty drive. This is a response to the preset scheme.		
What to Do[ ]			

Terminal	[1142] SMART-CH:_ ID:_ Predictable Failure Detected-Clone Failed		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	SMART errors detected and a spare is conducted to rebuild. The cloning process is halted due to power interruption and some other reasons.		
What to Do[ ]			

Terminal	[11c1] CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Drive NOTICE: Scan SCSI Drive Successful		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Scanning a new drive from on a SCSI drive successful.		
What to Do[ ]			

**Channel:****Warning:**

Terminal	[113f] CHL:_ ALERT: Redundant Loop Connection Error Detected on ID:_		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	One of the dual loop members may have failed or been disconnected. Make sure all channels are properly connected and topological configuration properly set.		
What to Do[ ]	Check the redundant fibre channel loop connection is right.		

Terminal	[113f] CHL:_ SCSI Drive Channel ALERT: SCSI Channel Failure		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Specific drive channel may have failed or disconnected.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

Terminal	[113f] CHL:_ ALERT: Fibre Channel Loop Failure Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Fibre channel loop failure is detected.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

Terminal	[113f] CHL:_ ALERT: Redundant loop for Chl:_ Failure Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	The pair loop has failed.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

Terminal	[113f] CHL:_ ALERT: Redundant Path for Chl:_ ID:_ Expected but Not Found		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Disconnection with the pair loop may have occurred.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

Terminal	[113f] CHL:_ ID:_ ALERT: Redundant Path for Chl:_ ID:_ Failure Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Disconnection with the pair loop may have occurred.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

**Notification:**

Terminal	[113f] CHL:_ NOTICE: Fibre Channel Loop Connection Restored		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Fibre loop connection restored		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

Terminal	[113f] CHL:_ ID:_ NOTICE: Redundant Path for Chl:_ ID:_ Restored		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	The connection with pair loop regained.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

## B.4 Logical Drive Event

*Alert:*

Terminal	[2101] LG: <NA/Logical Drive Index> Logical Drive ALERT: CHL:_ ID:_ SCSI Drive Failure		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]	The specified hard drive in the specified logical drive has failed.		
What to Do[ ]	If a spare is available, the controller will automatically start rebuild. If there is no spare, replace the faulty drive and rebuild will be automatically initiated.		

Terminal	[2103] LG:_ Logical Drive ALERT: Rebuild Failed		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]	Logical drive rebuild failed. It could result from one of the following reasons:  <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 The rebuild has been canceled by user.</li><li>2 The drive used for rebuild might have failed during rebuild.</li><li>3 Bad blocks are encountered on another member drive during the rebuild.</li></ul>		
What to Do[ ]	Carefully identify and replace the faulty drive and perform logical drive initialization again.		

Terminal	[2106] LG:_ Logical Drive ALERT: Add SCSI Drive Operation Failed		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]	This is a fatal error encountered when a new drive is being added to an existing logical drive. It could result from one of the following reasons  <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Unrecoverable hardware failure during the expansion process.</li><li>2 Errors are found concurrently on two member drives.</li><li>3 Bad blocks are encountered on another member drive during the expansion.</li></ul>		
What to Do[ ]	Data in the target logical drive will be lost.		

***Warning:***

Terminal	[2102] LG:_ Logical Drive ALERT: Initialization Failed		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]	Logical drive initialization failed. It could result from one of the following reasons:  1 1. Logical drive initialization canceled by user. 2 2. On of the member drives failed during logical drive initialization. 3 3. One of the member drive encountered bad block.		
What to Do[ ]	Carefully identify and replace the faulty drive and let the logical drive re-initialize and start rebuild.		

Terminal	[2104] LG_ Logical Drive ALERT: Parity Regeneration Failed		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]	During the parity-regeneration process, one member drive has failed.		
What to Do[ ]	Rebuild the logical drive first, then perform "Regenerate Parity." Regeneration can only be performed on a "Good" (GD) logical drive.		

Terminal	[2111] LG_ Logical Drive ALERT: CHL:_ ID:_ Clone Failed		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]	The clone drive operation has failed or halted by system error.		
What to Do[ ]	One of the member drives might have failed during the process. Replace the faulty drive and let the system rebuild. Data on the source drive (from where the spare clone data) may still be intact. Locate and replace the faulty drive and rebuild.		

***Notification:***

Terminal	[2181] LG_ Logical Drive NOTICE: Starting Initialization		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]	The controller starts initialize the logical drive.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

Terminal	[2182] Initialization of Logical Drive_ Completed		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]	The initialization process of LG_ has been completed.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message. See if host computer can recognize the RAID drive.		

Terminal	[2183] LG_ Logical Drive NOTICE: Starting Rebuild		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	The rebuild process has begun.		
What to Do[ ]	This is the message displayed when a stand-by spare is available or when a faulty drive is replaced. The controller automatically detects a drive for rebuild.		
Terminal	[2184] Rebuild of Logical Drive_ Completed		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	The controller has successfully rebuilt a logical drive.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[2185] LG=_ Logical Drive NOTICE: Starting Parity Regeneration		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Start regenerating parity of a logical drive.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[2186] Parity Regeneration of Logical Drive_ Completed		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	The regeneration process completed.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[2187] LG_ Logical Drive NOTICE: Starting Expansion		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Start expanding the logical drive.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[2188] Expansion of Logical Drive_ Completed		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Logical drive expansion completed.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

Terminal	[2189] LG_ Logical Drive NOTICE: Starting Add SCSI Drive Operation		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Expansion “by adding new drive” has started.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[218a] Add SCSI Drive to Logical Drive_ Completed		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	The expansion “by adding new drive” is completed.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[218b] LG:_ Logical Drive NOTICE: Add SCSI Drive Operation Paused		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	<p>The expansion process is halted by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Logical drive expansion canceled by user.</li> <li>2 On of the member drives failed during logical drive initialization.</li> <li>3 One of the member drive encountered bad block</li> <li>4 Hardware failure</li> </ul>		
What to Do[ ]	If the target logical drive has failed, try to rebuild the logical drive.		
Terminal	[218c] LG:_ Logical Drive NOTICE: Continue Add SCSI Drive Operation		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	The target logical drive has been restored to its previous status, and the add drive operation may continue.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[21a1] LG_ Logical Drive NOTICE: CHL:_ ID:_ Starting Clone		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	This message is displayed when a member drive is manually cloned to a spare, or that a spare is automatically applied to clone a faulty member according to the preset scheme.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message. When cloning is completed, carefully identify and replace the faulty drive.		

Terminal	[21a2] LG:_ Logical Drive NOTICE: CHL:_ ID:_ Clone Completed		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	The clone process has been completed.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message. When cloning is completed, carefully identify and replace the faulty drive.		

## B.5 General Target Events

**Controller On-board:**

Terminal	[3f23] Peripheral Device ALERT: CPU Temperature <high/low threshold> Temperature Detected (_._C)		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	The detected CPU temperature is higher or lower than the preset thresholds.		
What to Do[ ]	Check the enclosure ventilation condition. If necessary, temperature thresholds can be modified to suit different working conditions.		

Terminal	[3f23] Peripheral Device ALERT: Board 1 Temperature <high/low threshold> Temperature Detected (_._C)		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	The detected main circuit board temperature is higher or lower than the preset thresholds.		
What to Do[ ]	Check the enclosure ventilation condition. If necessary, temperature thresholds can be modified to suit different working conditions.		

Terminal	[3F21] ALERT: +5V Low Voltage Detected (current_voltage)		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	The detected main circuit board temperature is higher or lower than the preset thresholds.		
What to Do[ ]	Check the enclosure ventilation condition. If necessary, temperature thresholds can be modified to suit different working conditions.		

Terminal	[3F22] Peripheral Device ALERT: Controller FAN_ Not Present or Failure Detected		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]	This event refers to the cooling fan in front panel. Check cable connection and see if the fan(s) has failed.		
What to Do[ ]	Check cable connection and see if the fan(s) is rotating. Some OEM solutions may have removed front panel fans and the “fan detect” signals should be disabled by setting jumpers. Please refer to your Hardware Manual for more details.		
Terminal	[3F22] Peripheral Device ALERT: Controller FAN_ <high/low threshold> Speed Detected (_RPM)		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]	This event refers to the cooling fan in front panel. Higher or Lower rotation speed detected.		
What to Do[ ]	Contact your system vendor for replacing the cooling fan.		
Terminal	[3F21] Peripheral Device ALERT: +3.3V <upper/lower threshold> Voltage Detected (_)		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]	The detected +3.3V voltage source is now higher or lower than the preset voltage threshold.		
What to Do[ ]	Check power supply condition, voltage threshold settings and contact the your system supplier.		
Terminal	[3F21] Peripheral Device ALERT: +5V <upper/lower threshold> Voltage Detected (_)		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]	The detected +5V voltage source is now higher or lower than the preset voltage threshold.		
What to Do[ ]	Check power supply condition, voltage threshold settings and contact your system supplier.		
Terminal	[3F21] Peripheral Device ALERT: +12V <upper/lower> Voltage Detected (_)		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]	The detected +12V voltage source is higher or lower than the preset voltage threshold.		
What to Do[ ]	Check power supply condition, voltage threshold settings and contact your system supplier.		

**SES Device:**

Terminal	[3f21] SES (C_I_) Power Supply_<Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Supported>!		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Unrecognizable device type.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3f21] SES (C_I_) Power Supply_<Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Installed>!		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	The installed power supply is missing.		
What to Do[ ]	Check loop connection and contact your system provider for help.		
Terminal	[3f21] SES (C_I_) Power Supply_<Vendor descriptor strings/Device Unknown Status>!		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Device reports unknown status strings.		
What to Do[ ]	Check loop connection and contact your system provider for help.		
Terminal	[3f21] SES (C_I_) Power Supply_<Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Available>!		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Device missing[ ] [ ] [ ]		
What to Do[ ]	Check loop connection and contact your system provider for help.		
Terminal	[3f22] SES (C_I_) Cooling element_<Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Supported>!		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Unrecognizable device type		
What to Do[ ]	Check loop connection and contact your system provider for help.		
Terminal	[3f22] SES (C_I_) Cooling element_<Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Installed>!		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	The installed device is missing		
What to Do[ ]	Check loop connection and contact your system provider for help.		

Terminal	[3f22]] SES (C_I_) Cooling element_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Unknown Status>!		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]	Device reports unknown status strings.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3f22]] SES (C_I_) Cooling element_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Available>!		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]	Device missing[ ] [ ] [ ]		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3f23] SES (C_I_) Temperature Sensor_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Supported>!		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3f23] SES (C_I_) Temperature Sensor_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Installed>!		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3f23] SES (C_I_) Temperature Sensor_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Unknown Status>!		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3f23] SES (C_I_) Temperature Sensor_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Available>!		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

Terminal	[3f24] SES (C_I_) UPS_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Supported>!		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Voltage monitor detects the abnormal voltage has back to the normal range.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3f24] SES (C_I_) UPS_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Installed>!		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3f24] SES (C_I_) UPS_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Unknown Status>!		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3f24] SES (C_I_) UPS_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Available>!		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3f21] SES (C_I_) Voltage Sensor_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Supported>!		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3f21] SES (C_I_) Voltage Sensor_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Installed>!		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

Terminal	[3f21] SES (C_I_) Voltage Sensor_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Unknown Status>!		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3f21] SES (C_I_) Voltage Sensor_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Available>!		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3f21] SES (C_I_) Current Sensor_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Supported>!		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3f21] SES (C_I_) Current Sensor_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Installed>!		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3f21] SES (C_I_) Current Sensor_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Unknown Status>!		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3f21] SES (C_I_) Current Sensor_: <Vendor descriptor strings/Device Not Available>!		
Event Type	<input type="checkbox"/> Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Warning	<input type="checkbox"/> Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

**General Peripheral Device:**

Terminal	[3f21] Peripheral Device ALERT: Power Supply Failure Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Power supply failure detected		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

Terminal	[3f22] Cooling Fan Not Installed		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

Terminal	[3f22] Cooling Fan Failure Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

Terminal	[3f24] Elevated Temperature Alert		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

Terminal	[3f24] UPS Power Failure Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]			
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

**Controller Self Diagnostics:**

Terminal	[3fa3] CPU <high/low threshold> Temperature Back to Non-Critical Levels		
Event Type	[ ] Critical	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	CPU operating temperature back to non-critical level.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

Terminal	[3fa3] Board_ <high/low> Temperature Back To Non-Critical Levels		
Event Type	[ ] Critical	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Board_ temperature back to non-critical level.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3fa1] +3.3V <high/low> Voltage Back within Acceptable Limits		
Event Type	[ ] Critical	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	+3.3V voltage source back within acceptable limits.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3fa1] +5V <high/low> Voltage Back within Acceptable Limits		
Event Type	[ ] Critical	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	+5V voltage source back within acceptable limits.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3fa1] +12V <high/low> Voltage Back within Acceptable Limits		
Event Type	[ ] Critical	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	+12V voltage source back within acceptable limits.		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		
Terminal	[3fa2] NOTICE: Controller FAN_ Back On-Line (_RPM)		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Controller fan operating status back to normal		
What to Do[ ]	Press <ESC> to clear the message.		

**SES Device:****Alert:**

Terminal	[3f21] SES (C_I_) Power Supply_ : Power Supply Failure Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Power supply failure detected.		
What to Do[ ]	Check power module status and contact your supplier for a replacement unit.		

Terminal	[3f22] SES (C_I_) Cooling element_: Cooling Fan Not Installed		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Cooling fan missing or not detected.		
What to Do[ ]	Check proper fan installation or contact your supplier to replace a failed unit.		

terminal	[3f22] SES (C_I_) Cooling element_: Cooling Fan Failure Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Contact your system provider for an immediate replacement of fan modules.		
What to Do[ ]	Contact your system provider for an immediate replacement of fan modules.		

Terminal	[3f23] SES (C_I_) Temperature Sensor_: Elevated Temperature Alert		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Detected temperature exceeding safety range.		
What to Do[ ]	Check cooling fan status. Contact your system provider for an immediate replacement of fan modules.		

Terminal	[3f24] SES (C_I_) UPS_: UPS Power Failure Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	UPS power failure detected.		
What to Do[ ]	Check UPS status. If power should fail and UPS is not able to sustain power, data loss might occur.		

**General Peripheral Device:**

Terminal	[3f21] Peripheral Device ALERT: Power Supply Failure Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Power Supply Failure Detected.		
What to Do[ ]	Check power module status and contact your supplier for a replacement unit.		

Terminal	[3f22] Cooling Fan Not Installed		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Cooling fan missing or not detected.		
What to Do[ ]	Check proper fan installation or contact your supplier to replace a failed unit.		

Terminal	[3f22] Cooling Fan_ Failure Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	Cooling fan failure detected.		
What to Do[ ]	Contact your system provider for an immediate replacement of fan modules.		
Terminal	[3f24] Elevated Temperature Alert		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	General overheating warning.		
What to Do[ ]	Check cooling fan status and proper installation of dummy plate. Consult your enclosure vendor's document for probable cause.		
Terminal	[3f24] UPS Power Failure Detected		
Event Type	[ ] Alert	[ ] Warning	[ ] Notification
What Happens[ ]	UPS device failure detected.		
What to Do[ ]	Check UPS status. If power should fail and UPS is not able to sustain power, data loss might occur.		

# Glossary

In glossary definitions, *italics* are used for items defined elsewhere in the glossary and **bold** is used for the items shown in brackets after the main heading of the entry.

**ASCII** American Standard Code for Information Interchange. A 7-bit binary code (0's, 1's) used to represent letters, numbers, and special characters such as \$, !, and /. Supported by almost every computer and terminal manufacturer.

**ATA (Advance Technology Attachment)** A disk drive interface standard based on a 16-bit bus and dealing with the power and data signal interfaces between the motherboard and the integrated disk controller and drive. The ATA "bus" only supports two devices - master and slave.

**Attribute** Setting that controls access to a specific file. Often used to protect important files (such as the Registry files) from accidental change or deletion. Set using the ATTRIB command in MS-DOS.

**Backplane** A printed circuit board incorporated in the chassis assembly to provide logic level signal, and low voltage power distribution paths.

**Bay** The slot that a unit or media device fits into.

**Byte** A group of binary digits stored and operated upon as a unit. A byte may have a coded value equal to a character in the ASCII code (letters, numbers), or have some other value meaningful to the computer. In user documentation, the term usually refers to 8-bit units or characters.

1 kilobyte (K) is equal to 1,024 bytes or characters; 64K indicates 65,536 bytes or characters.

**Cable** Throughout this Galaxy 16m user guide this term is used in accordance with the preferred US context of: "an insulated flexible electric wire used for the transmission of data signals between computer equipment."

**Note** Cable is UK preferred terminology for either a power cord or a data cable:

**Character** A representation, coded in binary digits, of a letter, number, or other symbol.

**Characters Per Second** A data transfer rate generally estimated from the bit rate and the character length. For example, at 2400 bps, 8-bit characters with Start and Stop bits (for a total of ten bits per character) will be transmitted at a rate of approximately 240 characters per second (cps).

**Chassis** A sheet metal enclosure incorporating a Backplane PCB and module runner system. The chassis contains a number of 'Bays', each of which can accommodate a plug in module. There are sixteen *drive* carrier bays at the front and five bays at the rear which house two *power supply/cooling modules*, two Controller I/O modules and also the *integral Ops Panel*.

**Configure** To set up a hardware device and its accompanying software.

**Controller I/O module (Serial ATA Control I/O module)** A plug-in module providing FC-AL channel external cable interface with 16 (Serial or Parallel) **ATA drives**.

**Data Communications** A type of communications in which computers and terminals are able to exchange data over an electronic medium.

**Disk (drive, carrier, module)** A SATA/PATA disk **drive** mounted in a **carrier**. You can have up to sixteen disk drive carrier **modules** in each Galaxy 16m enclosure.

**Enclosure** The chassis assembly which houses the plug-in modules that make up the Galaxy 16m storage subsystem.

**ESI/Ops module** A unit used to monitor and control all elements of the Enclosure. The **ESI/Operators (Ops)** panel is supplied as an integral part of the RS-1602 series Enclosure core product

**Hot plugging** A device with the capability of being connected to a subsystem without interrupting the power supplies to that subsystem.

**Hot swap** Hot swapping is the term used for manually swapping a failed disk unit with a replacement while the Galaxy 16m subsystem is in normal use.

**Hz (Hertz)** a frequency measurement unit used internationally to indicate cycles per second.

**Initialize** To prepare a hardware device for use.

**LED** Light Emitting Diode. A small light displayed on the cabinet, disk units and power supply units.

**Module (power supply, drive, I/O)** A module is a power supply, disk drive or electronics unit held in a carrier that plugs into a bay inside the enclosure. A Galaxy 16m enclosure can contain sixteen **drive** modules, two **power supply/cooling modules** and two **Controller I/O** modules.

**Operating system** The software running the host computer. For example, on PCs it is often Windows 2000 or Windows NT and on Hewlett-Packard machines it could be HP-UX.

**PATA** Parallel **ATA** drive interface standard incorporating 16 bit parallel connection with source synchronous (non-interlocked) clocking, also known as the IDE protocol.

**Parallel Transmission** The transfer of data characters using parallel electrical paths for each bit of the character, for example, 8 paths for 8-bit characters. Data is stored in computers in parallel form, but may be converted to serial form for certain operations. See *Serial Transmission*.

**Power Cord** Throughout this Galaxy 16m user guide this term is used in accordance with the preferred US context of: "an insulated flexible electric wire fitted with connectors at each end and used for the transmission of electrical power to computer equipment."

**Protocol** A system of rules and procedures governing communications between two or more devices. Protocols vary, but communicating devices must follow the same protocol in order to exchange data. The format of the data, readiness to receive or send, error detection and error correction are some of the operations that may be defined in protocols.

**Redundant** Not essential.

**SATA** Serial **ATA** drive interface standard based on serial signalling technology, faster and using much smaller connectors and cables than **PATA**, improving performance and air circulation efficiency.

**Serial Transmission** The transfer of data characters one bit at a time, sequentially, using a single electrical path. See *Parallel Transmission*.

# Index

## numerics

- 1Gbit Models 127
- 2Gbit Models 128
- 48V DC PSU xv, 2, 4, 5, 25

## a

- Abort clone 154
- AC Mains 216
- AC PSU 2, 4, 25
- Access Mode 136
- access mode, read only or read/write. 134
- active-to-active configuration 185, 189
- active-to-active mode 130
- Active-to-Standby Configuration 189
- add drive 252
- Add/Delete Channel SCSI ID 188
- Alarm Mute push-button 14, 213
- ANSI/VT-100 compatible terminal emulation program 232
- anti-static wrist or ankle strap 23
- anti-tamper lock 13, 39, 227
- assigning a logical drive 60
- ATA SMART data 209
- ATTEN LED 186
- Audible Alarm 6, 14, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216
- auto start failure 217
- Automatic Logical Drive Rebuild 68

## b

- Backplane 2, 23, 24, 218, 226, 227
- battery 188, 189, 206, 225, 226
- Battery Support 189
- Baud Rate 204
- bay 2, 21, 22
- beeper, mute 116
- bus failure 59

## c

- Cabling between controllers 126
- cabling, redundant controller configuration 177, 187

- cabling, SCSI 62
- cache 159, 189
- cache memory 90, 118, 189
- Caching Parameters 91
- channel bus 48, 183, 188
- channel bus failure 56
- Channel Failure Protection 58
- channel mode 62, 101, 113
- channel status 112
- channels 178, 187
- chassis 2, 24
- check time 168
- Check Time, Periodic Auto-Detect Failure Drive Swap 55, 168, 169
- Check Time, Periodic Drive 155, 169
- Check Time, Periodic SES Device 168
- Clone + Replace 155, 156
- Clone Failing Drive 151, 152, 153, 154
- communications path 191
- communications path between controllers 112, 189
- communications, Fibre Channel 125
- component failure 127
- concurrent multiple drive rebuild 56
- connection between controllers 126, 178
- connection of dual I/O paths 182
- connection to host or drive 126
- connection type 62
- controller failure 60, 127, 129, 184, 185, 186, 189, 193, 194
- controller name 117, 119
- controller parameters 90
- controller password 117
- controller settings 187
- Controller Unique Identifier 187
- Copy and Replace drives 142, 143
- copy and replace drives 141
- creating a logical drive 98
- creating multiple IDs 101

## d

- dedicated hard drive 52
- dedicated parity drive 51
- dedicated spare 57
- Delete Channel SCSI ID 114

Delete Global/Local Spare Drive 111  
 delete logical drive 105  
 delete LUN mapping 109  
 delete partition 59, 105  
 Delete Primary/Secondary Controller  
     SCSI ID 114  
 Detect Only Setting 155, 156, 157  
 Detect, Clone+Replace Function 158  
 Detect, Perpetual Clone Setting 158  
 Detection of Drive Hot Swap 168  
 Device Support for Removable  
     Media 162  
 Disable (default value) 169  
 Disable (SMART function) 155  
 Disabled (default value) 168  
 Disk 46  
 disk drive 2, 22  
 Disk Drives LEDs 46  
 Disk Mirroring 50  
 Disk Spanning 49  
 Disk Striping with Dedicated Parity  
     Disk 51  
 Disk Striping with Mirroring 51  
 drive array 32  
 drive carrier 38  
 drive carrier handles 13  
 Drive Carrier Module 2, 12, 22, 37, 46,  
     210, 216, 227  
 drive channels 58, 59, 64, 101, 114,  
     127, 130, 169, 188  
 drive failure 51, 56, 58, 59, 95, 107,  
     108, 151, 154, 157, 158  
 drive failure management 47  
 Drive spin down 226  
 drive status indicators 13  
 dual loop 62, 126  
 dummy carrier module 2, 13, 39, 217

**e**

emulated devices 209  
 Enclosure 2, 4, 13, 21, 23, 33, 37, 214,  
     216, 217  
 enclosure bay numbering  
     convention 22  
 enclosure expansion 32  
 Enclosure Services Processor 209  
 Enclosure System Interface/Operators  
     Panel 6  
 ESD 23, 218  
 ESD precautions 226

ESI processor 213  
 establishing the RS-232  
     connection 232  
 Ethernet 76  
 event log 87, 155, 235  
 event message xii, 186  
 Expand Logical Drive 141, 144  
 Expand Logical Volume 145  
 expansion configuration 32  
 External Interface protocol  
     commands 127

**f**

Failover and Failback processes 182  
 failover software 126  
 Failover/Failback 125, 127, 128, 129,  
     179, 183, 184, 194  
 fan failure 214, 216  
 fault prevention 151  
 fault tolerance 48, 64, 179  
 FC\_AL signal 210  
 Fibre adapter 65  
 Fibre channel 62, 65, 183, 241  
 Fibre channel hub 62  
 Fibre network 102  
 firmware 229, 230, 231, 232  
 flash memory 229  
 Forcing Controller Failover for  
     Testing 194  
 Forcing controller failure 194  
 front panel 254

**g**

Gauge Range 81  
 Global Spare Drive 53, 54, 55, 66, 83,  
     85, 93, 104, 107, 111, 152, 153, 154,  
     155, 158  
 GUI RAID manager 47

**h**

Hardware failure 182  
 host 188  
 Host and Drive Connection 187  
 Host Channel Connection Type 126  
 host channels 101, 112, 113, 128, 182,  
     183, 188  
 host loop 127, 128, 132  
 host LUN connection 159

host LUN mapping 138

## i

I/O channels 189  
identify different logical drives 106  
Idle Drive Failure Detection 169  
In-band SCSI 162, 229, 230, 231  
Input/Output Module 2

## j

JBOD 50, 61

## l

LED 5, 6, 13, 210, 213, 214, 215, 216  
LED indicators 8  
Li-ion battery pack 10  
Local Spare Drive 52, 53, 54, 55, 58, 66, 68, 83, 85, 93, 95, 103, 104, 107, 111, 153, 158  
Logical Arrays 32  
Logical Drive Assignment 188, 192  
logical drive expansion 59, 137, 147  
Logical Drive Status 83, 84  
logical drives xi, 47, 60  
logical volume failure 59  
logical volumes xi  
loop ID 127  
LUN 59, 65, 70, 83, 101, 102, 103, 106, 109, 125  
LUN Mapping 127  
LUN mapping 179

## m

Main Menu 72, 76, 82, 87, 93, 98, 101, 104, 110, 112, 116, 117, 119, 120, 130, 139, 142, 144, 160, 172, 187, 190, 192, 232, 233  
manual rebuild 55, 56  
Mapping a Logical Drive/Logical Volume to the Host LUNs 193  
mapping system drives 181  
maximum drive capacity 94  
Maximum Queued I/O Count 160  
maximum queued I/O count 160  
maximum tag count 167  
member drives 53, 103, 107, 137, 141, 142, 143, 144, 249, 250

member drives, choosing 93, 94

mirroring 47, 48, 158

Mirroring and Striping 51

MTBF 56

Multiple Target IDs 127, 128, 182

Mute beeper 116

## n

Naming a logical drive 106  
NRAID 49, 95, 97, 107, 137  
Number of Tags Reserved for each Host-LUN Connection 160  
NVRAM 131

## o

Operators Panel 2, 6  
Ops Panel 6, 14, 22, 24, 43, 211, 212, 213, 223  
Ops Panel LEDs 44, 211  
Ops Panel Switch Functions 7, 35  
Out-of-Band Configuration 71, 187

## p

partitioning a logical drive 100  
Partitioning a Logical Drive or Logical Volume 179  
partitioning a logical volume 100  
Partitioning a Logical Drive or Logical Volume 59  
Password Validation Timeout 120  
password, changing 117  
password, setting new 117  
PATA disk drive 8  
PATA/SATA disk drive 209  
Periodic Drive Check Time 155, 157, 168  
Peripheral Device Qualifier 162  
peripheral device settings 161  
Peripheral Device Type 161  
Perpetual Clone 151, 153, 155, 156, 158  
plug-in module 2, 21  
Power Down 46  
power failure 138, 141, 189  
Power On 43  
power supply cord 25, 40, 218, 227

Power Supply/Cooling 2, 4, 5, 21, 25, 28, 29, 43, 209, 213, 214, 216, 217, 218, 220, 227  
predict failure drive 155  
Predictable Failure Test 156  
primary controller 60, 70, 95, 99, 101, 113, 115, 127  
PSU LEDs 43, 210  
PSU voltage operating ranges 5

**q**

Quick installation 83

**r**

Rack mounting 2  
rack mounting rail kit 23, 24, 227  
RAID controller 117  
RAID expansion 59, 137, 138, 145  
RAID Head 209  
RAID level 48, 51, 56, 59, 61, 63, 83, 93, 95, 97, 138, 139, 141, 179, 188  
RAID level 0 97  
RAID level 1 (0+1), 3, or 5 59  
RAID level 1, 3 and 5 97, 107  
RAID level, choosing 47, 62, 93  
RAID levels xi, 47  
RAIDWatch Manage 117  
Rebuild Logical Drive 107  
rebuild priority 107  
Rebuild progress 107  
Redundant Array of Independent Disks 47, 48  
redundant configuration 95  
Redundant Configuration Using Manual Setting 190  
redundant controller xii, 60, 88, 177, 179, 182, 183, 187, 189, 190, 194  
redundant controller configuration 127  
redundant controllers 179  
redundant data paths 62  
redundant loops 127  
redundant mode 70, 113, 114, 115  
Regenerating Logical Drive Parity 108  
replace a failed unit 229  
Replace After Clone 151, 152  
replacing a module 217  
requirements, configuration 125  
requirements, controller 187  
requirements, RAIDWatch 75

rescan disks command 148  
Reset controller 118, 190  
restore NVRAM from disks 120  
RJ45 Ethernet connector 10  
RS-232 146, 162  
RS-232 cable 71, 72, 187  
RS-232 firmware download 229  
RS-232 Port Configuration 204  
RS-232 ports 71  
RS-232 terminal emulation xi, 81, 232  
RS-232 terminal interface 117

**s**

SAF-TE 69, 205  
SATA - PATA Transition card 12  
SATA disk drive 8  
save NVRAM to disk 70  
save NVRAM to disks 119, 197  
SCM I/O module 223  
SCSI channel 127  
SCSI commands 162  
SCSI drive 102, 139, 143, 154  
SCSI ID 109, 114, 159, 188  
SCSI Parameters 155, 159, 204  
SCSI Pass-through commands 127  
secondary controller 60, 99, 101, 114, 115, 127, 183, 188, 189, 191, 193, 194  
SEL\_ID Address Range selector switch 6  
SEL\_ID base address 35  
Self-Monitoring, Analysis and Reporting Technology (SMART) 154  
Serial ATA (SATA) Drive Carrier module 2  
Serial ATA Control (SCM) Input/Output module 2  
serial port 71  
SES 37, 69, 168, 205  
SES drives 36  
Set Peripheral Device Entry 187, 190, 194  
SFP connector 10  
SMART (Self-Monitoring, Analysis and Reporting Technology) 154  
SMART function 55, 151, 155, 156, 158  
SMART function enabled 155  
spanning 47, 48

spare drive xi, 56, 64, 83, 84, 85, 95,  
     103, 104, 106, 111, 151, 153, 155,  
     158  
 spare drives 180  
 Spin-up at Power-on 166  
 Spin-up Parameters 69  
 Spin-up serially at random  
     sequence 166  
 spin-up time 155  
 standby drive 52  
 standby IDs 182  
 starting drives 45  
 system drive mapping 61, 179, 181  
 SYSTEM LED 213, 217

**W**

Write-Back Cache 91, 167, 189

**t**

tag command queuing 167  
 Tag Command Queuing, Disabling 167  
 Tag Count, maximum 69, 167  
 terminal emulation 71, 72, 89, 188, 190,  
     232, 233  
 tower kit 3  
 Traffic Distribution and Failover  
     Process 185  
 Transfer Rate Indicator 81

**u**

upgrading firmware 229

**v**

Verification on LD Initialization  
     Writes 172  
 Verification on LD Normal Drive  
     Writes 173  
 Verification on LD Rebuild Writes 172  
 Verification on Write 68  
 View and Edit Configuration  
     Parameters 120  
 View and Edit Host LUN 65, 101, 130  
 View and Edit Logical Drives 59, 104,  
     192  
 View and Edit Peripheral Devices 87,  
     187, 190, 194  
 View and Edit SCSI Channels 112, 188,  
     191  
 View and Edit SCSI Drives 93, 104,  
     110, 123, 153, 156, 158, 168  
 View and Edit SCSI ID 113

